WW i-2

THE
ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BOMBAY
Town Hall, Bombay.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 25 June, 2016

950.2
37696

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR-BEC,

Known by the Name of

Tamerlain the Great,

Emperor of the

MOGULS and TARTARS:

BEING

An historical JOURNAL of his Conqu
in *Asia* and *Europe*.

Written in *Persian* by CHERIFEDDI
Native of *Yezd*, his Contemp

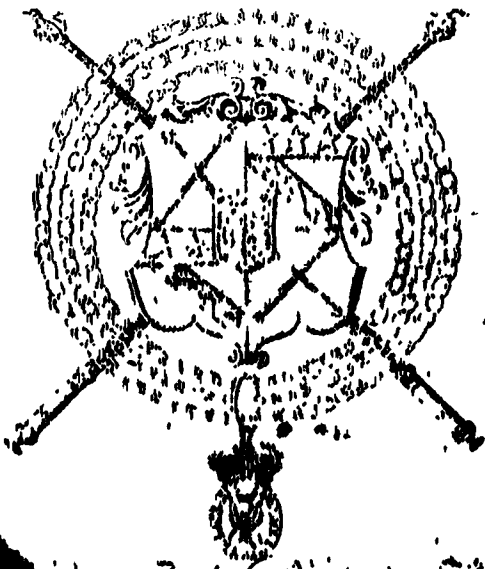
Translated into *French* by the
Petis de la Croix, Arabick P
Royal College, and Secretary
to the King in the Oriental

With historical Notes and M

Now faithfully render'd into

VOL. II.

LONDON: Printed for J. DARBY in Ba
E. BELL, in *Cornhill*, W. TAYLOR in
W. and J. INNYS at the West End of St.
yard, J. OSBORNE in *Lombard-street*, and T.
Stationers-Court. MDCCXXIII.



A MAP OF
the Expedition of
TAMERLAN
in the
INDIES
Scales
Horary Leagues
Leagues 30 to a Degree
Days Journeys
SAMARCAND
TRANS OXIANA
CATLAN
CORASSANA
LIT. TIBET
G: TIBET
Caschgar or Hiar Kene
Outchferman
Couzan
Catlan
Balk
Kivah
Becara
Amou
Hisarek
Nichabour
Morgab
Badghiz
Herat
Candahar
Solimancouh M.
OUGANISTAN
Cabul
Gaznin
HAZA BULLOC CAN
Lahor
Menou
Mansar
Patna
AGRA
BENARES
Scanderbad
Rauper
Bramspour
INDIA
INDIAN SEA
Mangalor
Gulf of Bengal

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR-BEC.

BOOK IV.

Timur enters India, and paſſes over the rivers Indus and Ganges. The taking of the citys of Moultan, Lahor, and Deli capital of that kingdom. A conſiderable battel between Timur and the Sultan Mahmoud, grandſon of Firouz Chah emperor of India. The Tartars artifice in conquering the elephants in the wars with the Indians. The deſtruction of the temples of the Guebres. Several battels with theſe adorers of fire, and other idolaters of this great empire.

CHAP. I.

The cauſe of Timur's war in India.

TIMUR had given to his grandſon prince Pir Mehemed, ſon of Gehangiſir, the provinces of Condoz, Bacalan, Cabul, Gaznin, and Candahar, with their dependencys, as far as the frontiers of India, as we ſaid before; and this Mirza being eſtabliſh'd in theſe principalitys, endeavor'd to render 'em flouriſhing by his juſtice and goodneſs.

He receiv'd orders from court to aſſemble the troops of all the provinces, and to depart at their head for other conqueſts, and to make himſelf maſter of many towns and countrys in India. He accordingly ſet out with a great army commanded by good generals, the moſt valiant Emirs of his country.

They began with the plunder of the Ouganis, inhabitants of the mountain of Solyman Couh [1], which country they entirely ravag'd. They paſs'd the Indus, inveſted Outchah [2], and alſo laid ſiege to Moultan [3], which had then for its governor prince Sarenk, eldeſt brother of Mellou Can, who govern'd the empire of India for the young Sultan Mahmoud.

Timur reſolv'd to make war in the empire of India, becauſe ſince the death of Firouz Chah

[1] On the weſt of the Indus, between Cabul and Candahar.
[2] A town E. of the Indus, N. of Moultan.
[3] A town of India on the Rave, long. 107½. lat. 29.

emperor

emperor of it, Mellou Can and Sarenk two brothers, who had been his generals, had uſurp'd the ſovereign power; and having plac'd on the throne Sultan Mahmoud, grandſon of Firouz Chah, they reign'd over all India, Mellou Can reſiding at Deli [4], near Sultan Mahmoud, and his brother Sarenk at Moultan. Chap. 1.

Moultan being beſieg'd by our army, was briskly attack'd and batter'd without interruption: there were two aſſaults given every day, and the regiment of Timur Coja ſon of Acbouga, fought with more heat than all the others, becauſe this Emir was not only an adviſer, but the firſt actor in this enterprize.

Timur receiv'd the news with joy; and as he had already reſolv'd to carry his arms to Catai or China, to root out the infidels, he got together all the troops of the empire. He had been before that inform'd, that the mahometan religion was then obſerv'd in many places of India, as at Deli and other citys, where the teſtimony of that faith was written upon their coins; nevertheleſs the greateſt part of the provinces diſtant from this town were inhabited by idolaters. Timur, who deſign'd to partake of the merit and glory of the Gazie [5], and had rais'd this numerous army with intention to make war on the enemys of his religion, ſoon reſolv'd on the conqueſt of India. He aſſembled his council, according to the cuſtom Ma-

[4] Capital of India, long. 100. lat. 30. It conſiſts of three Towns, Sari, Geharpena, and old Deli, all which make but one; as Paris conſiſts of the city, univerſity, and ſuburbs of St. Germain.

[5] Gazie among the orientals ſignifys the wars the Mahometans undertake againſt thoſe who profeſs a different religion. They imagine that whoever die in theſe wars, become martyrs, and of conſequence inherit paradiſe.

Book IV. homet had introduc'd, and propos'd his under-
taking to the great Emirs of the ſtate in theſe terms.

"Fortune, my dear friends, furniſhes us "with ſuch happy conjunctures, that ſhe ſeems "to offer herſelf to us, and invite us to lay hold "of the favorable opportunitys which preſent "themſelves; for as we have already ſeen the "empires of Iran and Touran, and almoſt all "Aſia under our command, ſhe ſhews us In-"dia, thro the diſorders of the princes who "govern it, opening its gates to receive us. "My name has ſpread terror throughout the "univerſe; and the leaſt motion I make is ca-"pable of ſhaking the whole earth. It is "therefore time to attack the kingdom of In-"dia, where having overcome what oppoſes "our deſigns, we ſhall oblige this kingdom to "acknowledg no other ſovereign than me. "What think ye, my dear friends, who are the "companions of my victorys, of this great en-"terprize? Speak all in general, and every "one in particular, your opinion of this pro-"poſal, which appears reaſonable, ſince for-"tune has not yet withdrawn its protection "from us."

Timur having thus made known his reſolution to the captains and generals of his army, they fell upon the ground, and with ſincere ſubmiſſion and perfect obedience, ſaid, The order of the emperor was a law to all men, and more indiſpenſibly ſo to them who were his ſlaves; that wherever he ſhou'd ſet his feet, there they ſhou'd be ready to lay their heads: that it was their glory punctually to obey his orders, even when he requir'd 'em to undertake the greateſt difficultys. Timur, pleas'd with this anſwer, heap'd favors on 'em, and thought of

nothing

nothing more than the means of bringing this enterprize to perfection. Chap. 2.

CHAP. II.

Timur brings his army into the field, to make war againſt the Guebres in India.

THE Alcoran ſays, the higheſt dignity man can attain to, is that of making war in perſon againſt the enemys of his religion. Mahomet adviſeth the ſame thing, according to the tradition of the muſſulman doctors: wherefore the great Timur always ſtrove to exterminate the infidels, as much to acquire that glory, as to ſignalize himſelf by the greatneſs of his conqueſts.

For which reaſon in the year of the Leopard, that is, in the month of Regeb of the year 800 of the Hegira, having left Mirza Omar ſon of Mirza Miran Chah to govern the city of Samarcand, he took the road to India, having many kings of Aſia for his attendence, who were come to his court as to an aſylum, to render their ſervices to this conqueror. March 1398.

He had in his army ſoldiers and even officers of all nations; but all the chiefs, and greateſt part of the companys who were in poſts of conſequence, were Tartars: and he had alſo a great many lords of Kech.

Timur being arriv'd at Termed, there order'd to be made a bridge of boats over the Oxus, which he croſs'd with his army: He rais'd many choice ſoldiers and of good appearance in the fine city of Culm, from whence he took the road to Aznic and Semencan; and after having

Book IV. paſs'd the mountains of Bacalan, he went to encamp at Enderabe.

CHAP. III.

Timur marches againſt the inhabitants of Ketuer. He defeats the Siapouches, who were cloth'd in black.

WHILST Timur was encamp'd at Enderabe, the inhabitants came to caſt themſelves at his feet, to complain of the inſults and troubles they receiv'd from the idolaters of Ketuer [6], and from the Siapouches [7]: they repreſented to him that there were a great number of Muſſulmans, from whom the infidels exacted every year exceſſive ſums of money, under the name of tribute and Carage; which if they fail'd to pay punctually, they kill'd their men, and made their women and children ſlaves.

The emperor, touch'd with their complaints, and excited by zeal for the religion of which he was protector and defender, march'd immediately againſt theſe tyrants: he choſe three ſoldiers out of every ten, and left the Mirza Charoc to command the reſt of the army and the baggage at Gounandictour [8], where they ordinarily paſs'd the ſummer. Timur decamp'd twice a day, and march'd with ſo much diligence, that he made two days journy in one.

[6] A mountain of Bedakchan inhabited by idolaters, long. 115. lat. 36.

[7] An idolatrous nation cloth'd in black, inhabiting the mountains S. of the province of Bedakchan.

[8] A cool place in the mountain near Enderabe.

He

He ſoon arriv'd at Perjan [9], whence he ſent Mirza Rouſtem, accompanied by Burhan Aglen, and other Emirs, with ten thouſand men towards the left, to ſeek the Siapouches; and following his road, he arriv'd at Caouc [1], where he found a demoliſh'd citadel, which he caus'd to be rebuilt. Many Emirs and ſoldiers left ſome of their horſes at Caouc, and aſcended on foot the mountain of Ketuer, where tho the ſun was in Gemini, the ſnow lay in ſo great abundance, that the feet of moſt part of the horſes, which the lords wou'd have carry'd up, fail'd 'em; yet ſome of 'em were ſpur'd on ſo much during the night and the froſt, that they were conſtrain'd to get up: but day being come, and the ſnow turn'd into ice, they kept theſe horſes under felts till evening, when they continu'd to [illegible] the mountain, ſo that at length they arriv'd at the top, and then ſent for the reſt of the horſes. And as the infidels dwelt in narrow paſſages and precipices, and there was no road to get to them, beſides what was cover'd with ſnow; ſome of the Emirs and ſoldiers deſcended by cords, while others lying on the ſnow, ſlid down to the bottom. They made a ſort of raft for Timur, to which they faſten'd rings, that they might tie cords to it of one hundred and fifty cubits in length: he ſat upon it, while many perſons let him down from the top to the bottom of the mountain, as far as the cords wou'd reach. Others dug with pickaxes in the ſnow a place where he might ſtand firm. They who were on the top

Chap. 3.

[9] A town in the province of Bedakchan, two days journy from Enderabe near the Siapouches.

[1] A town at the foot of the mountain of Ketuer, long. 115. lat. 36.

having

Book IV. having gently deſcended, they let down Timur again in the machine. The place alſo was mark'd out where he ſhou'd ſtay next; and ſo on till the fifth time, when he arriv'd at the foot of the mountain. Then this monarch took a ſtaff in his hand to reſt on, and walk'd on foot a great way. Theſe fatigues did not deter him, becauſe of his confidence in the merit of the Gazie, which always increas'd his ardent zeal for the moſt difficult enterprizes. Thoſe who work for God may reſt aſſur'd of ſucceſs. They alſo let down ſome of the emperor's horſes, girding 'em about the belly and neck, with great precaution; but moſt of 'em thro the fault of the guides fell headlong down, ſo that there remain'd but two fit for ſervice. Then Timur took horſe, and all the army follow'd on foot.

The infidels of this country are ſtrong men, and as large as the giants of the people of Aad[a]; they go all naked; their kings are nam'd Oda and Odachouh: they have a particular language[b], which is neither Perſian, nor Turkiſh, nor Indian; and know no other than this: and if it was not for the inhabitants of the neighbouring places, who are found there by chance, and having learnt their language, ſerve for interpreters, no one would be able to underſtand 'em.

Theſe infidels were in a citadel, at the foot of whoſe walls paſſes a great river; and on the other ſide of this river there was a high mountain. As they had learnt the approach of Timur twenty four hours before his arrival, they abandon'd this poſt, croſs'd the river, and car-

---

[a] Arabians in the time of Nimrod.

[b] The language of the people of Ketuer was heretofore unknown.

ry'd

ry'd their effects to the top of this mountain, imagining it inacceſſible, eſpecially with the intrenchments they had made there. Chap. 3.

When the army after long fatigues arriv'd at the citadel, they found nothing there but ſome ſheep the enemy had left, which they made themſelves maſters of: then having ſet fire to the houſes, they immediately croſs'd the river. The emperor order'd 'em to aſcend the mountain by many narrow paſſages; which our ſoldiers did, and at the ſame time return'd thanks to God.

Cheik Arſlan, at the head of the vanguard of of the left wing [1], attack'd the foremoſt of the enemys, and made himſelf maſter of a riſing ground. They were alſo attack'd by Ali Sultan Tavachi, who came down into the place where they were encamp'd. A colonel nam'd Chamelic ſignaliz'd himſelf by many great actions; and fourteen of our braveſt ſoldiers fell from the top of the mountain to the bottom, and were kill'd. Mobacher alſo behav'd himſelf gallantly. Mengheli Coja advanc'd at the head of his company, and gain'd the top of the mountain. Sevindgic Behader did all that cou'd be expected from the greateſt valor. Cheik Ali Saliberi advanc'd as far as the ridge of the mountain with all his ſoldiers; he attack'd the enemy, and got poſſeſſion of their poſt. Mouſſa Reemal and the Emir Huſſein Courtchi behav'd themſelves with the utmoſt reſolution; and at length all the Emirs of the Hezares and Couchons attack'd the infidels on all ſides in the moſt dangerous places. The enemy defended themſelves vigorouſly, notwithſtanding the great ſlaughter of their men. The fight laſted three

[1] The Tartars have a vanguard to each wing, which they call Cambol.

nights

Book IV. nights with unheard-of obſtinacy: but at length theſe unfortunate men finding themſelves no longer able to make reſiſtance, beg'd quarter with tears in their eyes. Timur ſent to 'em Ac Sultan Kechi, with order to tell them that if they wou'd come to him with ſubmiſſion and obedience, abandon their errors, and take up a reſolution to acknowledg but one God, and embrace the mahometan religion with ſincerity, he wou'd not only give 'em their lives and effects, but alſo leave 'em to enjoy their principality as before. They had no ſooner learnt this from an interpreter, than the fourth day they came to caſt themſelves at the feet of the emperor, conducted by Ac Sultan Kechi: they abjur'd their idolatry, and embrac'd the mahometan religion, promiſing to ſubmit entirely to the emperor, and obey all his commands. Timur, according to his wonted generoſity, gave them clothes, and ſent them away, after having encourag'd 'em by the moſt affectionate ſpeeches.

Obſtinate fight of the men of Kettuer.

Treaſon of the men of Kettuer. Night being come, theſe wretches, whoſe hearts were more black than their garments, fell upon the regiment of Chamelic, and put all the ſoldiers of it to the ſword, except a few, who, tho wounded and lame, eſcap'd their hands.

Their puniſhment. As ſoon as this treaſon was diſcover'd, our men ſlew near one hundred and fifty of 'em. All the army got up upon the mountain, and following the precept of Mahomet, who orders the women to be ſpar'd, they put to the ſword all the old and young men of theſe infidels, and carry'd away their women and children. At length they built towers on the top of the mountain and the end of the bridge, with the heads of theſe traitors, who had never bow'd their head to adore the true God. Timur order'd to be engrav'd upon marble the hiſtory

of this action, which happen'd in the month of Ramadan in the year of the Hegira 800; and he added the particular Epocha which this people us'd, that their poſterity might have ſome knowledg of the famous valor of the ever-victorious Timur. This pillar ſo inſcrib'd gave the greater pleaſure to Timur, in that theſe people had never been conquer'd by any prince in the world, not even by Alexander the great. Chap. 4. June 1398.

CHAP. IV.

Timur ſends Mehemed Azad to gain intelligence of Mirza Rouſtem and Burhan Aglen. His return to Ketuer.

AS there came no news of Mirza Rouſtem and Burhan Aglen, who were gone againſt the Siapouches, the emperor order'd the inhabitants of Ketuer to furniſh him with guides; and he ſent Mehemed Azad and Doletchah, who had been rais'd to preferments in his court. Four or five Emirs accompany'd 'em, with four hundred Turks [4] and three hundred Tadgics [5], commanded by Mehemed Azad, who had orders to get information of Mirza Rouſtem and Burhan Aglen. Mehemed after his departure, according to Timur's order, went up, by ſtrait and difficult paſſages with extreme fatigue, high mountains cover'd with ſnow, which he afterwards ſlid down, having

[4] The Turks are thoſe who deſcend from the Moguls and Tartars.

[5] The Tadgics are the inhabitants of the towns of Tranſoxiana, and all the country of Iran, who are neither Tartars, Moguls, nor Turks.

ſtrongly

Book IV. ſtrongly faſten'd his buckler to his ſhoulders. He then march'd to the fortreſs of the Siapouches, where he cou'd not meet a ſingle perſon, or hear one word; but he found the tracks of the feet of ſeveral men, who were gone to the other ſide of the mountain. Theſe were the footſteps of the Siapouches, who having advice of the march of Mirza Rouſtem and Burhan Aglen, were gone out of their fortreſſes, and retir'd to the mountains, where they lay in ambuſcade in a very narrow paſſage. Some paſs'd by 'em, and others without precaution got off their horſes, which they let go looſe: then the Siapouches, laying hold of the opportunity, came out of their ambuſcade, and fell ſuddenly upon them. Burhan Aglen, thro his great cowardice, or rather by an unheard-of treaſon, flung off his coat of mail, and fled without fighting, which caus'd the defeat of his troops. When a general turns his back, we may ſay he is the murderer of his ſoldiers. The infidels ſeeing the Muſſulmans fly, became more daring; and purſuing our men cloſe, ſlew many of 'em with their axes and war-clubs, and among the reſt Cheik Huſſein Courtchi, Doletchah Gebegi, and Adina captain of the horſe, who, after a vigorous defence, were deſtroy'd among the reſt.

Affairs were in this miſerable ſtate, when Mehemed Azad obſerving the prints of the feet of the Siapouches, arriv'd in the paſſage where this tragedy happen'd: he met 'em at their return, attack'd 'em with the greateſt bravery, after a ſharp fight utterly defeated 'em, and retook from 'em the bucklers, arms and horſes of our Muſſulmans. He then went to rejoin Burhan Aglen with the horſe which had fled; and every

every one knowing his own bucklers, arms and horſes, they were reſtor'd. Chap. 4.

Mehemed Azad then told Burhan Aglen that he muſt ſtay in that place all night; but this coward would not do it: he got up to the top of the mountain, whither he was follow'd by his troops, to the great regret of Mehemed Azad; for when a commander proves a traitor or a coward, his army never fails of being conquer'd. This action of Burhan was very infamous; and ſince the reign of Genghiz Can there has not been one prince of the race of Cayat [6], who has committed the like. Burhan had formerly done the ſame in the war of the Uzbecs, and receiv'd pardon by the ſingular goodneſs of Timur, who continu'd to honor him as before, and had even ſent him on this expedition, in hopes he would repair his fault, and recover his credit, which in this laſt affair he entirely deſtroy'd.

After the conqueſt of Ketuer, and defeat of the idolaters, Timur ſent Gelaleliſſam and Ali Siſtani with troops to ſeek an eaſy paſſage from the mountains, and to clear the ways: and he order'd them to ruin whatſoever they met belonging to the infidels.

Theſe two Emirs having found a paſſage to their mines, open'd a way in the ſnow; and then Timur croſs'd the mountains, and went down to Caouc [7], where he left a ſtrong gariſon. At this place he join'd the Emirs and ſoldiers, who for eighteen hours had conſtantly

[6] A Mogul hord, from whence Gerghiz Can ſprung; which hord were the deſcendents of an antient Mogul prince nam'd Cayat, who was deſcended from Turc, ſon of Japhet, ſon of Noah.

[7] A town in Ketuer rebuilt by Timur.

fought

Book IV. fought on foot: then they took horſe, and accompany'd the emperor.

When Burhan Agleſ and Mehemed Azad had join'd the imperial ſtandard with their troops, Timur wou'd not admit the firſt into his preſence, becauſe without making any defence he had fled from the infidels: he treated him with ſcorn as he met him by chance; and to ſhew his infamy, cited a paſſage of the Alcoran, which aſſures us, That twenty zealous Muſſulmans are able to conquer two hundred infidels, provided they truſt in God: and yet Burhan (ſaid the emperor) at the head of ten thouſand men fled from a handful of infidels, and put the Muſſulmans in danger of being torn in pieces. Then Timur declar'd him criminal, and as a mark of diſgrace baniſh'd him the court.

Mehemed Azad having fought on foot at the head of four hundred men only, and ſtood his ground againſt the ſame men, tho puff'd up with their victory; and having alſo put a great number of 'em to the ſword, recovering from 'em all the horſes they had got from us; Timur heap'd on him honors and riches, diſtinguiſhing him by great praiſes, and giving him the command of a regiment to reward his valor. The emperor diſtributed alſo largeſſes among thoſe who had given marks of their courage in ſo dangerous an expedition.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Timur ſends Mirza Charoc to Herat.

AT this place* Timur permitted his dear ſon Mirza Charoc, heir apparent to the crown, to return to Herat, capital of Coraſſana, of which he was governor. When he took leave of this prince, he gave him his advice, and us'd many expreſſions which ſhew'd a fatherly tenderneſs and affection; and after having embrac'd him, and recommended him to the divine protection, he diſmiſs'd him. Timur decamp'd at the ſame time, and march'd towards Cabul: he took the road to Tulle [s], aſcended the mountain of Hendou-Keçh, paſs'd by Pendgehir [t], commonly call'd Pendgir, and went to encamp in a meadow of the country of Baran, about five leagues from Cabul. And as the deſign of this conqueror was chiefly to diſpenſe juſtice to the people, and to render the countrys and towns flouriſhing, he gave orders for a canal to be dug, which might join the river which paſſes thro thoſe quarters. He divided the land between the captains and ſoldiers, and in a ſhort time there was a great canal made five leagues long, which is yet call'd the canal of Mahighir: at length there were many large villages built upon it; and the valley, which before had not

* Caouc.

[s] A little town of Bedakchan.

[t] A town and mountain, where Abulfeda the geographer ſays there are two ſilver mines; and that the town is full of ditches dug to get out the oar. It is at the foot of the mountains of Cachmir to the weſt, between Cabul and Enderabe.

Book IV. been cultivated, became a fine and delightful garden.

CHAP. VI.

The arrival of ambaſſadors from ſeveral places. Taizi Aglen returns from the country of the Calmacs, and Cheik Nouredin from that of Fars.

TIMUR being encamp'd in the plain of Dourin [a], there arriv'd an ambaſſador from Timur Cotluc Aglen a prince of Capchac, and another from Emir Aidecou, a prince of Capchac, as alſo a third of Géte from Keſer Coja Aglen; who were preſented before the throne by the Emirs and Neviahs. After they had kiſs'd the ground and perform'd other uſual ceremonys, they began their harangue, wiſhing all proſperity to Timur, and highly extolling him: then they declar'd the ſubject of their embaſſy, which was, to aſſure the emperor that their maſters were faithful ſervants of his majeſty; that tho for ſome time paſt there had been no good intelligence or agreement between 'em, which had made 'em depart from the obedience they ow'd him, and wander as vagabonds in the deſarts; yet conſideration and prudence having now brought 'em to ſee the deformity of their actions, they ſincerely repented of 'em; and that if the emperor would be merciful and pardon their fault, they would for the future

[a] A village near Garan.

be

be moſt obedient, and never diſobey the orders of his officers. Chap. 6.

Taizi Aglen, who for ſome difference which happen'd between him and the Can at Olug Yurt [2], fled from the kingdom of Calmac [3], came to this place to lay himſelf at the feet of the throne, and was receiv'd as handſomly as a prince of his rank cou'd expect. Timur embrac'd him, and preſented him with a veſt wove with gold, a belt ſet with precious ſtones, horſes of great price, ſeveral mules and camels, tents and pavilions, and whatever cou'd be expected from a great emperor. At the ſame place alſo arriv'd Emir Cheik Noureddin, ſon of Sar Bouga, who had been left by Timur in Perſia, after the five years campaign there, in order to receive the revenues of that kingdom and the neighboring countrys. He brought with him an immenſe treaſure, with abundance of jewels of ineſtimable price; likewiſe animals proper for the chaſe, and birds of prey; leopards, gold mony, belts enrich'd with precious ſtones, veſts wove with gold, ſtuffs of all colors, arms and all ſorts of utenſils for war, arabian horſes with ſaddles of gold, great camels, ſeveral carriage and riding mules, fine ſtirrups, the ſtraps embroider'd with gold and ſilver; umbrellas, canopys, pavilions, tents and curtains of ſcarlet and all colors; in ſhort, there was ſo great a quantity of curious pieces of work, that the ſecretarys and comptrollers of the Divan employ'd three days and three nights

[2] That is, the great hord, ſeat of the kings of Calmac, or rather of the Mogul Cans or emperors, near Caracorom capital of Calmac.

[3] A kingdom, formerly call'd Caracatai, in Mogoliſtan, north of the kingdom of Courge or Leaſtung.

Book IV. to regiſter 'em, and write copys of 'em, which were preſented to the lords of the court for their peruſal.

The day for preſenting petitions being appointed, the Emirs or generals, and the Nevians or foreign princes, preſented Emir Cheik Noureddin before the imperial throne. This prince knelt down, and the whole day was ſpent in calling over before the emperor all his preſents, than which none ever were ſeen ſo magnificent, not even in the reign of the great Feridon [4], or of Corzu Peruize [5].

Prince Taizi Aglen, the ambaſſadors of Capchac, and ſeveral princes of the race of Genghiz Can, who were preſent, were ſurpriz'd at it; not only at the ſight of the riches, but but alſo conſidering that the power of Timur muſt be very great, ſince one of his ſubjects was rich enough to make ſo magnificent a preſent.

Timur diſtributed a great many of theſe raritys, and gave a very friendly reception to Emir Cheik Noureddin, who told the emperor that all theſe preſents were too ſmall for thoſe who had reſolv'd to ſacrifice their lives to his ſervice.

Timur being willing to treat the ambaſſadors of the Uzbecs [6] and Getes handſomly, gave 'em caps of gold, belts, veſts and horſes; he granted 'em whatſoever they ask'd, and loaded 'em with preſents, as well for themſelves as their maſters, with letters in anſwer to thoſe they had brought. At length Emir Cheik Noureddin knelt down, and ask'd pardon for Burhan Aglen, and the reſt who accompany'd him at

---

[4] King of Perſia of the firſt race.
[5] King of Perſia of the third race.
[6] The princes of Capchac are here call'd Uzbecs.

the

Book IV. a meſſenger to Mouſſa, to whom he gave orders to tell him as follows.

" The emperor having advice that you have " demoliſh'd the city of Irjab, ſituate in the " great road to India, does not think conveni- " ent that it ſhou'd remain in ruins; where- " fore he wills and commands you to come " forthwith to court, where he deſigns to in- " veſt you with the government of that country, " not doubting but you will rebuild the place, " and ſettle it in its former ſplendor."

The meſſenger having handſomly acquitted himſelf of this commiſſion, Mouſſa came immediately with a reſolution to caſt himſelf at the feet of the throne; but Timur, who had reſolv'd to put him to death, with all his accomplices, receiv'd him in a civil manner at firſt ſight, and gave him a veſt woven with gold, a belt, a ſword with a gold handle, a horſe well equip'd, with other curious things, and at laſt ſaid to him, " We will aſſign you troops, with " which it is expedient you ſhou'd go and re- " build that place: wherefore depart with thy " domeſticks and friends, and uſe all your ef- " forts, that the place may be rebuilt before " we arrive; and if there is need of any thing " towards the perfecting of it, we will order " it you; and then leaving you in the govern- " ment of it, we will depart for India." Timur then ſent him away, and order'd Mouſſa Reemal, with three thouſand brave men, to accompany him.

When Mouſſa was arriv'd at Irjab, he made diſpatch in executing the orders he had receiv'd, and employ'd all his men and domeſtics, about three hundred perſons, in the rebuilding of this place.

CHAP.

CHAP VII.

The repairing the fortreſs of Irjab, and the deſtroying of the Ouganis robbers.

TIMUR ſent from the country of Dourin to Samarcand the auguſt princeſs Serai Mulc Canum, and the Mirza Oluc Bei, who were at court; and then he decamp'd. In four days he arriv'd at the town of Irjab, which he found nearly repair'd: there he fix'd his imperial tent, and the army encamp'd in order of battel, every one in his proper poſt. Timur order'd that the rebuilding of the town ſhou'd be continu'd; and the Emir Chahmelik and Gelaleliſlam had a commiſſion for rebuilding of moſques and other public buildings, inſomuch that all was finiſh'd in fourteen days. Timur had before commanded the Tavachis not to ſuffer any of the ſubjects of Mouſſa, employ'd in repairing the town, to re-enter it after once going out: and this order was not given without cauſe; for on the ſeventeenth of Zilhadge Sept. 16, in the morning, Timur having taken horſe to 1398. view the place, with its ditches and wall, accompany'd with many princes and generals, who march'd on foot on each ſide him, he was perceiv'd by ſeven of Mouſſa's labourers, who were in an upper ſtory of an houſe ſituate behind a gate of the town; and being within bow-ſhot of him, they let fly from a window with deſign to kill him. But they did not take good aim, and the ruſtling the arrow made only ſtartled his horſe. However Timur went into the town by another gate, and caus'd Mouſſa and his ac-

plices to be ſeiz'd: the ſeven aſſaſſins who were in the houſe from whence the arrow was ſhot, took up their arms to defend themſelves, and wounded ſome of our men; but at laſt Keleki Siſtani broke open the houſe with ſome ſoldiers of his company, and put 'em to death.

At nine a-clock the ſame morning, Timur deliver'd to Malek Mehemed his enemy Mouſſa, with two hundred of his men, whom he had ſeiz'd. Malek, aſſiſted by three of his ſervants, cut off all their heads, to revenge himſelf for the death of his brother whom they had ſlain, and made a tower of them. Then they pillag'd all his country and ſubjects, and put to death ſeveral leaders of thoſe villains who were mix'd among our officers. The women and children, as alſo the goods and moveables of theſe tyrants, were given to the poor oppreſs'd people of Irjab, who, for being of Malek Mehemed's ſide, had ſuffer'd for ſeveral years great violence and injuſtice. And on this occaſion we ſee that paſſage of the Alcoran fulfill'd, which threatens tyrants with confuſion and ruin.

Timur gave the principality of Irjab to Malek Mehemed, and by this means deliver'd travellers from being infeſted by theſe inſolent robbers. Thus as he render'd kingdoms flouriſhing by his goodneſs and equity, ſo he ſuppreſs'd diſorders by his power and juſtice.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Timur marches to Chenouzan and Nagaz; and deſtroys the robbers of the nation of the Pervians.

TIMUR, after having ſettled the affairs of the country of Irjab, which requir'd as great authority as his to put it in order, the eighteenth of Zilhadge, in the year 800, march'd towards Chenouzan. After having paſt many foreſts and ſome mountains, he encamp'd near that place; where he ſtaid the next day, and ſent his ſon prince Calil Sultan to Banai [a], by the road of Captchagai [b], at the head of the baggage, accompany'd by ſeveral Emirs. Sept. 17. 1398.

Timur having march'd all night with great diligence, went with ſome thouſands of horſe towards the fortreſs of Nagaz, where he arriv'd early on the twenty-firſt of Zilhadge. Sept. 20.

It is to be remark'd, that the court having been before at Cabul, Emir Solyman Chah, and other commanders of the troops of Coraſſana, were come to Nagaz, according to Timur's order, to rebuild that place; and that they had work'd very hard there, ſo that it was compleatly fortify'd. Timur at his arrival there, was inform'd that the nation of the Pervians, a ſort of Ouganis, to whom he had ſent orders to appear before his throne with their troops, to ſerve in the army, had revolted, and refus'd

[a] Towns of Cabuleſtan near the Indus.

[b] A town of Cabuleſtan, between the Indus and the river of Cabul.

to

Book IV. to ſend their men: for one day when Mirza Pir Mehemed, who had been to view ſome neighbouring places in India, was return'd with his troops and plunder, bringing with him to Cabul ſeveral captives; theſe inconſiderate men were ſo bold as to ſtop up their paſſage, to plunder 'em of part of the ſpoils, paſs the river of Hir, and entrench themſelves in the high mountains and foreſts, from whence they conſtantly went to rob on the high-ways. Timur had no ſooner advice of this, than giving looſe to his paſſion, he the ſame day march'd in ſearch of theſe inſolent people, whoſe end muſt of courſe be unfortunate. He came up to 'em in three days, and order'd all his ſoldiers to diſmount, that they might march into the woods and mountains with more eaſe; and ſo ſeize and exterminate theſe rebels. They attack'd 'em with the greateſt vigor, and after a weak defence cut 'em in pieces, made their children priſoners, and pillag'd their goods, having ſet fire to their habitations; and as there were ſome who fled, Timur would ſtay ſome time in this mountain, to deliver paſſengers from the fear of theſe robbers. At this place the deputys and Kolanters * of the nation of Oubel[a] came to caſt themſelves at his feet, to beg pardon, and implore his protection. This monarch, who ſought nothing more than the welfare of his people, not only forgave their crimes, but receiv'd 'em into his protection, heap'd favors on 'em, and granted 'em many privileges, becauſe of their ſincerity.

* Magiſtrates.

[a] A nation among the Ouganis.

The

Chap. 8.

The Emir Solyman Chah having reſtor'd the town of Nagaz to its former ſplendor, learnt that the Kelatians [a], a ſtrong and numerous people, had refus'd to obey the orders of the emperor, and to come to the camp with their troops. This news oblig'd him to fall on 'em, which he did with ſuch bravery, that in two days and nights he defeated theſe giants, who before that time were eſteem'd the moſt valiant men in the world: he pillag'd their country, cut to pieces a great number of 'em, put the reſt in chains, made their children ſlaves, and burnt their houſes. After this he left the country of the Kelatians, and return'd in triumph to the imperial throne, where he was receiv'd with all the reſpect his actions deſerv'd.

Sept. 30. 1398.

The firſt of Muharrem in the year 801, Timur leaving the country of the Pervians, went down to view the neighbourhood of the town of Nagaz: he ſent the Emir Solyman Chah to Moultan with good troops, to Mirza Pir Mehemed; and leaving Chah Ali Ferahi with five hundred foot in gariſon at Nagaz, he departed for Banou, in which he left Pir Ali Selduz, and the Emir Huſſein Courtchi, with a ſufficient gariſon.

Octob. 7.

Timur departed from Banou, and the eighth of Muharrem arriv'd at the river Indus, at the very place where Sultan Gelaleddin king of Carizme, when he fled from the wrath of Genghiz Can, ſwam croſs the river. Genghiz Can encamp'd here, but did not paſs the Indus.

See the hiſtory of Genghiz Can, Book IV. Ch. 5.

Timur had a bridge of boats and reeds made over this river, in which all the army were

[a] A nation among the Ouganis.

con-

Book IV. conſtantly employ'd; and it was finiſh'd in two days.

At this place he diſmiſs'd the Ambaſſadors who came to pay their reſpects to him, among whom were the ſaid Mehemed Medini, ambaſſador from Mecca and Medina [3], and from all the princes and Cherifs of Arabia, who pray'd this conqueror to honor 'em one day with a viſit, and take 'em under his protection. Timur alſo diſmiſs'd the ambaſſador of Eskender Chah, prince of Cachmir [4], whom he had ſent to beſeech his majeſty to receive him upon his obedience: he order'd him to tell his maſter that he receiv'd his offer with pleaſure, and that he deſir'd he wou'd not fail to come to him at the town of Dipalpour [5], and there join the imperial camp.

CHAP. IX.

Timur paſſes the river Indus.

Octob. 11. 1398. THE twelfth of Muharrem in the year 801, which anſwers to that of the Leopard, Timur croſs'd the Indus at the head of his army, and encamp'd at the entrance of the great deſart of Gerou, which is call'd Tchol Gelali, becauſe the Sultan Gelaleddin Carezem Chah, flying from the wrath of Genghiz Can, croſs'd the Indus at this place, and enter'd this deſart to avoid being put to death by the ſword of

[3] The Cherifs of Mecca and Medina offer'd to declare Timur Calif, tho Bajazet was inveſted with that high dignity.

[4] A province, whoſe capital was Nagar.

[5] A town of India, S. of Lahor.

that

that conqueror. At Timur's arrival at this place, the Rayas, and the principal inhabitants of the mountain of Couhdgioud [6], came to make their ſubmiſſions to him: they offer'd him preſents, promis'd to remit to him conſiderable ſums, and ſerve him on all occaſions. Chap. 10.

Some months before, Rouſtem Tagi Bougai Berlas had been ſent with an army towards Moultan; and having ſtopt ſome days at Couhdgioud, theſe ſame Rayas did him ſeveral important ſervices, furniſh'd him with proviſions, and even mony to pay his ſoldiers. Timur was highly pleas'd with 'em upon theſe accounts, and reſolv'd they ſhou'd enjoy the fruits of his clemency: he prohibited every one from inſulting 'em, and order'd they ſhou'd be treated with humanity and affection. After which they return'd home joyful and contented, without either being moleſted or depriv'd of their uſual place of reſidence. Theſe are the effects and fruits of civility. The poet ſays, We ought always to be under the protection of our own actions.

CHAP. X.

Chehabeddin Mobarec Chah Temini commits hoſtilitys againſt the emperor after his ſubmiſſion.

CHEHABEDDIN Mobarec, who was prince of an iſle of the river of Jamad [7], had a great number of officers under him, and was very

[6] A mountain S. E. of Cachmir.

[7] A river near the Indus: it is the continuation of the river Dendana, which comes from Cachmir.

rich

Book IV. rich in mony and moveables. When the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehangir march'd to the frontiers of Moultan, Chehabeddin came to him to kiſs his feet, and met with a handſom reception from him. He ſubmitted to the emperor, and after he had ſtaid ſome time to make his court to the Mirza, he took his leave, and return'd home; where he ſuffer'd himſelf to be overtaken with pride, and truſting in the ſtrength of his iſle, which he believ'd inacceſſible, he fortify'd it with a good ditch and high walls. Timur at his arrival at the river of Jamad, had advice of his revolt; and the fourteenth of Mu-
Octob. 13. harrem order'd the Emir Cheik Noureddin to attack this iſle at the head of his Toman, and as ſoon as he made himſelf maſter of it, to put to the ſword every one he ſhou'd find therein. When the Emir came there, he and his ſoldiers caſt themſelves into the water to croſs over. The beſieg'd prepar'd to obſtruct their paſſage, and there was as furious a battel fought as was ever heard of, which laſted till night. Chehabeddin at the head of ten thouſand men came by the windings of the river to attack our army in the rear during night, and fought with great courage and bravery. The Emir Cheik Noureddin, a man of good conduct, receiv'd the enemy with the greateſt intrepidity; and after ſeveral attacks entirely defeated 'em, conſtraining ſome to leap into the water, where they were drown'd, and killing the reſt. Manſour and Dourege Tchoura, officers of the emperor, perform'd many noble actions, and receiv'd ſeveral wounds.

Timur came with diligence to this place, and encamp'd near the iſle. Chehabeddin, who till that time had never us'd precaution in an affair, was ſo prudent as to get ready two hundred

dred flat-bottom'd boats, that he might eſcape if he ſhou'd be conquer'd. Whereupon at his return from the night-attack, in which he was vanquiſh'd, he fled with his domeſtics in theſe boats. With a great deal of difficulty they eſcap'd, rowing along the river Jamad; and at length they came to Outcha[1], a town of India. Chap. 10.

The Emir Cheik Noureddin had orders to purſue him along the banks of the river: he ſlew a great number of theſe Indians with arrows. When he return'd, the emperor rewarded thoſe who had behav'd themſelves gallantly on this occaſion, and were wounded, giving 'em veſts, and other things. Chehabeddin's boats arriving near the frontiers of Moultan, the troops of Mirza Pir Mehemed and Mirza Charoc, commanded by Solyman Chah, who had been ſent out as ſcouts, hinder'd their paſſage, and ſeizing the boats on the river, cut 'em to pieces. Chehabeddin caſt his wife and children into the river, and half dead gain'd the bank. As many of the prince's ſubjects were retir'd into the woods, Timur order'd Chamelik to enter 'em, and if poſſible to exterminate all who were fled there for refuge. Chamelik accordingly enter'd the foreſts and bogs, and having ſlain a great number of theſe miſerable people, and pillag'd their effects, return'd to the camp, laden with booty, and a great number of captives.

After the ſucceſs againſt Chehabeddin, the army march'd five or ſix days on the banks of the Jamad; and on the twenty-fourth of Muharrem it encamp'd on the borders of the Genave[2], at a fortreſs over-againſt which the Jamad and the Genave join in one ſtream, where Octob. 23.

---

[1] On the Jamad above Moultan, long. 117. lat. 30.

[2] It falls into the Rave above Moultan.

* * *

the

Book IV. the waves daſhing againſt one another, make it appear like the troubled ocean. Timur order'd a bridge to be built over it, which was finiſh'd on the twenty-ſeventh of Muharrem, all the troops having been employ'd in it. We don't find in hiſtory that ever any one built a bridge over it before: and even Turmechirin Can [1], who formerly croſs'd it, was oblig'd to ſwim over.

CHAP. XI.

Timur's arrival at Toulonba.

TIMUR paſs'd this great river [*] with all his army, and encamp'd on the other ſide: the next day having entirely left the bridge to give free paſſage to the baggage and the reſt of the army, he went to encamp over-againſt the town of Toulonba, on the bank of the river, thirty-five miles * from Moultan. The princes and Rayas, accompany'd by the Cheriffs and doctors, immediately came out of the place to caſt themſelves at Timur's feet; they kiſs'd the ground on which he ſtood, and were handſomly treated by him.

*Gourouh.

Octob. 28. The ſame day Timur paſs'd the river of Toulonba, and the twenty-ninth of Muharrem ſtaid on the other bank, till all the army was

Octob. 29. croſs'd over. The firſt of Sefer he encamp'd in the neighboring plains of Toulonba.

[1] Deſcended from Genghiz Can: he conquer'd India, Anno Dom. 1240.

[*] Jamad and Genave join'd.

The

The miniſters tax'd this town at two millions of crowns for the ſafety of their effects and lives. The Cheriffs, becauſe of the nobleneſs of their race, and the doctors for their learning and virtue, were exempted from this tax. They had even preſents made 'em of veſts and other things, becauſe Timur was naturally reſpectful to men of their character. Chap. 1.

Some part of this tax was ſoon paid; but the inhabitants making a difficulty of paying the reſt, the troops, who were in great want of proviſions, had orders to carry away all the grain they cou'd find. During the night the ſoldiers, under pretence of making a ſearch, march'd towards the town, which they ſack'd and pillag'd, burning all the houſes, and even making the inhabitants ſlaves; the Cheriffs and doctors being the only perſons exempt from this misfortune.

Timur had advice that a number of Rayas and little princes in the neighbourhood of Toulonba, who had before ſubmitted to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, had now revolted; whereupon he ſent the Emir Chamelik, and the Cheik Mehemed Aicoutmur, with their regiments, to ravage the country of theſe Rayas, with orders to puniſh 'em ſeverely, for an example to others. The Emirs immediately departed, and enter'd the foreſts whither the enemy was retir'd. They kill'd two thouſand Indians, who became a prey to the wild beaſts and birds; and carrying away their children priſoners, they return'd to the court, laden with the ſpoils of the rebels.

The eighth of Sefer, Timur departed from Toulonba, and next day encamp'd on the borders of a deep lake, ſituate on the bank of the Biah [1], within ſight of the town of Chanavaz. Nov. 5.

[1] A river near Lahor, which falls into the Rave.

CHAP. XII.

Timur marches in ſearch of Nuſret Coukeri.

TIMUR, having advice that Nuſret, brother of the Cheik Coukeri, had ſurrounded this deep and large lake with a wall, behind which he had retir'd with two thouſand men, immediately took horſe, and leaving the baggage, went to encamp with his army on the borders of this lake. He rang'd his ſoldiers in order of battel, and gave the command of the right wing to the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Allahdad, the two greateſt men of their time. The left wing was given to the Emirs Chamelik and Cheik Mehemed Aicoutmur. The main body was commanded by Ali Sultan Tavachi, with the infantry of Coraſſana. And being all in order, they prepar'd to give a vigorous aſſault. Nuſret at the head of a thouſand Indians poſted himſelf on the borders of the lake in view of our men. Ali Sultan immediately attack'd him with his infantry; and tho the marſhes and ſloughs were very diſadvantageous to our men, yet they gave marks of their invincible courage. Ali Sultan was wounded in the fight, as well as ſeveral others of our captains: but the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Allahdad, entering into the bogs, cut all the enemys to pieces, and fixing their heads on their lances, laid 'em at Timur's feet. It's uncertain what became of Nuſret, whether he fled into the deſart, or was ſlain. The ſoldiers ſet fire to the houſes of theſe rebels, pillag'd their goods, and brought away a great number of cattel.

The tenth of Sefer the army paſs'd this great lake, and the low-lands, which were full of bogs and marſhes, notwithſtanding the extreme difficulty of the ways; and went to encamp at Chanavaz, a great and populous town. Here they found ſeveral granarys full of corn, of which the ſoldiers took as much as they had occaſion for. Chap. 13. Nov. 7.

Shortly after the Emirs had orders to depart. They croſs'd the river of Biah, in purſuit of ſome ſoldiers of Nuſret who had fled. They overtook 'em, and having cut 'em in pieces, brought away a great booty. Timur ſtaid two days at Chanavaz, and ſet fire to the granarys which were left, in order to reduce the infidels to extremity; and on the 13th of Sefer he de- Nov. 10. camp'd, and went down to the banks of the river Biah over againſt the town of Dgendgian, to which place the baggage and main body of the army was come. Here he made all his troops paſs the river. The ſame day Herimulc, a Turkiſh domeſtic of prince Charoc, came from Herat: he acquainted the emperor with this prince's good ſtate of health, which very much pleas'd him, and excited him to read the Alcoran, and diſtribute alms in token of joy.

CHAP. XIII.

Arrival of prince Pir Mehemed Gehanghir from Moultan.

We ſaid in the chapter * which gives the reaſon of Timur's march into India, that Mirza Pir Mehemed beſieg'd the town of Moultan, where, after a ſiege of ſix months, Siege of Moultan.

* Chap. 12.

Book IV. the inhabitants were in ſuch great want of victuals, that they were conſtrain'd to eat uncleanly things, and even dead bodys: and Sarenk the governor being at length oblig'd to fly, the town was taken by our prince, who immediately ſent advice of it to the emperor. In the mean while there happen'd an [4] inundation, which caus'd a mortality among our horſes, and oblig'd us to carry the ſick horſes into the town, and there ſhut 'em up.

Upon this accident the Rayas of theſe countrys revolted, tho' they had before ſubmitted. They declar'd war againſt us by acts of hoſtility, maſſacring the governors who had been ſet over 'em. And as our men had no horſes, theſe inſolent people advanc'd during night to the gates of the town, which extremely diſturb'd our Mirza: but at length the enemy, on advice of Timur's approach, flung away their weapons, and fled.

The Mirza being deliver'd from this trou-
Nov. 11. ble, came out of Moultan the fourteenth of Sefer, and march'd to the imperial camp, on the banks of the Biah; where he had the honor to kiſs the emperor's feet, who tenderly embrac'd him, and gave him a handſom reception.

Juneid Bourouldai, his brother Bayazid, and Mehemed Dervich Taicani, who in the wars of Carezem had fled from the Emir Gehancha, and with great difficulty were got into India,

---

[4] Pechehal is the name the Indians give to the great rains and inundations which happen in India at a certain time of the year; for then they ſay to travellers, Don't go now, it is the ſeaſon of Pechehal. This inundation is caus'd by the great rains and ſnows, which falling off the mountains, cover the flat countrys, fill the rivers, and overflow like the Nile in Egypt; and this conſtantly happens in the months of July, Auguſt, September and October.

having

having heard that the Mirza Pir Mehemed had made himſelf maſter of Moultan, came from the very furtheſt parts of India to implore his protection. The Mirza carry'd 'em to the emperor, and procur'd 'em the honor to ſalute him, begging pardon for 'em. Timur granted their lives, but not their libertys, before they had been baſtinado'd according to the laws of Genghiz Can. The fifteenth of Sefer, Timur croſs'd the Biah, and went to encamp at Dgendgian, forty miles diſtant from Moultan. In three days the ſoldiers paſs'd this river, ſome in barks, and others by ſwimming, notwithſtanding its rapidity, without any damage. Chap. 13. Nov. 12.

Timur ſtaid four days at Dgendgian; and the eighteenth of Sefer, the prince Pir Mehemed made a ſumptuous banquet, and offer'd his rich preſents, which conſiſted of crowns of gold, belts of gold, Arabian horſes with gold ſaddles, jewels of great price, ſtuffs, curious veſſels, baſons and pots of gold and ſilver; of which there was ſo great a number, that the ſecretarys and comptrollers of the Divan employ'd two days in regiſtring 'em. Timur diſtributed theſe preſents among the Emirs, Viſiers and officers of his court, according to their deſerts: and as the Mirza's ſoldiers had loſt their horſes in this campain, and ſome were oblig'd to ride on oxen, and others to go on foot, he gave thirty thouſand horſes among 'em. Then Timur departed for Schoual [5]: on the twenty firſt of Sefer he encamp'd at Aſouan [5], where he ſtaid one day, and at length went to Gehaoul [6]. Nov. 15. Nov. 18.

[5] Towns S. of the river Biah.
[6] A town between Lahor and Dipalpour, S. of the Biah.

Book IV. The inhabitants of Dipalpour [7] had formerly ſubmitted to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, who plac'd over 'em a governor nam'd Meſſafer Cabuli, with a thouſand men: but there being a mortality among the horſes of the Mirza, which conſequently diminiſh'd his troops, theſe men join'd with the Goulam [8] guards of Sultan Firouz Chah, and ſlew Meſſafer with the thouſand men he commanded. On the report of Timur's approach, theſe rebels, thinking to eſcape the emperor's fury, retir'd with their effects into the fortreſs of Batnir. Timur, at his arrival at Gehoual, left the Emir Chahmelik and Dolet Timur Tavachi, with the baggage and main-body of the army, which he order'd 'em to conduct by the way of Dipalpour, and to join him at Samane, a town near Deli. Then he departed with ten thouſand horſe, and got to Adjoudan
Nov. 21. on the twenty fourth of Sefer; the inhabitants of which town having been drawn from their obedience to the nephew of the Cheik [illegible] reddin, by the Cheiks Munaver and Sa[illegible] ſhamefully abandon'd their country: for theſe Cheiks after having ſeduc'd 'em, took 'em into their pay, and carry'd 'em to a town call'd Batnir, except ſome few who fled to Deli with the Cheik Munaver.

The Cherifs and doctors, being inform'd of the reſpect Timur always ſhew'd to men of their character, were ſo far from being diſturb'd at

[7] A town between Lahor and Deli.

[8] Goulams are the corps-de-garde of the Indian [illegible], who of chriſtian ſlaves turn Mahometans. They are educated by the king's order in the noble exerciſes of arms and ſcience. There are alſo ſuch in Perſia, who in their youth are call'd Goulams, and when grown up and incorporated among the guards [illegible] bach.

theſe actions, that as ſoon as they had advice of his arrival in their quarters, they came immediately to the foot of the throne, and met with a kind reception there. Timur gave the government of their town to Moulana Naſereddin Amor, and to Chahab Mehemed ſon of Coja Mahmoud, with orders to hinder the troops in their paſſage from moleſting the inhabitants of that place. Thus Timur treated thoſe civilly who rely'd on his protection, and extirpated thoſe who refus'd to ſubmit, pillaging their goods, and carrying away priſoners their women and children. Chap. 14.

CHAP. XIV.

The taking the town of Bend, and the fortreſs of Batnir; the inhabitants of which places are put to the ſword.

THE citadel of Batnir was the ſtrongeſt and moſt noted place in India; ſituate in a deſart, and out of the common road. The inhabitants have no water, except from a great lake near the gate of the town, which is never fill'd but in inundations: and as no foreign army ever came into theſe parts before, the inhabitants of Dipalpour, Adjoudan and other towns fled for refuge into Batnir, to eſcape the fury of our ſoldiers. So many had retir'd hither, that the place not being large enough to contain all their cattel and effects, they had left without the walls a great number of cattel, and ſeveral ſuburbs full'd with moveable goods.

Book IV. The twenty fifth of Sefer, in the morning, Timur enter'd Adjoudan; he viſited the ſepulchre of the Cheik Ferid Cheker Condge, whoſe protection he implor'd near God's throne. Then he departed for the conqueſt of Batnir, croſs'd the river Dena, and encamp'd on the hill of Caleſcuteli, ten miles diſtant from Adjoudan, and fifty from Batnir; three miles, which they call Gourouh, making one Farſanga, or a Perſian league. Timur read the noon-prayers at Caleſcuteli; and then he march'd all night by moonlight, and croſs'd the great deſart in one day.

Nov. 22.

Nov. 23. The twenty ſixth of Sefer, at ten in the morning, he came before Batnir, and immediately caus'd the drums to be beat, and the great cry Souroun to be made: and the ſoldiers pillag'd whatever they cou'd find without the place. Raoudouldgin the governor prepar'd to make reſiſtance. He had a great many ſoldiers and domeſtics, and reign'd as a ſovereign in that country. He forc'd the merchants and caravans to pay cuſtom to him, no one being ſafe from his inſults. The ſtrength of the place, the many officers, and the abundance of effects he had, made him ſo inſolent and proud, that he refus'd to obey Timur; for which reaſon the army march'd directly againſt the place. The right wing was commanded by the Emir Solyman Chah, the Cheik Noureddin, and Allahdad; and the left had for its leaders, the Mirza Calil Sultan, and the Cheik Mehemed Aicoutmur.

At the firſt attack our generals made themſelves maſters of the out-parts and ſuburbs, where they ſlew a great number of Indians, and got a vaſt quantity of booty; they alſo took the counterſcarp: and at the ſame time the Emirs, colonels and captains inveſted the town;

and

and arming themſelves with their bucklers, gave a ſecond aſſault. Raoudouldgin poſted himſelf at the gate of the town with the braveſt of his Indians; but the Emirs Solyman Chah, Seid Coja and Gehan Mulc, who belong'd to prince Charoc's court, march'd to attack that gate. Seid Coja and Gehan Mulc fell briskly upon the enemy near the perſon of the Indian prince, and perform'd ſeveral heroic actions. Then all the ſoldiers began to advance at the ſound of kettledrums, drums and trumpets, and the terrible Kerrenai. They gave many aſſaults; and as they were on the point of gaining the place, Raoudouldgin, deſpairing of being able to make any longer reſiſtance, demanded quarter, and had recourſe to the emperor's clemency. He ſent a Cheriff to Timur, to deſire a ſuſpenſion of arms for one day, on condition that he came the next to caſt himſelf at his feet. Timur granted his petition for the meſſenger's ſake, who was of the race of Mahomet; he order'd his ſoldiers to retire from the gate of the town, and even from the ſuburbs, and to incamp in the open plain. Next day Raoudouldgin not keeping his word, orders were given that every Emir ſhou'd ſap that part of the walls which was over-againſt his reſpective poſt, that they might the more eaſily take the town by aſſault. Every one obey'd, and all the fire, ſtones and arrows the beſieg'd caſt upon our men, cou'd not divert 'em. Raoudouldgin and all his court being aſtoniſh'd at their intrepidity, got upon the tops of their towers, and made ſignals that they implor'd the conqueror's clemency, acknowledg'd their fault, and wou'd for the future obey the emperor, only begging he wou'd ſave their lives. Timur, following the precepts of the Alcoran, Chap. 14.

which

Book IV. which tells us that pardon is the tithe of victory, hearken'd to their prayer: whereupon in the evening Raoudouldgin ſent his ſon Naib, with preſents of animals and arabian horſes, to the foot of the throne. Timur, after a handſom reception, gave him a veſt of gold-brocade, a belt and ſword; and then ſent him back to his father. This prince took courage, and mov'd at Timur's civilitys, came out of the place the
Nov. 25. twenty-eighth of Sefer at nine in the morning, accompany'd by the Cheik Sadeddin Adjoudani: he kiſs'd the threſhold of the door, and at length approach'd the imperial carpet; he made ſeveral preſents of animals and three ſets of arabian horſes, nine in a ſet, with ſaddles of gold to each. Timur recompens'd him with veſts of gold, belts of gold, and a crown. And becauſe the people who were in this place, were very numerous, eſpecially thoſe of Dipalpour and Adjoudan; the Emirs Solyman Chah and Allahdad had orders to guard the gate of the
Nov. 26. fortreſs. And on the twenty-ninth of Sefer, Timur order'd the people aſſembled there to come before him. They were put into the cuſtody of ſome faithful perſons; and near three hundred Arabian horſes were taken from 'em, which Timur gave to the Emirs and braveſt warriors of the army. Five hundred of the inhabitants of Dipalpour were put to the ſword, and their wives and children made ſlaves, for having treacherouſly ſlain Meſſafer Cabuli, and a thouſand horſemen belonging to the Mirza Pir Mehemed. And as for the people of Adjoudan, who had abandon'd Timur, part of 'em were ſlain, and the reſt made priſoners, after having their effects pillag'd.

Kemaleddin, brother of Raoudouldgin, having ſeen the puniſhment of thoſe who had deſerv'd it, was ſeiz'd with a panic fear; and next day, tho Raoudouldgin was in the imperial camp, he caus'd the gate of the town to be ſhut. This ſo irritated Timur, that he caus'd Raoudgouldgin to be put in chains, and order'd the ſiege to begin again, and the place to be fill'd with the blood of the inhabitants. The ſoldiers having ſet themſelves to ſap the walls, the beſieg'd ſoon found they ſhou'd not be able to defend themſelves againſt ſo warlike a people, and an ever-victorious prince; they were perſuaded that if the place ſhou'd be taken by aſſault, they muſt not expect their lives, for repentance wou'd then ſignify nothing: whereupon they reſolv'd to beg pardon of the emperor. Accordingly Raoudouldgin's brother and ſon went out, to beſeech Timur to grant a general pardon, and deliver'd the keys of the town and caſtle into the hands of our officers. Chap. 14.

The firſt of Rabiulevel, the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Allahdad enter'd the place to receive the tribute for ſaving the people's lives; but the Rayas and other chiefs wou'd not accept the tax: and as there were among the reſt Guebres and idolaters, diſputes aroſe, which cou'd not be terminated without commotions and broils. Timur was incens'd at this proceeding; and order'd that this rabble ſhou'd be put to the ſword, and the houſes of the infidels raz'd to the ground. The ſoldiers ſcal'd the walls, and enter'd the place ſword in hand. The Guebres ſet fire to their own houſes, caſting their wives, children and goods into the fires; and thoſe who call'd themſelves Muſſulmans cut their wives and childrens throats. And thus the men of theſe two ſorts uniting together, Nov. 28.

put

Book IV put themſelves in a poſture of defence, being reſolv'd to die ſword in hand. They fought in a cruel obſtinate manner: and as theſe men were exceeding ſtrong and courageous, tho ignorant, they may be compar'd to an army of ſatyrs, who fight only in deſpair.

Our men having enter'd the place, and cry'd out Allahou Ecber [1], fell upon theſe enrag'd people, who ſlew ſeveral Muſſulmans, and wounded others. The Emir Cheik Noureddin, who to partake of the honor of this expedition, had reſolv'd to dare the greateſt dangers, advanc'd into the midſt of the enemy, and ſtruck with his ſword one of the braveſt of 'em, whom he diſabled from fighting. But the Emir was immediately ſurrounded by a troop of Guebres, and was near being ſeiz'd by 'em, had not Ouzoun Mezid of Bagdad, and Firouz of Siſtan made their way thro theſe infidels, and deliver'd him from danger. Victory at length declaring for our men, they ſlew ten thouſand Indians, ſet fire to the houſes which remain'd, and even ruin'd the walls of the town, ſo that it look'd like an uninhabitable place. The emperor diſtributed among the ſoldiers all the gold, ſilver, horſes and habits that were in the place. He rewarded the wounded; and gave great gifts to Ouzoun Mezid and Firouz, who had acted with ſo much reſolution in delivering the Emir Cheik Noureddin, and rais'd 'em to dignitys according to their merit.

[1] God is great. The Mahometants begin all their prayers with theſe words, which they often repeat, with their face towards the ground.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

Timur departs from Batnir, for Sereſti, Fatabad and Ahrouni.

AFTER the ruin of Batnir, the multitude of dead carcaſſes which infected the air, oblig'd Timur to depart thence the third of Rabiulevel. When he had march'd about fourteen or fifteen miles, he came to Kenarei Haouz *, where he encamp'd. Next day he went to the caſtle of Firouze; and march'd as far as the town of Sereſti, the inhabitants of which being infidels, eat ſwines-fleſh. They fled on advice of Timur's arrival, who ſent out a detachment of horſe in purſuit of 'em. Theſe cavalry overtook a great number, whom they put to the ſword, and brought their horſes and goods back to the camp; Adel Ferach being the only perſon on our ſide who was ſlain. Timur ſtaid one day at Sereſti, and the next march'd eighteen miles, as far as Fatabad, where he encamp'd. The inhabitants of this town were alſo fled. Some of our men purſu'd 'em, deſtroy'd ſeveral, and return'd loaden with booty, as ſilver, furniture and cattel. Nov. 30.

* The bank of the baſon.

The ſeventh of Rabiulevel, Timur paſs'd by the town of Redgebuour, and went to encamp near that of Ahrouni, which was inhabited by a brutiſh people, unfit for making compliments to the emperor, or demanding his protection: wherefore part of 'em were deſtroy'd like beaſts, and the reſt made ſlaves by the ſoldiers, who carry'd away their corn, and ſet fire to their houſes. Dec. 4.

The

Book IV. Dec. 5. The eighth of Rabiulevel, the army departed from Ahrouni, to encamp in the plains of the village of Touhene, a country inhabited by Getes, who had by force of arms made themſelves maſters of it a long time, and committed diſorders there. They rob'd on the high-ways, inſulted and pillag'd the caravans, and not having the leaſt marks of religion, murder'd all who oppos'd their violence. On the report of the arrival of our troops, theſe wretches hid themſelves in the midſt of a wood, where almoſt all the trees were full of prickles.

The emperor ſent againſt 'em a regiment commanded by Toukel Hindoui Carcara, and Moulana Naſereddin Amor. Theſe two lords made ſo ſtrict a ſearch after theſe robbers, that they put to the ſword near two thouſand, render'd themſelves maſters of their cattel, and return'd to the imperial camp, dragging after 'em ſeveral of theſe wretches loaded with chains.

CHAP. XVI.

Timur marches againſt a nation of rebellious Getes.

TIMUR's intention in theſe wars being chiefly to exterminate robbers, tyrants and infidels, to put a ſtop to their diſorders, and give peace and tranquillity to the people; he departed from Touhene the ninth of Rabiulevel; and having ſent the baggage under the conduct of Solyman Chah towards Samane, he march'd beyond the caſtle of Mounec, where he encamp'd. Then he enter'd the deſarts and woods, whither the Getes were retir'd: he

he exterminated two thouſand of 'em, mak- Chap. 16.
ing their wives and children ſlaves, and
pillaging their goods and cattel. Thus he de-
liver'd the country from the fear of their inſults.

Several Cheriffs, who made their ordinary reſi-
dence in a town in theſe quarters, came to caſt
themſelves at Timur's feet, and kiſs'd his hands.
Timur receiv'd 'em with demonſtrations of
eſteem and affection, gave 'em veſts and conſi-
derable preſents; and fix'd a governor over
'em, to defend 'em from the inſults of our ſol-
diers.

The tenth of Rabiulevel, the Emir Solyman Dec. 7.
Chah departed with all the train of artiliery
which was before Mounec; and march'd to-
wards the town of Samane, where he ſtaid one
night. The eleventh of Rabiulevel he arriv'd Dec. 8.
at the river of Kehker, at which place Timur
join'd him, after he had been againſt the Getes.
Here he ſtaid four days, to wait the remainder
of the baggage. He departed hence the fif- Dec. 12.
teenth of Rabiulevel, and went to encamp near
the bridge of Foulcouble, where he was join'd
by the Emirs and ſoldiers of the left wing,
commanded by the Sultan Mahmoud Can, and
ſeveral others, whom Timur had ſent from the
meadow of Cabul by a particular road into
India, where they had taken towns, ravag'd
the country, and brought into ſubjection ſeveral
people.

The ſixteenth of Rabiulevel, the emperor, at Dec. 13.
the head of his army, croſs'd the bridge of Foul-
couble, and encamp'd on the other ſide. The
baggage and remainder of the army from Di-
palpour, under the conduct of the great general
Chamelik, alſo arriv'd the ſame day at the im-
perial camp.

The

Book IV. The twentieth of Rabiulevel, the army de-
Dec. 17. parted from Foulcouble. They went but five miles that day, and encamp'd near the bridge Foulbeiran. The twenty firſt they arriv'd at the town of Kuteil, ſeventeen miles from Samane.

CHAP. XVII.

A review of the whole army marching in order of battel.

WHEN the ſeveral bodys of the army, which had taken different roads, had join'd the imperial camp, orders were given that every Emir ſhou'd repair to his reſpective poſt. The right wing was commanded by the Mirzas Pir Mehemed and Rouſtem; the left by the great Sultan Mahoud, Can of Zagatai, with the princes of the blood, and ſeveral Emirs: and the main body was compos'd of divers Tomans and regiments, which march'd ſix leagues and two miles by the road of Deli.

Dec. 19. The twenty-ſecond of Rabiulevel, they arriv'd at the town of Aſſendi, ſeventeen miles from Kuteil. The inhabitants of Samane, Kuteil, and Aſſendi, who were moſtly idolaters, burnt their own houſes, and fled to Deli; ſo that our men cou'd meet with no one in their country.

Dec. 20. The twenty-third, after a march of ſix miles, they encamp'd at Toglocpour, the inhabitants of which town were of a particular religion. They believ'd that the whole univerſe was govern'd by two beings, the firſt of which they call Yezdan, that is, God; and the other Ahrimen, that is, the devil. The former they explain

explain by light, and the other by darkneſs; pretending that all good proceeds from God, and all evil from the devil. Chap. 17.

Theſe idolaters, call'd Souloun, having all fled, our ſoldiers ſet fire to the town. The twenty-fourth of Rabiulevel the army arriv'd at Panipat, a town twelve miles from Toglocpour. All the inhabitants had fled like the reſt. There was found in this place a granary of wheat, in which were more than ten thouſand Mans [1] of full weight, worth about a hundred and ſixty thouſand Mans of common weight, which was diſtributed among the ſoldiers. The twenty-fifth they march'd about ſix miles, and encamp'd on the bank of the river of Panipat. The twenty-ſixth all the Emirs girded on their cuiraſſes, that they might be ready upon occaſion, and then continu'd their march. Dec. 21. Dec. 22. Dec. 23.

The twenty-ſeventh of Rabiulevel, the Emirs of the right wing had orders to march as far as Gehannumai, a palace built by the Sultan Firouz Chah on the top of a mountain, two leagues from Deli; at the foot of which runs the great river Jaoun. According to this order, they march'd from Canighuzin as far as Gehannumai, putting to the ſword all the officers they met, and making ſlaves of the inhabitants of that country, whom they pillag'd. On monday the twenty-ninth, Timur departed from the town of Pelle, croſs'd the Jaoun, and march'd to the right of the town of Louni, where was abundance of paſture: here he encamp'd the ſame day. This place is ſituate between the two rivers of Jaoun and Hilen. The latter is a great branch which the Sultan Firouz Chah Dec. 24. Dec. 26.

[1] A Man is a pound, or thereabouts.

Book IV. had cut off from the river of Calini, which joins the Jaoun near the town of Firouzabad. The Emirs Gehan Chah, Chamelik, and Allahdad, were already come to the foot of this caſtle, the governors of which, nam'd Maimoun and Maichoum, far from coming to meet 'em with ſubmiſſion, reſolv'd to defend themſelves. At Timur's arrival there, an experienc'd old man came out to caſt himſelf with reſpect at the emperor's feet, and demand his protection: but the inhabitants, who were Guebres and the ſervants of Mellou, perſiſted in their raſh reſolution of reſiſtance.

Then Timur order'd his men to beſiege the town, and ſap the walls. Accordingly they began to do it at noon, and by evening made themſelves maſters of the place, where the Guebres had burnt their houſes, with their women and children. Timur repos'd himſelf this night
Dec. 27. without the place, and the thirtieth of Rabiulevel order'd that the inhabitants who were Mahometans, ſhou'd be ſeparated from the Guebres and ſervants of Mellou Can; which being done, the latter were put to the ſword. All the houſes were pillag'd excepting thoſe of the Cheriffs, for whom Timur always preſerv'd a filial affection, becauſe of their extraction: and then the reſt of the town was ſet on fire.

Dec. 28. The firſt of Rabiulakher, Timur departed from the town of Louni, and went to the bank of the Raoun, before the palace of Gehanumai; ſo that obſerving himſelf the paſſages in theſe places, he might the better know how to give out his orders. He return'd to the camp in the evening, and aſſembled his imperial council, conſiſting of the princes his children, the great Emirs, and generals of his army. He propos'd to 'em the method of forming the ſiege of Deli, capital

capital of India, which was not far off: and it was reſolv'd, that a great quantity of corn and ammunition ſhou'd be got together forthwith, and kept in Gehanumai; and that this great city ſhou'd be block'd up. Chap. 17.

Accordingly the Emirs Solyman Chah, Gehan Chah, and others, were order'd to pillage the granarys in the neighbourhood of Delſi: whereupon they ſet out in the beginning of the month of Rabiulakher. Next day Timur was for taking the diverſion of walking in the palace of Gehannumai: he took horſe with ſeven hundred cavaliers with their cuiraſſes on, paſs'd the river Jaoun, and enter'd into this magnificent palace, to which the Sultan Firouz Chah had given the name of Gehannumai, that is, the mirror of the univerſe, becauſe of its fine proſpect; tho one wou'd think this name was rather given it, to prognoſticate that it ſhou'd fall into the hands of the monarch of the univerſe.

After Timur had conſider'd the beautys of this place, he took care to obſerve from this riſing-ground the propereſt place for the field of battel, that he might draw the enemys thither in caſe they appear'd. In the mean time Ali Sultan Tavachi and Juneid Bouroundai, who had been ſent out as ſcouts, return'd; Ali Sultan bringing with him Mehemed Selef whom he had ſeiz'd, and Juneid bringing another. Mehemed Selef was queſtion'd concerning what had been tranſacted in the city, and then put to death. When Timur had paſs'd the river, to obſerve the field of battel, four thouſand horſe, five thouſand foot, and twenty-ſeven elephants, belonging to Mellou Can, were ſeen near Gehannumai. Our ſcouts, commanded by Seid Coja and Mobacher, to the number

Book IV. of three hundred, attack'd their vanguard, and pretending to fly, led 'em as far as the bank of the river, where a furious battel enſu'd.

On advice of this, Timur ſent Sevindgic Behader and Allahdad to ſuccour Seid Coja: they croſs'd the river with their regiments, and having join'd him, let fly a ſhower of arrows on the enemy; but as they were about to fall on 'em with their drawn ſwords, the Indians, unaccuſtom'd to ſuch brave actions, gave ground at the firſt onſet, and fled towards the city, which with difficulty they enter'd. Seid Coja purſu'd 'em, and ſlew a great number. In this flight an elephant fell and was wounded; which was a prognoſtic of our further victory.

CHAP. XVIII.

Timur marches to the eaſt ſide of the town of Louni. Maſſacre of a hundred thouſand Indian ſlaves who were in his camp.

Dec. 30. THE third of Rabiulakher, Timur departed from Gehannumai, and went to encamp on the eaſt ſide of Louni, where the emperor's ſons *, the great Emirs, the colonels of the regiments, who were gone out to make inroads, came to the imperial camp. Being all aſſembled, Timur, who wou'd not give place to the greateſt generals of the army, nor the moſt undaunted warriors, as well in policy and wiſdom of government, as in war, believ'd it not improper to harangue the leaders, imitating in that the example of the antient emperors and the moſt illuſtrious conquerors. This he did

* Chah Zades.

did with all the eloquence that cou'd be expected on the like occaſion. He ſpoke to 'em of the manner of breaking thro ranks, of overturning ſquadrons, and how they ſhou'd repulſe the enemy: he inſtructed 'em how to make retreats when overpower'd, and how raliy the ſoldiers and return to the attack; how to ſuſtain an obſtinate fight, and how to free one's ſelf from any eminent danger. In ſhort, he explain'd to 'em, with ſo much energy and perſpicuity, all the maxims of war, that his captains admir'd the extraordinary wiſdom and experience which appear'd in his ſpeech, ſaying that the diſcourſes of great princes are the moſt beautiful; inſomuch that being excited by the lively reaſons and learned maxims which he had inculcated, they were fill'd with zeal and ardor, and prepar'd to confront the greateſt dangers in his ſervice. They anſwer'd every thing he propos'd by generous vows for his proſperity, and the continuation of his victorys; they kiſs'd the ground on which he ſtood, to teſtify their reſpect and joy at being the officers of ſo great a conqueror.

Chap. 18.

Timur harangues the army.

The ſame day the Emir Gehan Chah and the other generals remonſtrated to Timur, that ſince his croſſing the Indus, they had made above a hundred thouſand Indians ſlaves, who were moſtly Guebres and idolaters; that they were now in the camp, and wou'd probably in any obſtinate battel, take part with the men of Deli, and falling upon our ſoldiers, make us loſe the battel. This remonſtrance was back'd by thoſe who had obſerv'd, that when the officers of Mellou Can came out of Deli with their elephants to attack us, the ſlaves ſeem'd highly pleas'd. Timur having made a ſerious reflection on all the circumſtances of this affair,

Book IV. paſs'd an order, that thoſe who had any Indian ſlaves ſhou'd put 'em to death; and he who defer'd or refus'd doing ſo, ſhou'd be put to death himſelf, and his wives, children and effects be given to him who ſhou'd inform againſt him.

As ſoon as this order was made public, they began to put it in execution; and in leſs than an hour were put to death a hundred thouſand Indians, according to the ſmalleſt computation. Among others, Moulana Naſereddin Amor, one of the moſt venerable doctors of the court, who cou'd never conſent ſo much as to kill a ſingle ſheep, was conſtrain'd to order fifteen ſlaves whom he had in his houſe to be ſlain. Timur afterwards order'd that one ſoldier out of every ten, ſhou'd keep watch over the Indian women and children, as alſo over the camels they had taken in the pillage.

After theſe precautions, Timur reſolv'd to march to the ſiege of Deli: he ſet out on the Dec. 30. third of Rabiulakher at noon, to encamp on the bank of the Jaoun. The aſtrologers and ſoothſayers ſecretly diſputed concerning the diſpoſition of the heavens, and of the fortunate or unfortunate aſpects of the planets at his departure: but Timur told 'em that neither joy nor affliction, adverſity nor proſperity, depended on the ſtars, but on the will of the Creator of them, of men, and of the univerſe. "I confide, "ſays the emperor, in the aſſiſtance of the Al-"mighty, who has never abandon'd me. "What avail the triplicitys or conjunctions of "the planets? I'll never delay one moment the "execution of my projects, when I have taken "ſufficient meaſures and precautions to bring "'em to perfection." Next morning our hero made the public prayer, and order'd an Al-

coran

coran to be brought him, from whence he might judg of the event of his expedition. Here he found a very favorable anſwer, which pointed out the deſtruction of a people by a wonderful effect of the almighty providence. He explain'd the paſſage in his own favor, and having ſhewn it to all the army, became aſſur'd of the victory. Our warriors being thus animated by the Alcoran, which promis'd 'em the divine protection, Timur deſpis'd the ſtars; and on the fifth of Rabiulakher 801, croſs'd the river of Jaoun, and encamp'd on its banks on the other ſide. The ſoldiers thro precaution made a ditch to ſurround 'em, near a hill nam'd Pouchtei Behali; here they fix'd paliſados of branches of trees; and for a rampart bound ſeveral great buffalos neck and heels, behind which they prepar'd their bucklers and enſigns. Chap. 19. Jan. 1.

CHAP. XIX.

Timur gives battel to Sultan Mahmoud, emperor of India.

TUESDAY-morning the ſeventh of Rabiulakher, Timur drew up his army in order of battel. He gave the command of the right wing to prince Pir Mehemed Gehanghir, accompany'd by ſeveral Emirs. The left wing was led by the Mirzas, Sultan Huſſein, and Calil Sultan, alſo aſſiſted by many great generals. The rear was given to the Mirza Rouſtem, in conjunction with ſeveral illuſtrious Emirs: and the main body was commanded by Timur himſelf; it being fit that this prince, who was Jan. 3.

Book IV. the very life of the ſoldiers, ſhou'd be fix'd in the heart of the army. Every thing being thus ſettled, they march'd in good order.

The enemy alſo advanc'd in order of battel. Their right wing was brought up by Tagi Can, Mir Ali Coja, and other Indian princes. The left had for its leaders Malek Moineddin, and others: and the main body was commanded by the Sultan Mahmoud Can, grandſon of Firouz Chah, emperor of India, he having for his lieutenant-general Mellou Can. This army conſiſted of ten thouſand horſe well eqnipp'd, and forty thouſand foot arm'd to advantage; beſides ſeveral elephants of war, arm'd with cuiraſſes, having between their long teeth great poiſon'd daggers, and on their backs wooden towers in form of baſtions, on which were mounted a great many croſs-bow-men and archers, who cou'd fight under covert as in fortreſſes: and on the ſide of the elephants march'd the flingers of fire and melted pitch, as alſo rockets arm'd at the ends with iron, which give ſeveral blows one after another wherever they fall.

Our ſoldiers were not much diſturb'd about this Indian army: but as they had never ſeen any elephants before, they ignorantly imagin'd that the arrow and ſabre had no effect on the bodys of theſe animals; that they were ſo very ſtrong, that they overthrew trees only by ſhaking the earth as they paſs'd along; that they cou'd ſhove down the ſtrongeſt buildings; and that in battel they wou'd toſs both horſe and horſeman to a vaſt height in the air. This deſpirited ſeveral of our ſide; ſo that when the poſts were fix'd for the officers and lords of the court, Timur, who always ſhew'd reſpect to men of learning, civilly demanded of 'em what poſts they

they wou'd chuſe. Several of theſe doctors, who were always near Timur's perſon, being frighten'd at what they had read and heard of the elephants, anſwer'd immediately, " If it " pleaſe your majeſty, we chuſe to be near the " ladys. " Chap. 19.

Timur's artifice to overcome the Indian elephants.

Timur being ſenſible of his ſoldiers fear, took all neceſſary precautions to arm 'em with courage. He order'd that a rampart of bucklers ſhou'd be made before the ranks, and a ditch dug before the rampart; then he caus'd buffalos to be tied by the neck and feet with long pieces of leather, cloſe to each other; after which on each ſide of 'em and on their heads were fix'd brambles. Beſides this were made iron-hooks, three-fork'd, and fix'd to ſtakes; ſo that when the elephants ſhou'd come to the attack, theſe hooks ſhou'd be planted in their way, and the brambles on the buffalos ſet on fire to put the elephants into diſorder. But victory declar'd for us before we had occaſion to make uſe of theſe machines.

As ſoon as the two armys were in view, Timur got upon an eminence in the middle of the field of battel, near the foot of the hill of Pouchtei Behali, whence he obſerv'd the motion of both armys. When they were on the point of coming to blows, he fell on the earth, and after ſeveral times bowing, beſought God to give him the victory, which he muſt expect from the divine goodneſs, and not from his own valor, and the number of his ſoldiers.

While Timur was at prayers, a ſtrange accident happen'd; which was, that the Emirs of the rear, Cheik Noureddin, Chamelik and Allahdad, imagin'd that if the emperor ſhou'd ſend recruits from the main body to the right wing, and even to the rear, this wou'd be a certain

token

Book IV. token of victory. Accordingly after prayer Timur order'd Ali Sultan Tavachi, and Tagi Bouga, who commanded the regiment of Sanſiz of the Toman of Rouſtem, which belong'd to the main-body; as alſo Altou Bacchi Peſeri, and Mouſſa Recmal, to go with their regiments to ſuccour the right wing: and at the ſame time he ſent another ſquadron of Emirs to re-inforce the rear. This ſo excited the courage of our warriors, that they ruſh'd impetuouſly upon the enemy, whom they attack'd with ſo much vigor, that the Indians were conſtrain'd to give ground, and the great and ſtrong elephants ſuffer'd themſelves to be drove like oxen.

This advantage augmented the valor of the other battalions, who alſo fell upon the enemy, praiſing God. So hot a battel was ne'er ſeen before; the fury of ſoldiers was ne'er carry'd to ſo great exceſs; and ſo frightful a noiſe was never heard: for the cymbals, the common kettledrums, the drums and trumpets, with the great braſs kettledrums which were beat on the elephants backs, the bells which the Indians ſounded, and the cries of the ſoldiers, were enough to make even the earth to ſhake; and there was not a man, how dauntleſs ſoever, who was not ſomewhat diſmay'd at the beginning of the fight. But our vanguard, compos'd of the regiments of many illuſtrious Emirs, perceiving the enemy's vanguard advancing, retir'd behind the right wing to lie in ambuſcade, till they had paſs'd by 'em; then they came out of their ambuſcade, and fell on the enemy ſword in hand like roaring lions, and in a moment ſlew between five and ſix hundred men. The prince Pir Mehemed, who was at the head of the vanguard of the right wing, aſſiſted by the Emir Solyman Chah, attack'd the left of the enemy, which

which confided in the valor of Tagi Can: this Chap. 19.
he did with ſo much conduct, that he drove 'em
beyond the baſon of Havizcas. Then Pir Me-
hemed fell upon the elephants; and theſe furious
animals, finding themſelves cloſely preſs'd, en-
ter'd among the ranks of the enemy's left wing,
and caus'd a further diſorder. Our left wing,
conducted by the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, per-
form'd ſeveral great actions, thro the valor of
that prince, of Gehan Chah Behader, Cayaſed-
din Terean, and others; for they made the
enemy's right wing, commanded by Moined-
din and Malek Hani, give ground, and thoſe
who eſcap'd the edge of the ſword, were re-
puls'd as far as the gate of the city. While
the enemy's wings were thus gain'd, their main
body, ſuſtain'd by the elephants in good order,
came to the attack: they had a warm recep-
tion from the Mirza Rouſtem who commanded
the rear, and was poſted over againſt 'em. A
bloody battel enſu'd, in which the Emir Cheik
Noureddin gave marks of extraordinary valor.
The Emir Chamelik alſo perform'd the moſt he-
roic actions, ruſhing furiouſly into the midſt of
the elephants, with Dolet Timur Tavachi, and
Mengheli Coja. With their lances they over-
threw thoſe who were mounted on the ele-
phants, and with their ſabres and arrows cut
off the trunks of theſe terrible animals, whom
they wounded in all parts of their bodys; ſo
that in a ſhort time the field of battel was
cover'd with the elephants trunks, and the heads
and bodys of the ſlain.

The moſt valiant Indians always endeavor'd
to defend themſelves; but this defence ſeem'd
rather like the ſtruggling of ſheep going to the
ſlaughter, than a vigorous reſiſtance. Thus
theſe poor Indians were conſtrain'd to turn
their

Book IV. their backs with their elephants; to which this paſſage of the Alcoran may be well apply'd: "Do you not ſee how the Lord thy God has "dealt with the men of the elephant [a]?"

The Sultan Mahmoud, and his head-general Mellou Can, fled into the city, the gate of which they ſhut.

The Mirza Calil Sultan, who commanded our left wing, brought to Timur one of the elephants bound with cords: after having very much maul'd it with the ſword, he overthrew its guards, and made it walk before him, as the husbandman does the ox in the plow. Timur and all the court were ſurpriz'd that a child, of but fifteen years old, ſhou'd dare to attack, and be able to conquer and bind a war-elephant, which had ſtruck terror into the whole army.

When the flight of the enemy had aſſur'd us of victory, Timur ſpur'd his horſe towards the gate of Deli, and carefully examin'd the walls and fortifications: and as it was the time of noon-prayer, he went down to the bank of the Havizcas, which is a round baſon, above an arrow's ſhot in diameter, built by the Sultan Firouz Chah; and as in any inundations it is fill'd with rain-water, it furniſhes the inhabitants of Deli with water for an intire year. On its bank is the tomb of Sultan Firouz Chah.

Timur being encamp'd here, the princes and generals came before him to kiſs the earth; they congratulated him on his victory, and gave applauſes to the princes of the blood, the Emirs, and other brave men, who had ſignaliz'd themſelves in the battel.

[a] The Arabians before the Hegira had an epocha call'd the Elephant.

Timur

Timur upon hearing theſe ſtrange adventures, burſt out into tears of joy: he bleſs'd God for having given him ſuch brave children, and ſuch faithful and valiant ſubjects. Was it not ſurprizing, that this great prince, who on ſome occaſions cou'd exerciſe extraordinary ſeverity, had at this time ſo tender a heart, that he cou'd not refrain his tears, while he return'd thanks to God for his favors? Timur had in the perſon of Calil Sultan a ſon worthy of himſelf, who in magnificence, valor and generoſity, ſurpaſs'd Menoutcher [1], Feridon and Kei Coſru *; he was as virtuous as Alexander, and as rich as Darius. He was at firſt nam'd the friend of God, Calil Allah; and the glory he afterwards acquir'd, was the reaſon of his being call'd Sultan. Chap. 20.

* Coſroes.

CHAP. XX.

Flight of Sultan Mahmoud, and his general Mellou Can, prince of Moultan. Reduction of Deli capital of India.

THE Sultan Mahmoud and Mellou Can, being vanquiſh'd, re-enter'd the city, repenting they had ever undertaken to go out: but repentance now being uſeleſs, they cou'd have recourſe only to flight. They departed at midnight while it was very dark: the Sultan went out by the gate of Havaderani, and Mellou by that of Barake; both which are ſi-

[1] Son of Feridon, king of Perſia.

Book IV. tuated ſouth of Gehanpenah: and they retir'd into the deſarts.

Timur being inform'd of this flight, ſent ſeveral Emirs in purſuit of 'em; they ſeiz'd on ſome of their officers who fled with 'em, and return'd with a great quantity of booty, taking priſoners the prince Seif Can, ſirnam'd Malek Cherefeddin, and the prince Codadad, ſon of Mellou Can.

The ſame night the Emir Allahdad, and other colonels of our regiments, had orders to make themſelves maſters of the gates by which the princes went out; as alſo to guard the other gates of the city, that no one might eſcape.

Jan. 4. The eighth of Rabiulakher, Timur erected his ſtandard on the walls of Deli, and went in perſon to the gate of the capital, where he ſat on the Aidgiah, or throne whereon the Indian emperors ſit in their royal robes on the great feaſt-day. This gate is in the quarter of Gehanpenah, over againſt the baſon of Havizcas. In this place a tent and tribunal were prepar'd for him, where he gave audience. Then the Cherifs, Cadis, and principal perſons of the city of Deli, came to caſt themſelves at the foot of the throne, and had the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet. Fadlallah Bacchi, lieutenant of Mellou Can, at the head of the whole Divan of Deli, was the firſt who came to make his ſubmiſſion; and the Cherifs, the men of learning, and the old men, addreſs'd themſelves to the princes the emperor's ſons, and to the great Emirs, to obtain quarter: ſo the Mirza Pir Mehemed, and the Emirs Solyman Chah and Gehan Chah, at a proper time preſented their petition.

According to cuſtom they carry'd the horſe's tail and kettledrums, which were fix'd upon the

the gate: and the conſorts of muſic were per- Chap. 20.
form'd on this occaſion on the tune Rihavi, us'd only on victorys. And to preſerve the memory of ſo conſiderable a conqueſt, an ingenious poet made theſe verſes, the letters of which form the epocha of this memorable day *.

On wedneſday the eighth of the month of Rabiulak- Jan. 4.
her, the ever-victorious emperor Timur made 1399.
himſelf maſter of Deli, the ſun being in Capricorn.

All the elephants and rhinoceros's were brought to Timur. Theſe animals, being before inſtructed, fell down before the emperor in an humble poſture, and at the ſame time made a great cry as if they demanded quarter. There were an hundred and twenty of theſe elephants of war, which at the return from India were ſent to Samarcand, and to the provinces of the empire, where Timur's ſons reſided. Two were carry'd chain'd to Tauris, one to Chiraz, five to Herat, one to Chirvan to the Cheik Ibrahim, and one to Arzendgian to the lord Taharten. The tenth of Rabiulak- Jan. 6.
her, the doctor Naſereddin Amor was order'd to enter the city, with the other lords and Cheriffs of the court, to preach in the grand moſque, and make the public prayers and Coutbe in the auguſt name and titles of the invincible empe-

* The Orientals have an alphabet, the letters of which they make uſe of inſtead of cyphers, and by which they compoſe a verſe to the praiſe of any one who has perform'd ſome remarkable action; and the letters of this verſe us'd for cyphers, denote the day, month and year wherein this action was perform'd.

ror

Book IV. ror Timur, and not in the name of Firouz Chah, as was done before.

The Debirs, Menehis and other ſecretarys, ſent a relation of this expedition, in their letters of conqueſt, into all the parts of the empire, and even to the princes in alliance with Timur, tho it were a year's journy to go round to 'em all; ſo that public rejoicings might be made for theſe great advantages with which God diſtinguiſh'd the reign of Timur.

The Bitictechis, or controllers of the Divan, alſo enter'd the city, where having taken an eſtimate of the mony due for ſaving the peoples lives, the receivers-general took care to receive it.

In the mean while the principal lords of the court, and the emperor's favorites remonſtrated to his majeſty, that after having ſuffer'd the fatigues and difficultys of this war, victory inſpir'd 'em with thoughts of renewing their diverſions and pleaſures; that Feridon and the Keis had always done the ſame; and that it was in juſtice due to 'em after they had thus fatigu'd themſelves. The emperor willingly conſented, and gave orders for a feaſt, which was to continue for ſeveral days. Timur began the rejoicings by preſents to the princes of the blood, the Emirs and generals of the army, in conſideration of their ſervices and great actions: and afterwards the muſicians perform'd conſorts of muſic in amorous and drinking tunes, which ſo charm'd the hearts of all, that they forgot the rigors of war, and the fatigues of a campain.

Jan. 12. The ſixteenth of Rabiulakher, a great number of our ſoldiers being aſſembled at the gate of Deli, inſulted the inhabitants of the ſuburbs. The great Emirs were order'd to put a ſtop to theſe diſorders; but God, who had predeſtin'd the

the ruin of this place for the chaſtiſement of the inhabitants, permitted its deſtruction by ſecond cauſes. Our ſoldiers coming into the place was one cauſe; and the deſpair of the Guebres, who remain'd in great numbers in the towns of Seiri, Gehanpenah and old Deli, was another. The curioſity of the Sultaneſſes to ſee the raritys of Deli, and particularly of the famous palace, adorn'd with a thouſand columns, and built by the antient king of India, Melik Jouna, induc'd 'em to go into the city with all the court, which was very numerous: and the gate was left open to every one, ſo that above fifteen thouſand of our ſoldiers got in unperceiv'd. Beſides the Emirs and comptrollers of the Divan, who were ſet at the gate to receive the tribute for ſaving the inhabitants lives; other officers in commiſſion had the ſame liberty to enter the city: but there remain'd a far greater number of troops in a large place between Deli, Seiri, and Gehanpenah. The diſorders our men committed in the two laſt places caus'd a great buſtle among the Guebres, who in deſpair fell upon our men; and ſeveral of 'em ſet fire to their houſes, wherein their wives and children were burnt. Our men perceiving this deſolation among the Guebres, pillag'd 'em, becauſe of their evil deſigns. As other troops were let into the city to ſeize on the inhabitants of the neighbouring towns and villages who had fled for refuge thither, the confuſion very much increas'd, and the troops within the place employ'd themſelves intirely in plundering and burning the houſes of the Guebres. The Emirs, to quell this diſorder, caus'd the gates to be ſhut, that the troops without might not enter: but the ſoldiers within open'd the gates to their comrades; by morn-

Chap. 20.

Book IV. morning all the army enter'd, and the ſoldiers roſe in arms againſt their leaders, who oppos'd
Jan. 13. 1399. their enterprize. So on the ſeventeenth of Rabiulakher 801, this great and proud city was deſtroy'd.

The next day paſs'd in the ſame manner; and there were ſome ſoldiers who took a hundred and fifty ſlaves, men, women and children, whom they carry'd out of the city; and ſome ſoldiers-boys had twenty ſlaves to their own ſhare. The other ſpoils of precious ſtones, pearls, rubys, diamonds, ſtuffs, belts, gold and ſilver veſſels, mony, plate, and other curioſitys, were innumerable; for the Indian women and girls were adorn'd with precious ſtones, and had on their feet and hands, and even on their toes, bracelets and rings; of which our men had ſuch great numbers, that they refus'd to carry away a vaſt quantity of precious ointments of ineſtimable value.

Jan. 15. The nineteenth of Rabiulakher they did the ſame in old Deli, whither the reſt of the Guebres were retir'd. Theſe Indians aſſembled together in the great moſque, and prepar'd to defend themſelves; but the Emir Chamelik and Ali Sultan Tavachi came thither with five hundred men, and having forcibly enter'd the moſque, ſent to the abyſs of hell the ſouls of theſe infidels, of whoſe heads they erected towers, and gave their bodys for food to the birds and beaſts of prey. Never was ſuch a terrible ſlaughter and deſolation heard of. As old Deli was pillag'd the ſame day, they made ſome of the inhabitants ſlaves, whom they loaded with chains, tho they had promis'd 'em their lives. Several days were employ'd in making 'em quit the city; and as they went out, every Emir of a Toman or regiment took

took a number of 'em for his ſervice: and as there were ſeveral thouſands of tradeſmen and artizans, ſome were diſtributed among the princes and Emirs who ſerv'd under Timur; and others were ſent to the officers of the emperor's ſons, and to the other Emirs in their reſpective governments. The emperor likewiſe order'd that all the maſons ſhou'd be kept for his particular ſervice, as he deſign'd to build a ſpacious moſque in Samarcand of ſtone. Chap. 20.

But it may not be amiſs to give a deſcription of the three towns which compoſe the city of Deli[a]. That of Seiri is ſurrounded with a wall in form of a circle; old Deli is the ſame, but much larger: and from the walls of Seiri on the north-eaſt, to the walls of old Deli, which is on the ſouth-weſt, there are two other walls, one on each ſide; and the ground which lies betwixt 'em is call'd Gehanpenah, and is larger than old Deli. Three gates of Seiri look towards Gehanpenah, and the four others have the proſpect outwards. Gehanpenah has thirteen gates, ſix to the north-weſt, and ſeven to the ſouth-eaſt; ſo that when one ſpeaks of Deli, we comprehend the three towns together, which have in all thirty gates.

[a] Deſcription of Deli, as it was in the author's time; for at preſent what they call Deli is a new city, ſituate in a different place; built by Gelaleddin Ecber, and call'd Ecber Aba, from the name of that king, the father of Humaioun Chah.

CHAP. XXI.

Timur departs from Deli; and purſues his conqueſts in the remoter parts of India, near the Ganges.

TIMUR continu'd fifteen days at Deli, the deſtruction of which place was caus'd by the ill conduct of the inhabitants: then having reſolv'd to exterminate the idolaters of India, as well as the robbers and rebels, he march'd towards the other moſt famous places of this empire. At his departure he order'd the Cherifs, Cadis, doctors and Cheiks of the city, to aſſemble in the great moſque of Gehanpenah; where he fix'd a governor over 'em, to protect 'em from the inſults of the ſoldiers, whom victory had render'd inſolent.

Jan 18. 1399. The twenty-ſecond of Rabiulakher, at ten in the morning, the army encamp'd from Gehanpenah, and march'd down to Firouz Abad, three miles from Deli. Here Timur ſtaid an hour to view this delightful place: and after having made two Rekaets * in the moſque belonging to it, which is built of ſtone on the banks of the Jaoun, to return thanks to God for his conqueſt, he departed out of this town.

* A proſtration in prayer.

About this time the lord Chamſeddin, one of the Cherifs of Termed, with Aladdin Naib, lieutenant of the Cheik Coukeri, who had been ſent embaſſadors to the town of Coutele, return'd from their embaſſy: they brought advice that Behader Nehar prince of theſe quarters, had willingly ſubmitted to the emperor; and

and hop'd next friday to have the honor to kiſs the ground before his majeſty, and offer him his ſervices. Timur being encamp'd on the other ſide of Gehanuma near Vezir Abad, the embaſſadors preſented him two white parrots, from Behader Nehar. Theſe birds had liv'd ever ſince the time of Togluc Chah, and had been kept many years in the antichambers of the emperors of India. Timur took this curious preſent for a good augury; and continu'd his road ſix miles farther to a place call'd Moudala, having before croſs'd the Jaoun. Chap. 22.

The twenty-fourth of Rabiulakher, he march'd ſix miles and encamp'd at Kete, where Behader Nehar with his ſon Coultach had the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet, to offer a great many rich preſents, and aſſure the emperor of their obedience. The twenty-fifth the army march'd to Baghbout, which for its beauty is compar'd to the delicious garden of Durbehar, and to the magnificent temple of the idols of Fercar; which places are diſtant from each other ſix miles. The twenty-ſixth they march'd alſo ſix miles, and encamp'd at Aſar, ſituate between two rivers, where Timur ſtaid to repoſe himſelf. Jan. 20. Jan. 21. Jan. 22.

CHAP. XXII.

Conqueſt of Myrthe. The Guebres are flea'd alive.

THE town of Myrthe being one of the moſt noted places of the empire of India, Timur reſolv'd to make himſelf maſter of it;

Book IV. it; whereupon the twenty-ſixth of Rabyulakher he ſent thither from Aſar the lords Rouſtem, Jan. 22. Tagi Bouga, Chamelik, and Allahdad. The Jan. 24. twenty-eighth theſe lords ſent advice to the emperor, that Elias Ougani, and the ſon of Moulana Ahmed Tohaneſeri, with a Guebre nam'd Seſi, had fortify'd the town, and were back'd by a company of Guebres; that they had refus'd to ſubmit, and had not only declar'd that they reſolv'd to defend themſelves, but even dar'd to uſe ſome inſolent expreſſions, ſaying that the emperor Turmechirin Can once came to beſiege the place, but was oblig'd to raiſe the ſiege; and that they hop'd the ſame wou'd be our fate. This news diſquieted Timur; and their ſpeaking contemptuouſly of Turmechirin Can, whom they tax'd with cowardice, highly incens'd him. On Tueſday at the hour of morning-prayer he took horſe at the head of ten thouſand men; and in two days and one night, march'd twenty miles.

Jan. 25. The twenty-ninth of Rabiulakher at noon he arriv'd at the town of Myrthe, where he order'd the captains of the companys to undermine the walls. At night they viſited the works, and found they had already advanc'd ten or fifteen cubits breadth to each baſtion and courtine; which ſo ſurpriz'd the Guebres, that they deſiſted from defending themſelves.

Next day the Emir Allahdad, with his regiment nam'd the faithful, conſiſting of the antient people of the Coutchins, attack'd the gate of the town. A young lad, one of his domeſtics, nam'd Serai, ſon of Calandar, boldly caſt a net upon the battlement, and mounted the walls. He was follow'd by Rouſtem Berlas, and a great many brave men, who ruſh'd into the town ſword in hand; they bound Elias Ougani,

and

and the ſon of Tchaneſeri, governors of the place, whom they carry'd to the foot of the imperial throne. The Guebre Sefi, one of the princes of this place, was kill'd in the aſſault, and his body caſt into the fire which he ador'd. Chap. 22.

The firſt of Jumaziulevel they flea'd alive all the Guebres of this place, and made ſlaves of their wives and children: they ſet fire to every thing, and raz'd the walls; ſo that this town was ſoon reduc'd to aſhes, tho Turmechirin Can, a great emperor in Aſia, cou'd not make himſelf maſter of it. Jan. 25.

It is remarkable, that before the army's marching to this place, Timur had reſolv'd to write a letter to the inhabitants, to reduce 'em by good-nature and promiſes: but the ſecretary being about to write theſe words, "Why "do you compare us with Turmechirin Can?" Timur reprimanded thoſe who had order'd the ſecretary to write in ſuch a manner, ſaying, "What am I to Turmechirin Can? He was a "greater lord than me, of ſtricter virtue, and "better conduct: but my deſign is to revenge "the affront theſe villains have put upon ſo "powerful and auguſt a monarch." So without ſuffering the letter to be concluded, he march'd to exterminate 'em. This was Timur's modeſty, which ought to ſerve as an example to others.

CHAP. XXIII.

Several battels upon the great river * *Ganges, againſt the militia of the Guebres.*

* Call'd in Perſian Derjai Conc, the ſea of Conc.

THE ſame day that Myrthe was taken, Timur order'd the Emir Gehan Chah to depart with the left wing by a different road, to ravage the country of the Guebres; for which purpoſe he embark'd with his troops on the Jaoun †. The emperor gave the command of the baggage to the Emir Cheik Noureddin, with orders to conduct it along the river of Caraſou; and then departed in perſon towards the great river of Ganges, fourteen miles from Myrthe. The Emir Solyman Chah join'd him on the road: and having march'd ſix miles, they encamp'd at Manſoura, where Timur ſtaid one night. The ſecond of Jumaziulevel, he ſet out at three in the morning, and at ſunriſing arriv'd at Pirouznour on the Ganges, where they march'd three miles to find an eaſy paſſage. Some time after they came to the ordinary paſſage, which was very difficult and dangerous: ſeveral horſemen ſwam over there on horſeback, but not without great riſque. Timur going to do the ſame, the Emirs on their knees beſought him to the contrary, telling him that the Mirza Pir Mehemed and the Emir Solyman Chah, having croſs'd the river near Pirouznour, were on the point of periſhing. In the mean while ſeveral brave men ſwam over, as the Tomans of the Mirza Charoc, Seid Coja ſon of Cheik Ali Behader, and Gehan Mulc ſon of Melket. Then Timur march'd

† Juengal

Jan. 27.

two

two miles further along the Ganges, and encamp'd. The third of Jumaziulevel, he went towards Toclocpour, a town on the bank of the Ganges, twenty miles from the place whence they ſet out. When they had march'd fifteen, advice was brought the emperor, that a great number of Guebres were got together on the bank of that river. Timur immediately ſent thither the Emir Mobacher, Ali Sultan Tavachi, and other Emirs of Tomans, and captains, to the number of fifty thouſand horſe; and continu'd his road towards Toclocpour. At this time the emperor was ſeiz'd with a very troubleſom ſwelling in his arm, which much impair'd his health; but this diſtemper did not continue long, thro the care and aſſiduity of his officers. Chap. 23. Jan. 28.

In the mean while advice was brought that a vaſt number of Guebres in forty-eight boats, advanc'd againſt us upon the Ganges. This news ſtir'd up the emperor's fury; and the pleaſure of having an opportunity of acquiring glory and merit in this war againſt the infidels, made him forget his diſtemper. He took horſe with a thouſand of his particular officers, and march'd along the banks of the river. He had no ſooner perceiv'd the enemy, than ſeveral of our brave men ſpur'd their horſes into the water ſword in hand, with their quivers faſten'd to their ſides. The unskilful enemys only let fly their arrows upon 'em, with their bucklers laid over their heads; while our men continually advanc'd, and laying hold on their flat-bottom'd veſſels, enter'd 'em, notwithſtanding the reſiſtance of the enemy, whom they cut in pieces, and caſt their bodys into the Ganges, making their women and children ſlaves. When they were become maſters of theſe great boats, they

Book IV. they went in ſearch of ten others manu'd with Guebres, who prepar'd themſelves for fighting, and faſten'd their boats to one another, that they might the better defend themſelves, and make a kind of naval fight. Our ſoldiers, after having diſcharg'd a vaſt number of arrows, boarded their veſſels, giving praiſe to God; and with their ſwords ſlew the remainder of theſe unfortunate Indians.

CHAP. XXIV.

Timur's three Gazies, or expeditions againſt the Guebres.

AFTER the taking of the flat boats on the Ganges, Timur decamp'd for Toc-
Jan. 29. locpour: and when he was arriv'd there, on the fourth of Jumaziulevel, a little after midnight, two men came from the Emirs Allahdad, Bajazet Coutchin, and Altoun Bacchi, the leaders of our ſcouts, who brought advice that having found an eaſy paſſage where they croſs'd the Ganges, they had met on the banks of that river a great number of infidels well-arm'd, who had for their leader a king nam'd Mobarek Can, who was reſolv'd to defend himſelf.

Timur on advice of theſe motions, took horſe before morning at the ſound of drums and kettledrums, being lighted by a vaſt number of flambeaux and torches: he croſs'd the Ganges, and read the morning-prayer, after having march'd a mile on the other ſide that river. Then our ſoldiers, with their cuiraſſes on, advanc'd againſt Mobarek Can, who had rang'd

ten

ten thouſand horſe, and ſome infantry, in order of battel, and expected us with his enſigns diſplay'd, tho he risk'd his crown on this occaſion. Chap. 24.

Timur hereupon imagin'd that theſe Indians being far more numerous than we, and our two wings at a great diſtance, we cou'd uſe no precautions, but muſt entirely reſign our ſelves to the will of God. And as he was thus diſquieted about the ſucceſs of the battel, five hundred horſe of the Tomans of Mirza Charoc arriv'd, which had croſs'd the water with Seid Coja and Gehan Mulc, to make inroads in ſeveral places; and they join'd us at ſo proper a time, that one wou'd have thought they had been appointed to meet us here, or that heaven had ſent 'em expreſs to ſuccour Timur when he had ſuch need of 'em. Whereupon he return'd God thanks for his kindneſs to him, and order'd the Emirs Chamelik and Allahdad to attack the enemy with a thouſand horſe, and not to regard their number, or reſiſtance.

Our brave men, in obedience to this order, and in reſignation to the will of God, ruſh'd with fury upon the enemy, who thinking that our men were not alone, but only the vanguard of a great army, ſuddenly grew afraid, and fled like hinds before a roaring lion, and like Chacals * hid themſelves in the woods. Our warriors purſu'd 'em, and put a great number to the ſword, carrying away captive their women and children, with a conſiderable booty of oxen and other animals. Timur encamp'd in

* Chacal is an animal which partly reſembles a dog, and partly a fox. It digs up dead bodys to devour 'em, and hath a languiſhing voice.

this

Book IV. this place; and at the ſame time receiv'd advice that a great number of Guebres were rendezvous'd in the defile of Coupele, eaſt of the Ganges. Whereupon he departed with five hundred horſe for that place, leaving the reſt to guard the ſpoils. The emperor at his arrival at theſe mountains, met a great number of Guebres. The Emirs Chamelik and Ali Sultan Tavachi, notwithſtanding the enemy were ſuperior to 'em in number, fell upon 'em ſword in hand, giving praiſes to God. Theſe infidels at firſt defended themſelves: but our men put 'em to the rout, notwithſtanding their great number, while the ſoldiers were employ'd in collecting the booty. Timur being left with only a hundred horſemen of his guards, a Guebre, nam'd Malek Cheika, fell briskly upon him with a hundred men, partly horſe and partly foot. Timur oppos'd theſe raſh fellows; but while the two partys were about to let fly a ſhower of arrows, one of our ſoldiers, thro miſtake, told Timur that this man was the Cheik Coukeri, one of his faithful ſervants. This falſe alarm caus'd the emperor to return to the bottom of the mountain; which the Guebre perceiving, he attack'd ſome of our men. Timur then return'd againſt this infidel, ſhot him in the belly with an arrow, and unhors'd him with a cut of his ſabre on his head: he was then bound with cords, and drag'd after our men, Timur being willing to queſtion him concerning the condition of the enemy; but he preſently gave up the ghoſt. Some time after advice was brought that in the defile of Coupele, two miles from this place, a great many Guebres were aſſembled; that in the paſſages of theſe mountains were only thick woods, and trees twiſted one within another, with reeds

and

and canes ſo large and ſtrong that a man cou'd ſcarcely graſp 'em. Chap. 24

Timur, who had already taken horſe twice this day to fight, and was in great want of ſleep, had no ſooner heard this news, than preferring the treaſures of eternal rewards to his quiet here, he march'd towards this defile at the head of ſome officers and Emirs of the vanguard. As he was oblig'd to go thro woods almoſt unpaſſable, and the Indians were far more numerous, Timur ſaid to his men, "If "my ſon Pir Mehemed and Solyman Chah "ſhou'd arrive here preſently, they wou'd be "of great ſervice to us: but that cannot be; "ſeeing it is but three days ſince I ſent 'em "to make inroads beyond the Ganges, which "they have croſs'd at Pirouznour." While Timur was thus ſpeaking, on a ſudden they perceiv'd theſe brave men, who were over-joy'd to meet the emperor in this place. The pleaſure, as one may eaſily imagine, was not leſs on Timur's ſide. They march'd together againſt the Guebres, on whom they diſcharg'd ſhowers of arrows; and then ruſhing on 'em ſword in hand, they made a cruel ſlaughter: they took a vaſt quantity of booty from theſe infidels, as well camels, oxen, and other cattel, as gold and ſilver belts, which the enemys wore.

Thus Timur was in three battels the ſame day, which never happen'd to any prince before him, that we find mention'd in hiſtory. The field of battel being ſo ſtrait, and full of woods and thorns, that it was impoſſible to encamp here, in the evening they were oblig'd to return to the place where the ſecond Gazie was fought.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV.

Timur exterminates the Guebres aſſembled in the famous defile of Coupele. Deſcription of a marble ſtatue of a cow ador'd by the Indians.

THE defile of Coupele is ſituate at the foot of a mountain near the Ganges; and fifteen miles higher than this defile is a ſtone carv'd in form of a cow, from whence ſprings this great river. For this reaſon the Indians adore this ſtone; and in all the neighbouring countrys, within a year's journy, when they are at prayers they turn towards it. One of their cuſtoms is to burn themſelves alive, and to have their aſhes flung into the Ganges, believing they ſhall merit ſalvation by it. They alſo caſt into this river their gold and ſilver: and a chief part of their devotion is to waſh themſelves in it, and there ſhave their beard and head, upon which they pour water; which they eſteem as uſeful as the Mahometans imagine the Abdeſte * neceſſary, when they go in pilgrimage to Mecca.

Religion of the Indians.

Abounair Otbi, in his book call'd Yemini †, gives a relation of the ſuperſtitions of theſe Indian idolaters, and of the ridiculous notions they entertain concerning this river. We are told in this book, that Naſareddin Subuctekin,

* The ablution which the Mahometans are oblig'd to make before prayer.

† A famous hiſtory of the Sultan Mahmoud Subuctekin of India.

and

and his ſon the Sultan Mahmoud, for ſeveral years made war on theſe idolaters of India, and by degrees conquer'd the towns and caſtles of this kingdom; that God bleſs'd their undertakings, and permitted the Sultan Mahmoud at the end of theſe wars, to march into the kingdom of Cannoudge[4] with the mahometan army. The interpreter of the Yemini remarks, that this war in the country of Cannoudge is the moſt celebrated of any that Yemin Eddole Mahmoud was ever engag'd in. Chap. 25.

But to return to our ſubject: we muſt know that when Timur took up a reſolution to carry his arms into India, he ſent ſeveral Emirs with conſiderable troops by one road, and with the reſt of his army march'd himſelf another; that theſe two armys took all the citys, caſtles, fortreſſes, towns and villages, in their way; that they exterminated the idolaters; and met together before Deli, as we have already mention'd; and that after the reduction of Deli, they croſs'd the Ganges. Thus Timur accompliſh'd his undertaking in India, for the extirpation of idolatry in that country. But as there yet remain'd a prodigious multitude of Guebres in the mountains of Coupele, who poſſeſs'd a

[4] A town and kingdom on this ſide the Ganges. The geographer Abulfeda ſays that the Ganges runs towards the eaſt of the kingdom of Cannoudge, at forty leagues diſtance; and that the capital of Cannoudge is in long. 104. lat. 26. Nafereddin Touſſi ſays it is in long. 115. 50. lat. 26. 35. which is conſiſtent with the former, becauſe the one counts the longitude from Hercules's pillars, and the other from the fortunate iſles. Elmeglebi remarks that Cannoudge is 282 leagues eaſt of Moultan. Adem is a town of the kingdom of Cannoudge, ſeven days journy from the city of the ſame name. Benſaid tells us that Cannoudge is between two arms of the Ganges.

great

Book IV. great quantity of riches, cattel, and movable goods, he reſolv'd to attack 'em. Whereupon the fifth of Jumaziulevel the army began its march towards this defile, where the infidels, who were deſtin'd to periſh, dar'd to wait their arrival, and raſhly prepar'd to ſuſtain the attacks of our warriors, and make a vigorous defence. At ſun-riſing the mahometan army was rang'd in order of battel, and arriv'd at the defile in very good order. The right wing was commanded by the Mirza Pir Mehemed, and the Emir Solyman Chah; and the left by other Emirs of great reputation. The Emir Chamelik and other captains famous for their valor, led the vanguard of the main body.

Jan. 30. 1399.

When the noiſe of the drums, the great and little kettledrums, and trumpets, accompany'd with the uſual great cry, had echo'd in theſe mountains and narrow paſſages, the infidels were confounded, and loſt all courage: fear got poſſeſſion of their hearts, and wou'd not ſuffer 'em to wait the attack of our warriors, but oblig'd 'em to conceal themſelves in the mountains, whither they were purſu'd by our men, and great part of 'em ſlain; ſome ſav'd themſelves, yet their effects, which conſiſted of furniture and other riches, fell to the conquerors.

This kingdom being thus deliver'd from theſe idolaters, the army return'd the ſame day, and croſs'd the Ganges, on the banks of which Timur read the noon-prayer, returning thanks to God for the advantages and victorys he had gain'd thro his goodneſs. Then he took horſe, and after five miles march encamp'd towards the lower part of the river, pleas'd with the conduct of all the captains and ſoldiers of his army, to whom he gave rewards for their brave actions in this war.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

Timur's reſolution to return to the ſeat of his empire.

TIMUR being ſatisfy'd with having march'd as far as the eaſtern frontiers of the empire of India in one campain, and having acquir'd the merit of the Gazie, depart-
ed from the bank of the Ganges the ſixth of Jan. 31.
Jumaziulevel, to join the baggage. Every one march'd in his reſpective poſt; and the quarter-maſters and harbingers had orders to meet the baggage, and conduct it to the army. The ſe-
venth, they march'd ſix miles, and encamp'd Feb. 1.
four miles diſtance from the baggage.

In the mean while advice was brought that in the mountain of Soualec, one of the moſt conſiderable mountains of India, which ſtretches over two thirds of this vaſt empire, there were aſſembled a great number of Indians, with deſign to inſult us. Timur order'd the troops which accompany'd the baggage to decamp, and march towards Soualec, while himſelf went in perſon to a place but five miles from thence, where the Mirza Calil Sultan and the Emir Cheik Noureddin join'd him with the baggage. The Emir Solyman Chah and the other generals on their knees beſought the emperor to ſtay in the camp, and not continually expoſe his ſacred perſon; while they wou'd go and exterminate the Indians. Timur told 'em, the Gazie produc'd two conſiderable advantages; one was, that it procur'd for the warrior eter-

Book IV. nal merit; the other, that he acquir'd by it worldly ſpoils and goods: that as they had theſe two advantages in view, they ſhou'd be willing that he might partake of 'em alſo, ſince his intention in all his fatigues and labors, was only to render himſelf well-pleaſing to God, and ſo treaſure up good works for his eternal happineſs, and riches to beſtow upon his ſoldiers, and do good to the poor.

Then he ſent orders to the Emir Gehan Chah, who had been gone out a week to make inroads on the Jaoun, to come to the camp, that he might partake of the merit of this expedition as well as the other Emirs. This Emir accordingly obey'd the order, and return'd to join his majeſty.

CHAP. XXVII.

Timur's irruption on the mountain Soualec.

Feb. 4. ON ſaturday the tenth of Jumaziulevel, Timur departed for the mountain of Soualec, where a Raya nam'd Behrouz had aſſembled a number of Guebres in a narrow paſſage; and confiding in the ſtrength of the mountain, and a ſtrong place he had in poſſeſſion, which he imagin'd inacceſſible, had reſolv'd to give us battel. Our army advancing in good order, Timur went down to the entrance of this defile, where he ſtopt. Our ſoldiers fell ſuddenly upon the infidels, who made but a weak defence; ſo that with their ſwords and half-pikes they ſlew a great number of 'em. Having reduc'd 'em thus low, they became maſters of their cattel and effects, and took thoſe priſoners who eſcap'd the ſword: but as the

the booty was unequally divided, the rich and powerful having got four or five hundred oxen, Timur order'd the ſpoils ſhou'd be equally diſtributed, that the poor and weak might have their ſhare. The following night Timur lay in the tent of the Mirza Pir Mehemed; and next day he went to Behre, near Bekeri, commonly call'd Meliapour. Chap. 28.

The twelfth of Jumaziulevel he march'd four miles, and encamp'd at Chacſarſava. The ſoldiers were ſo laden with booty, that they cou'd ſcarce march four miles a day. Next day they went four miles, and encamp'd at Kender. Feb. 6.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Several combats in the woods near Soualec.

THE fourteenth of Jumaziulevel Timur croſs'd the Jaoun, and encamp'd in another part of the mountain of Soualec, where advice was brought that a Raya nam'd Ratan had caus'd the trumpets to be ſounded to aſſemble the people, and fall upon our army; that by this means an infinite number of Indians were got together under his command, and had retreated into thick and inacceſſible woods. Feb. 8.

Timur wou'd not ſtay till night was over before he began his march againſt 'em; but caus'd torches and flambeaus to be lighted, and order'd the captains to keep a conſtant march in order of battel. The ſoldiers employ'd all their ſtrength in cutting down the trees to make roads, and the ſame night they advanc'd twelve miles.

Book IV. The fifteenth before morning they arriv'd between the two mountains of Soualec and
Feb. 9. Couke, where the Raya was prepar'd to give battel, having form'd two wings and a main body: but he had no more courage than the reſt; for as ſoon as the noiſe of the drums, trumpets and kettledrums, with the ſoldiers cries, were heard in this mountain, they fled, and the Raya himſelf turn'd his back, and retir'd to the bottom of a wood. Our ſoldiers purſu'd the enemy, and cut in pieces a great number, enriching themſelves with the ſpoils, and carrying away an innumerable company of captives.

The ſame day our right wing went into another defilé of theſe mountains, where, after having exterminated the Guebres, they gain'd a conſiderable booty: the left wing alſo made inroads in another place, and maſſacred ſeveral Indians; but got no ſpoils. The following night the two wings return'd to Timur. The
Feb. 10. ſixteenth, Timur quitted this narrow paſſage, and re-enter'd the mountain of Soualec, where he encamp'd in a place fifteen leagues from Bekircout, all which country is full of foreſts and craggy mountains. Then he reſolv'd to go in perſon into the moſt dangerous places; and ſent back the left wing, compos'd of the troops of Coraſſana, to make inroads, becauſe they were return'd without any booty.

In the mean while Sainte Maure, at the head of the ſcouts, arriv'd at nine in the morning; bringing advice that there were ſo many Guebres in theſe quarters, that it was impoſſible to number 'em. This news oblig'd Timur to ſtay in this place, while the left wing ſhou'd go out to make inroads.

Then

Then advice was brought from the body of troops commanded by the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Ali Sultan Tavachi, that ſeveral Guebres, with abundance of cattel, were got together in a defile on the left ſide. Timur immediately march'd towards this place, ordering the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Ali Sultan to fall upon the Guebres. They ſoon became conquerors, putting the enemys to the ſword, in the emperor's preſence, who had ſet up his imperial ſtandard on the very brink of the mountain, to encourage his men. Some of the wounded ſav'd themſelves by flight; but all their effects and cattel fell into the hands of the victors. Timur ſtaid upon the mountain till evening, and caus'd part of the booty to be diſtributed among thoſe who cou'd get none; ſo that every one had as much as he cou'd well take care of. At night they encamp'd in this defile, where there were abundance of monkys, who came to ſteal away the ſoldiers goods. Chap. 28.

Thus we may truly ſay, there were twenty battels fought in thirty days, during which time our men conquer'd ſeven of the moſt important fortreſſes of India, which wou'd not give place to Caiber [s]. Theſe ſeven fortreſſes were at one or two leagues diſtance from each other, and the inhabitants were at continual variance among themſelves. They had formerly paid tribute to the emperors of India; but were ſome time ſince brought to ſubjection to the Muſſulmans, from whom they revolted, refuſing to pay tribute to 'em; and thus they merited the puniſhment they receiv'd. One of theſe places, which

[s] A ſtrong place in Syria, inhabited by Jews, formerly conquer'd by the prophet Mahomet.

Book IV. belong'd to Cheikou, a relation of the Cheik Couker *, had willingly ſubmitted to Timur, thro the interpoſition of the Muſſulmans who liv'd with 'em: but this was mere ſhew; for they ſoon gave us marks of their treaſon and malice, and when the cuſtomary tax for the ſaving of their lives was impos'd on 'em, they made uſe of tricks and equivocations. In the mean while one of Timur's officers invented a ſtratagem to oblige 'em to pay the mony with leſs reluctance; which was, that we ſhou'd buy up all their old bows, which they accordingly ſold our men upon their offering a good price; ſo that they had ſcarcely any more arms left. Then it was order'd that forty Guebres ſhou'd be liſted in the ſervice of Hendou Chah Cazen, one of the emperor's officers: which they wou'd not conſent to, but ſlew ſeveral Muſſulmans.

* Prince of Lahor.

This oblig'd us to treat 'em as enemys, and beſiege their place in form; which having taken, we put two thouſand Guebres to the ſword, as a puniſhment for their paſt crimes.

The place belonging to Malek Diuradge, and five others, were taken with the ſame eaſe in a very ſhort time; ſo that this country was clear'd of this generation of idolaters, their temples were ruin'd, and the mahometan religion afterwards flouriſh'd there.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIX.

Timur's Gazies and expeditions in the province of Tchamou.

THE Gazies on the mountains of Soualec being finiſh'd to Timur's ſatisfaction, he departed from Manſar the ſixteenth of Jumaziulakher; and after a march of ſix miles, encamp'd at Baila, a town of the province of Tchamou, where he was join'd by the Emirs Cheik Mahemed Aicoutmur, Mobacher, and Iſmael Berlas, of the Toman of Mirza Calil Sultan. March 12. 1399.

The inhabitants of this town were valiant men, and their foreſts very difficult of acceſs: they had fix'd their bucklers round their woods, where they prepar'd for a vigorous reſiſtance. Our ſoldiers were eager to fall upon 'em; but there came an order from the emperor to defer the attack till next day, becauſe he deſign'd to be there in perſon.

The ſeventeenth Timur took horſe, and having rang'd his army in order of battel, caus'd the great cry to be made, and the inſtruments of war to be ſounded; but the enemy abandon'd the town, and fled into the woods, to hide themſelves. Part of our ſoldiers were poſted on the ſide of the wood, while the others enter'd the town without oppoſition, and made themſelves maſters of a great quantity of mony and ammunitions; ſo that the army was furniſh'd with all neceſſarys. March 13.

The ſame day the army departed thence, to encamp four miles further. Olaia Timur, Toncator, and Coulad, as alſo the Mirza Rouſtem, and

Book IV. the faithful Zeineddin, who had been ſent ambaſſadors from Deli into Cachmir, arriv'd at the camp with letters from prince Chah Eskender, from whom there likewiſe came ambaſſadors; who aſſur'd Timur that their prince, full of reſpect to him, had reſolv'd to demand his protection, with all the ſubmiſſion that cou'd be expected from a ſubject, who was entirely reſign'd to his orders; and that as a mark of his ſincerity, he was upon his way to meet the emperor, being already arriv'd at a place nam'd Gebhan, where he was rejoin'd by the doctor Noradin, one of his ambaſſadors, who told him that the Emirs of Timur's Divan had tax'd him at thirty thouſand horſes, and a hundred thouſand Dereſts of gold, each Dereſt weighing two Medicales and a half. Chah Eskender immediately return'd to collect the mony he was tax'd at, that he might the ſooner have the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet. Timur, on advice of this, diſapprov'd of this order, becauſe they had impos'd a tax upon Eskender, which he was not able to pay, ſince it was more than his little kingdom was worth: and as the ambaſſadors at the ſame time repreſented to the emperor how willingly Chah Eskender had ſubmitted to him, Timur order'd that he ſhou'd be treated with civility, and ſent to tell him that the payment of this tax ſhou'd not detain him from coming before him.

March 14. The eighteenth of Jumaziulakher, the ambaſſadors of Chah Eskender and of Motamedzeineddin were ſent back to Cachmir, with orders for Chah Eskender to come to the bank of the Indus in ten days. Then the army on their road pillag'd three towns: but Aratmour, officer of Timur's houſhold, was wounded with an arrow.

March 15. The nineteenth of Jumaziulakher, they encamp'd over-againſt the capital of Tchamou, after

after having march'd four miles. In their road they found four leagues of cultivated land, ready for harveſt; which ſerv'd for forage, and our horſes were let looſe among the graſs in this paſture-ground. Chap. 29.

The twentieth of Jumaziulakher, Timur enter'd the defile from whence the river of Tchamou ſprings, which the army had croſs'd ſeveral times. It is ſituate at the foot of a mountain, on the left ſide of the city of Tchamou, having on its right the town of Menou. It was inhabited by ſtrong and tall Indians, who were reſolv'd to defend their lives, and having ſent their wives and children into the mountains, had intrench'd themſelves in almoſt inacceſſible woods, upon a cragged mountain, having their king at the head; and like dogs barking at the riſing moon, they houl'd, if one may ſo ſay, when they diſcharg'd their arrows.

Timur imagin'd it better to ſurprize 'em by artifice, than to attack 'em openly in ſo dangerous a place: whereupon he order'd our ſoldiers to leave 'em, and to go to pillage the town of Menou; which was accordingly executed. The troops alſo enter'd the town of Tchamou, whence they brought away ammunition and ſpoils enough for their pay and ſuſtenance. Then Timur poſted ſome regiments of active and reſolute men in the woods where the enemy had fortify'd themſelves; and in the mean while he departed with the cavalry.

The twenty firſt he croſs'd the river of Tchamou, march'd four miles, and encamp'd on the bank of the Genave, in a plain of four leagues in length, full of paſturage.

As ſoon as the imperial army had quitted the defile of Tchamou and Menou, the Indians, like foxes coming out of their holes, when they imagin'd the

 foreſts

Book IV. foreſts void of lions, came out of their mountain to re-enter their houſes: but they were ſoon attack'd by our regiments who lay in ambuſcade; and who falling upon 'em, cut 'em in pieces, not giving quarter to any one.

King of Tchamou taken priſoner.

Dolet Timur Tavachi, an officer of the Toman of Cheik Noureddin, aſſiſted by Huſſein Melik Coutchin, took the king of Tchamou priſoner, with fifty officers of conſideration, whom he brought to Timur. The emperor return'd thanks to God, and thus addreſs'd theſe Emirs: "Bleſſed be the almighty King of heaven and "earth, who hath humbled theſe proud Guebres, "the enemys of his name, who but yeſterday "inſolently brav'd the faithful from their craggy "mountains, having no regard to any one: but "to day God has deliver'd 'em up to us, bound "like malefactors. To him be bleſſing and glo-"ry for ever." Then he order'd that the captives ſhou'd be loaded with chains, and left groveling upon the earth, except the king of Tchamou, who had been wounded in the fight: he was heal'd of his wound, and treated with civility, as well becauſe of his character, as for that they imagin'd they might the more eaſily get the mony due to the mahometan army for the town of Tchamou, and the ſaving the lives of the king and his men. In the mean while they treated this prince with ſo much kindneſs and reſpect, inſtructing him in the beautys of the muſſulman religion, that he reſolv'd to make profeſſion of mahometaniſm, and quit his errors and idolatry. So he declar'd his belief of the unity of God, and eat the fleſh of oxen with the Muſſulmans, which is prohibited theſe miſerable Indians.

This change of religion caus'd him to be honor'd and careſs'd by Timur, who conſented to make

make a treaty with him, by which he was received under the protection of our monarch. Chap. 30.

The twenty third of Jumaziulakher the army ſtaid on the banks of the Genave, to wait for the troops which were gone to Lahor. March 19.

CHAP. XXX.

Relation of what paſs'd at Lahor, with regard to Chicai Couker, prince of that city.

IN the mean while advice was brought that the princes and Emirs, who had been ſent towards Lahor, had made themſelves maſters of that city, and actually receiv'd the tax for redeeming the inhabitants lives, having made Chicai Couker priſoner of war.

Deceit, ſays the poet, may at firſt have a good appearance; but in the end it makes the perſon bluſh who practiſes it: wherefore Timur, who was an enemy to tricking, made uſe of the following words for the motto of his ſeal, *Safety conſiſts in fair-dealing.*

But that every one may be ſufficiently appriz'd of the affair of Chicai Couker, they muſt know that this prince of Lahor, at the beginning of this war, accompany'd Timur every where, from whom he obtain'd ſo much favor and reſpect, that if any of the Indians made uſe of his name, they were neither pillag'd nor made priſoners. When the army was between the two rivers of Ganges and Jaoun, he beg'd leave to go into his own country, which was granted him: and he even agreed about the preſents he ſhou'd make to the emperor upon his meeting him again at the bank of the Biah, which is alſo call'd the river

of

Book IV. of Lahor. Thus Chicai Couker return'd into his own country, where he paſs'd ſome time in plays and diverſions, forgetting what he had promiſ'd before the auguſt tribunal of Timur: and he not only neglected the performance of his promiſe, but even gave marks of his diſregard to us; for ſeveral of our officers having paſt thro his city coming from Tranſoxiana, as the doctor Abdallah Sedre, Hendouchah Cazen, and others, thro whoſe protection he might have advanc'd himſelf in honor and power, he did not give 'em a handſom reception, nor ſhew the leaſt marks of civility, pretending ignorance of their being in the city. This procedure drew on him Timur's indignation, who order'd that his country ſhou'd be pillag'd, and his perſon ſeiz'd. Thus our monarch puniſh'd ingratitude.

March 20. The twenty fourth of Jumaziulakher, Timur croſs'd the river of Genave, and encamp'd after having march'd five miles. The ſame day officers arriv'd from Tauris from the Mirza Miran Chah, bringing news of the good health of that prince, his children, and principal Emirs. They alſo brought an account of the affairs of Bagdad, Egypt, Syria, Anatolia and Capchac; as likewiſe the condition of the fortreſs of Alengic.

The twenty fifth, ſeveral ſick ſoldiers were drown'd in the river; which oblig'd Timur, who was the moſt merciful prince in the univerſe, to give thoſe who were in want of 'em, proper horſes and mules out of his own ſtable, upon which they croſs'd the river. The ſame day the emperor ſent Hendouchah Cazen to Samarcand, with advice that he was about to return home, to comfort the people who impatiently expected him. That day there likewiſe came an officer from Perſia from the Mirza Pir Mehemed,

med, ſon of Omar Cheik, who brought news of Chap. 30.
this prince's health, and the ſtate of his king-
dom: he likewiſe preſented Egyptian ſwords, damask'd blades, and other curioſitys.

The twenty ſixth of Jumaziulakher the army decamp'd from the bank of the Genave, and after ſix miles march encamp'd in the deſart; and the ſame day the emperor ſent again to Samarcand one of the ambaſſadors who came from Tauris, to order the princes his ſons to come and meet him. Then Timur deſigning to croſs the river Dindana before the reſt of the army, ſet out before 'em.

The twenty ſeventh he march'd ſix miles, and encamp'd at the entrance of a wood: they ſaw a lion in a meadow, which every one attack'd, and the Emir Cheik Noureddin kill'd.

Then the Mirzas Pir Mehemed and Rouſtem, with the Emirs Solyman Chah and Gehan Chah, arriv'd at the camp from Lahor, after having ſlain ſeveral Indians, and taken a conſiderable booty. They kiſs'd the imperial carpet, and made their preſents to Timur, which conſiſted of nine pieces of each ſort. Timur gave great largeſſes to theſe brave men; and particularly diſtinguiſh'd Mehemed Azad, to whom he preſented a veſt, a quiver, and a gold-belt. The greateſt lords only ſought to be favorably regarded by our monarch.

The ſame day Timur order'd that all the Emirs of both wings, the colonels of regiments, and the captains of companys, ſhou'd return home by the different roads mark'd out for 'em. Then he made preſents to every one according to their rank and merit, beginning with the princes of the blood, the Emirs, dukes, foreign princes call'd Nevians; and then the Emirs of Tomans, the colonels of Hezares, and the centurions.

The

Book IV. The Mirza Pir Mehemed, ſon of Gehanghir, had a preſent made him of a belt and crown ſet with precious ſtones.

He alſo honor'd with his liberalitys the lords of India, the Emirs and Cherifs, who had the good fortune to accompany him; and giving 'em letters-patent for their principalitys, he permitted 'em to return into their reſpective countrys.

Timur aſſign'd the government of the city and province of Moultan to Keder Can, who having been arreſted by order of Sarenk brother of Mellou Can, and laid in irons in a citadel, had eſcap'd thence, and fled to Biana, a place dependent on Deli, to the king Ahoudan a Muſſulman; and who having heard of Timur's arrival in that country, had with an humble confidence fled for refuge to the foot of the throne, and had the honor to accompany his majeſty from that time.

As in this country there was a plain, which for its vaſtneſs, and the great quantity of game in it, ſeem'd to invite paſſengers to the chace, (for there were lions, leopards, rhinoceros's, unicorns, blue ſtags, wild peacocks, parrots, and other uncommon animals) Timur ſpent ſome time in that diverſion. He ſent ſeveral thouſands of ſoldiers to form the great circle; and having firſt purſu'd the idolaters, he chas'd the wild beaſts, and afterwards went a fowling. The falcons and hawks deſtroy'd all the peacocks, pheaſants, parrots and ducks in this country. The ſoldiers took a great deal of game, and ſlew ſeveral rhinoceros's with their ſabres and lances, tho this animal is ſo ſtrong, that it will beat down a horſe and horſeman with a ſingle blow of its horn; and has ſo thick a skin, that it cannot be peirc'd but by an extraordinary force.

The

The twenty eighth of Jumaziulakher the army march'd eight miles, and encamp'd at Gebhan, a delightful reſidence on the frontiers of Cachmir. March 24. Chap. 31.

CHAP. XXXI.

Deſcription of the little kingdom of Cachmir, or Kichmir.

AS Cachmir is one of the moſt noted countrys in the world, has ſo particular a ſituation, and ſo few people ever ſee it, becauſe it is not the ordinary paſſage into any other countrys; we will give a ſhort deſcription of it, which we have receiv'd from the natives, and the truth of which we are fully ſatisfy'd of.

Cachmir is a principality near Hac, in the middle of the fourth climate, which according to Ptolomy, begins at 34 deg. 37 min. of lat. its middle is at 36 deg. 22 min. and its end at 38. 54. The latitude of Cachmir is 35 degrees; and its longitude from the fortunate iſles 105.

The country is of an oval form, ſurrounded with high mountains on all ſides: it looks ſouthwards upon Deli and the country of India, northwards on Bedakchan and Coraſſana, weſtwards upon the hords of the Ouganis, and caſtwards upon Tobbot or Thebet.

In the extent of its province are ten thouſand flouriſhing villages, full of fountains and green plains: but the common opinion is that the whole principality of Cachmir conſiſts of a hundred thouſand villages, as well in the plains as mountains. The air and water are very wholeſom; and the beauty of the Cachmirian

Book IV.

rian women hath paſs'd into a proverb among the Perſian poets and orators. They have vaſt quantitys of good fruit; but the winter is hurtful, becauſe of the great abundance of ſnows which fall there. The ſummer-fruits, as dates, oranges and citrons, never come to maturity; but are brought thither from the warm neighboring countrys. The flat country in the middle is twenty leagues in breadth from one mountain to the other.

The prince and court reſide at the city of Nagaz, thro the middle of which, as at Bagdad, runs a river as large as the Tigris: and what is very ſurprizing, this river is exceeding rapid, tho it is form'd from a ſingle fountain in the ſame country, call'd the fountain of Vir. The inhabitants have built upon this river more than thirty bridges of boats, with chains croſs the chief paſſages: ſeven of theſe bridges are in the city of Nagaz, which is the center and capital of the country. When this river hath paſs'd the limits of Cachmir, it takes different names, from the ſeveral countrys it waſhes, as Dindana and Jamad: above Moultan it joins the Genave, and both together having paſs'd by Moultan, fall into the Rave, which runs by the other Moultan: at length the river Biah joins 'em, and near the town of Outcha, they all fall into the Indus or Abſend, which diſembogues into the ſea of Omman *, at the end of the country of Tatta.

* The Arabian ſea.

The mountains which ſurround this country ſerve as fortifications againſt the inſults of an enemy; the inhabitants being under no apprehenſions of their being ruin'd, either by time, rains or ſtorms.

There are three roads into this country: that of Coraſſana is ſo very difficult, that the inhabitants, who are accuſtom'd to that ſort of labor,

are

are oblig'd to carry bales of merchandize and other burdens upon their backs, which the beaſts of carriage are not able to do. The road of India is equally difficult. That of Tobbot or Thebet is eaſieſt; but for ſeveral days journy paſſengers meet with venomous herbs, which poiſon their horſes. Chap. 32.

Thus God has given this country natural defences; ſo that the inhabitants have no occaſion for arms or armys.

The twenty-ninth of Jumaziulakher, Timur departed from Gebhan, march'd four miles, and encamp'd on the bank of the river Dindana, which he croſs'd on a bridg built by his order; and which was an eaſe to the fatigu'd ſoldiers, as well Turks as Tadgics [1]. The Emirs Chamelik and Gelaleliſlam had orders for conducting the army over this bridg. March 25.

CHAP. XXXII.

Timur returns to the ſeat of his empire.

ON the thirtieth of Jumaziulakher in the morning, Timur departed for Samarcand before the army, that he might get there in good time: he march'd twenty miles on the Dindana, and encamp'd at Sanbaſte, a town in the mountain of Joudis. The firſt of Regeb he encamp'd at the caſtle of Beroudge: he took horſe after noon-prayer, and enter'd the deſart of Gelali *, from whence he came out in the even- March 27.

* Geron.

[1] The Turks are native Tartars: the Tadgics are inhabitants of conquer'd citys and countrys.

Book IV. ing, and encamp'd in a cavern, where there yet remain'd ſome water of the Pechecals, or great rains of the laſt winter. This cavern is but three miles from Beroudge.

The 2d of Regeb at ten in the morning, he came to the Indus, over which the Emirs Pir Ali Selduz, and others, who had the care of the frontiers of Nagaz and Banou, and of the roads of thoſe quarters, had caus'd a bridg of boats to be built.

Timur having croſs'd the Indus, ſtaid till noon on its banks; and then leaving the Emir Allahdad at the foot of the bridg, that he might cauſe the baggage, and part of the army which was behind, to paſs over, he departed in the afternoon, and march'd ten miles before he encamp'd.

March 29. The third of Regeb he ſtop'd at Banou, where the Emirs Pir Alitaz, Huſſein Coutchin, and others, who had been left there to keep the Ouganis in obedience, had the honor to pay their reſpects to him: having not ſeen him for a month, they preſented him with nine horſes and a thouſand oxen. Timur gave 'em back their horſes, and order'd that the oxen ſhou'd be reſtor'd to the right owners; and then he commanded Pir Alitaz to ſtay in that place, till all the army had paſs'd it.

April 2. The 7th of Regeb, which is the firſt of Ferverdin of the Gelalian epocha, as alſo the firſt day of the ſpring, he took the road to Nagaz, where he arriv'd next day.

The ſame day the officer of Mirza Miran Chah was ſent back into Azerbijana, with advice of the emperor's conqueſts, and the good condition of his troops. Mahmoud, ſon of Berat Coja, and Hendoucha, were likewiſe ſent to Cabul, to bring troops from thence, to deſtroy the

the Ourganis, againſt whom the Emir Soliman Chah had caus'd the caſtle of Nagaz to be built before the emperor's departure for India, to oppoſe their inſults: which eſtabliſh'd quiet and ſecurity among the Muſſulmans of that country. Chap. 32.

On one ſide of the caſtle without the walls was a delicious fountain, which Timur was deſirous ſhou'd be within the encloſure of the caſtle: for which reaſon, notwithſtanding his great deſire to ſee the princes his dear children, he prefer'd the good of the public before his private ſatisfaction; and ſtaid in that place till the walls of the caſtle and the building over the fountain were finiſh'd. This laſted no longer than from tueſday till monday evening, becauſe every one aſſiſted in it, and the Emirs themſelves, to ſet an example to others, carry'd the tiles to the maſons. Then the emperor gave the government of this caſtle of Nagaz to Nuſret Comari, an officer of the Mirza Pir Mehemed, with three hundred men of the regiment of Sama Aglen, whoſe captain was Yarek Aghil; to whom he join'd four hundred deſerters of the Uzbecs. He gave the government of Ijab and Schenouzan to the Cheik Haſſan, nephew of the Cheik Noureddin. Timur at length departed to encamp at the dome of the Cheik Mobareſchah.

The ninth of Regeb he went to Kermadge, where the Cheik Ahmed Ougani, prince of that place, had the honor to kiſs his hand, being introduc'd by the great Emirs: but Timur was not pleas'd with the entertainment he gave him; for theſe mountaineers are neither acquainted with civility, good-breeding, or even the laws of hoſpitality. April 4.

In the evening they went to encamp at Acſica, where the Cheik Abdal gave the emperor

Book IV. as handſom an entertainment as he was able, with which he was very much pleas'd.

April 5. The 10th of Regeb, Timur encamp'd in the deſile of Rame, and the ſame day ſent the doctor Nimet to prince Charoc to acquaint him with his arrival. The 11th they ſtopt at a town, from whence they departed the ſame day at nine in the morning for Cabul, where Timur left the empreſs Tchelpan Mulc Aga, with ſome troops, whoſe horſes and mules were exceedingly fatigu'd: he alſo left Mobacher there, to conduct 'em leiſurely. At night Timur arriv'd at the mouth of Joui Neu, a canal very full of fiſh, which he had caus'd to be dug. The 12th he went to encamp at Garban; where he built a great hoſpital of brick, becauſe ſeveral roads meet at this place, which was ſoon finiſh'd.

April 8. The 13th the court paſs'd the mountain and deſile of Cheberto, and went to encamp in a plain at two leagues diſtance. The ſame day the emperor being ſtruck by ſome evil eye [a], or malign influence, fell ſick, and had on his feet and hands painful ulcers, which hinder'd his taking any repoſe, and retarded 'em a whole day's march; and becauſe of this accident this place was call'd the dry and unfortunate camp. The night following an officer arriv'd from Herat from prince Charoc, with very agreeable news.

Timur departed from this place on the third day in a commodious litter carry'd by mules, he not being able to ride on horſeback: and as his ſickneſs yet encreas'd, the officers

[a] The Turks, as well as the Italians, are ſo ſuperſtitious as to believe that certain perſons bring misfortunes to every thing they look upon; and that their eyes are ſo venomous as to kill children. The Italians call this, *il cattivo occhio*, the evil eye.

of

cuſtom, gold and precious ſtones. The great conqueror moſt affectionately embrac'd his dear ſon, whom he tenderly lov'd, and loaded him with favors and honors. Chap. 33.

At this place likewiſe the Mirza Omar, ſon of Miran Chah, whom Timur at his departure for the Indian war had left at Samarcand, had the honor to kiſs his majeſty's feet, who gave him a very kind reception, becauſe of the love and care he had always ſhewn to his people, and the juſtice he had ſo exactly render'd.

On monday the 29th of Regeb, Timur went to encamp on the bank of a little river *; and the 30th, in the delicious fields of Kech. He immediately went to pay his devotions at the tombs of the great Santons, Chamſeddin Kelar, and others; and at length at that of his illuſtrious father, the Emir Tragai, of bleſſed memory: and then he viſited thoſe of his noble children. Here he ſtaid fifteen days, giving alms to the poor of that country. April 24. * Toum.

He departed from this place the 14th of Schaban, to encamp on the bank of the river of Roudec. The 15th he encamp'd at Tchenar Rebat, or the town of plane-trees: the 16th he paſs'd the mountain, and encamp'd at Cotlocy-urt. The 17th he went to Tact Caratchah, which himſelf had built: and the 18th he encamp'd at the Kiochk † of Gehannuma. The 19th he arriv'd at the pleaſure-houſe of Dolet-Abad: and monday the 20th, at nine in the morning, he came to the Kiochk of the garden of Dilcu Chah, the palace of which had been lately finiſh'd: and to conſecrate that palace to joy and pleaſures, a royal banquet was prepar'd, at May 9.

† Kiochk is a building in form of a cupola.

Book IV. which the empreſſes, the emperor's children, the princes of the blood, the Emirs or dukes, and the Nevians and foreign princes, aſſiſted. They caſt ſo much gold and precious ſtones upon his majeſty, to congratulate him on his victorys and happy arrival, that the earth ſeem'd ſown with 'em, and all the officers were loaded with riches.

The 21ſt of Schaban, Timur made his entry into his capital city of Samarcand, where, after he had been at the baths, to make his ablutions, he went to viſit the tomb of the venerable Santon Farcadcatam, ſon of Abbas; and there he gave preſents to the officers belonging to this mauſoleum: then he went to the hoſpital founded by the empreſs Touman Aga. After noon-prayer he honor'd with his preſence the garden of planes, and the palace of Nakchidgehan, where he was diverted with feaſts and plays. From thence he went to the delicious garden of Baghi Behicht, which is indeed a true paradiſe, as its name imports. Then he came to the palace of Baghi Boſend, at which place the elephants and baggage arriv'd. The inhabitants of Tranſoxiana, who had never before ſeen any elephants, were ſurpriz'd at theſe huge animals of ſuch an extraordinary figure, and gave praiſe to the Almighty, whoſe works are incomprehenſible.

The emperor diſtributed the curioſitys and riches he had brought from India, among the princes of the blood, the Cherifs, and chief perſons of the kingdom, according to their different rank and quality: among which were precious ſtones, gold, beautiful male and female Negroes.

Timur ſent Sarenk, eldeſt brother of Mellou Can prince of Moultan, with two chains of elephants, and other curioſitys, to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan. He made other preſents to the Emirs

Emirs who had been left in Tranſoxiana, that every one might partake of the benefits of his conqueſts. Then he permitted his ſon prince Charoc, to return to the ſeat of his kingdom of Coraſſana, after having loaded him with favors. Chap. 34.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Building of the great moſque of Samarcand.

THE Alcoran expreſly aſſures us, that the greateſt proof of a prince's faith is his erecting temples to the honor of God: whereupon our conqueror, being perſuaded that this work of piety wou'd be the crown of the merits he had acquir'd in his wars and Gazies againſt the infidels, where he had deſtroy'd the temples of the falſe gods, and exterminated the idolaters, reſolv'd to build a great moſque in Samarcand, large enough to contain all the faithful of that capital city, when they ſhou'd aſſemble at friday-prayers; and to this effect he iſſu'd out his orders for the foundations to be laid.

The architects choſe a happy moment to begin it, viz. on the 4th of Ramadan 801, which anſwers to the year of the Hare, the moon being then in Leo, going out of the ſextile aſpect of the ſun, and entring the ſextile aſpect of Venus. The maſons, brought from foreign countrys, as mention'd before, gave the greateſt proofs of their art and skill, as well in the ſolidity and beauty of the angles, as in the ſtrength of the foundations of this noble edifice. In the inſide of the moſque were employ'd two hundred maſons from Azerbijana, Perſia and India: five hun- May 28, 1399.

Book IV. hundred men likewiſe work'd in the mountains in cutting and hewing of ſtones, which were ſent into the city. Several other artiſans, of different trades, perform'd their parts with the utmoſt application. Ninety-five chains of elephants were made uſe of in drawing large ſtones with wheels and machines, according to the laws of mechanics. The princes of the blood and Emirs were appointed to overſee the workmen, that not one moment might be loſt in finiſhing this ſtupendous building.

In the mean while the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who ordinarily reſided at Andecan, on the frontier of Gete, arriv'd with a great attendance of officers. He had the honor to pay his reſpects to the emperor in the hoſpital of Touman Aga, where he made his preſents, and ſprinkled gold and precious ſtones upon his majeſty, according to the cuſtom of the Tartars, Moguls, and indeed of almoſt all the nations of the Turks. Timur embrac'd this young prince with all the tenderneſs that cou'd be expected from ſo good a father. He then went to viſit the works, to animate the workmen by his preſence; and he did not ſtir either from the college of Canum, which is near this moſque, or from the hoſpital of Touman Aga; at which places he diſtributed juſtice, ſat in council, and decided the affairs of religion and of the ſtate.

At length, under his conduct, this great edifice was finiſh'd. It contain'd four hundred eighty pillars of hewn ſtone, each ſeven cubits high. The arch'd roof was cover'd with marble, neatly carv'd and poliſh'd: and from the architrave of the entablature to the top of the roof were nine cubits. At each of the four corners of the moſque without was a Minaret *. The doors were of braſs: and the walls, as well with-

* A kind of ſteeple.

without as within, as alſo the arches of the roof, were adorn'd with writing in relievo, among which is the chapter of the cavern, and other parts of the Alcoran. The pulpit, and reading-desk, where the prayers for the emperor were read, were of the utmoſt magnificence: and the nich of the altar, cover'd with plates of iron gilt, was likewiſe of perfect beauty. Chap. 34.

After the month of Ramadan was paſt, and the feaſt of Bairam come, Timur went to the palace of Dilcu Chah, where he order'd preparations to be made for the moſt ſumptuous banquets, and all ſorts of plays and diverſions. The empreſs Rokia Canica on this occaſion gave a noble entertainment, accompany'd with conſorts of muſic and fine dancing.

The end of the fourth book.

BOOK

BOOK V.

Two wars of Timur in Georgia. The conqueſt of Syria and Meſopotamia. The famous war with Bajazet the Ottoman emperor, who after the loſs of a battel is taken priſoner, and dies in the Tartars camp.

CHAP. I.

The cauſes which oblig'd Timur to make war in the country of Iran, that is, in the weſtern parts of Aſia, from the river Gihon to the Mediterranean ſea.

An. Dom. 1399. IN the autumn of the year of the Hegira 801, which anſwers to that of the Mouſe, the Mirza Miran Chah [1], conducted by his evil deſtiny, went to take the diverſion of hunting in the neighborhood of Tauris, where the tomb of Pir Omar Naq Chirban is to be ſeen.

[1] Son of Timur, and viceroy of Media, which is call'd by the Perſians Azerbijana. The great Moguls of India are deſcended from him.

He

He met a roe-buck, which he was deſirous to take with his hands: but as he was ſtooping down to that purpoſe, he fell off his horſe, tho he was one of the beſt horſemen of Aſia; and the violence of his fall caſt him into a ſwoon, in which he lay a long time. All the lords of his court were extremely concern'd at it, and got round him to comfort him. He continu'd in fits for three days and nights: and his phyſician, being an ignorant fellow, or rather a knave, which has ſince been moſt ſuſpected, fail'd in the application of remedys; by which means this prince was ſeiz'd with a giddineſs in his brain, which impair'd his ſenſes. Thus this great man, who till that time had poſſeſs'd the throne of Holacou, and of the kingdom of Azerbijana, with ſo much applauſe and glory, by the adminiſtration of juſtice and by his liberality, was depriv'd of his underſtanding. Upon a bare ſuſpicion he ſlew a man; and prodigally ſquander'd away the treaſures of the ſtate, deſtroy'd the moſt noted buildings, and did many things contrary to the good ſenſe and dignity of a prince. Chap. 1.

One of his actions, which plainly diſcover'd the alteration of his judgment, was, that at the beginning of ſummer, he departed at the head of all his troops to beſiege the city of Bagdad: he march'd day and night, going two days journy in twenty-four hours, imagining that the bare rumor of his approach wou'd ſtrike a terror into the heart of the Sultan, and make him abandon the city. But affairs took a quite different turn; for when Miran Chah was at the dome of Ibrahim Lic, he receiv'd advice from Tauris, that a great number of the principal men of the kingdom were confederated againſt him; which nevertheleſs did not hinder his progreſs to Bagdad. But the Sultan Ahmed, knowing it was not

Book V. not a proper ſeaſon to beſiege the place, becauſe of the great dryneſs and heat of the weather, reſolv'd to defend himſelf. In the mean while couriers came inceſſantly from Tauris with reiterated advice of the conſpiracy, and even of the revolt of the principal inhabitants; ſo that the Mirza, two days after the arrival of the great ſtandard before Bagdad, was conſtrain'd to return to Tauris with expedition: he was no ſooner enter'd into that capital of Media, than he put all thoſe to the ſword who were accus'd of being in the conſpiracy, of which number was the Cadi *. During this autumn he ſuſpected that the Cherif Ali, prince of Cheki, of the tribe of Erlat, wou'd revolt from his obedience: for which cauſe, without examining into the truth of it, he march'd into the field at the head of his army, and went to pillage his country.

* The judg.

When the Georgians, who by their acts of hoſtility had already drawn on themſelves Timur's anger, were inform'd of the Mirza Miran Chah's ſmall application to public affairs, they became ſo inſolent, that during Timur's expedition in India they revolted. At the ſame time the Sultan Taher, ſon of the Sultan of Bagdad, was with his troops in the fortreſs of Alengic, which had been beſieg'd a long time, according to Timur's orders, by the Sultan Sendger, ſon of Hadgi Seifeddin *. The beſiegers, the better to carry on the ſiege, had built a great wall round the place, ſo that no one cou'd get in or out. This conjuncture caus'd the Georgians to get together a great number of troops: and even the Cherif Ali, tho a good Muſſulman,

* An old general of Timur's army, and his favorite, who had attended him ever ſince the beginning of his riſe.

join'd

join'd theſe infidels, to revenge himſelf for the Mirza Miran Chah's having pillag'd his country. The Georgians came before Alengic with a great army, being reſolv'd to deliver the Sultan Taher, who had been ſo preſs'd, that his heart, as one may ſay, was in his mouth; and entring Azerbijana, they ſack'd the country, pillag'd the Muſſulmans effects, and committed all imaginable diſorders. Chap. 1.

Sultan Sendger, on advice of this, rais'd the ſiege, and march'd to Tauris to give an account of this ſtrange accident to Miran Chah, who immediately order'd his ſon the Mirza Aboubecre to march with four or five Emirs before Alengic, to repulſe the Georgians, and put a ſtop to their diſorders; which they cou'd not do with ſo much expedition, but that the Georgians got firſt to the place, from whence having made the Sultan Taher go out, they plac'd Alengic in the hands of Hadgi Saleh, and three famous Oznaours[1] of Georgia, and then return'd home, their deſign being only to deliver the Sultan Taher. Yet by chance they met the army of Tauris, which being far leſs numerous, endeavor'd to avoid 'em; but that being impoſſible, the Oznaours reſolutely advanc'd as if aſſur'd of the victory: at the firſt onſet they broke thro the wings of the army of Tauris; and the Cherif Ali, perceiving Aboubecre, ruſh'd upon him out of the main body ſword in hand, to revenge the ruin his father had brought upon his country: but this young prince, who was but eighteen years old, kept his ground, and let fly an arrow of walnut-wood againſt the

[1] The Oznaours are the principal lords of Georgia, as the Emirs and Mirzas are with the Perſians and Tartars.

Book V. Cherif, with ſo much skill, that he ſtruck him near the collar of his helmet of gold, which he pierc'd, and the arrow ſtuck in his neck; ſo that the raſh Cherif fell down dead on a ſudden. This vigorous action of the young prince did not hinder the Georgians gaining the victory; for they totally defeated the army of Tauris, and then return'd into their own country, while the Mirza Aboubecre ſav'd himſelf by flight.

Theſe melancholy events were the conſequences of the Mirza Miran Chah's being lunatic; which yet appear'd in a more ſhameful manner in his exceſſes and debauches; for he employ'd almoſt all his time in drinking and gaming. And as one vice is always attended by another, he fell into greater extravagances. As he was one day in converſation with his wife the princeſs Canzade, he reproach'd her with a fact which wounded her honor, with which this chaſte princeſs was ſo ſenſibly touch'd, that ſhe us'd all her endeavors to diſcover the ſource of this calumny; in which ſearch the lives of ſeveral men and women were ſacrific'd; and even the Mirza's Viſier, Dolet Coja Einac, was oblig'd to fly with his wife to Beyan Coutchin at Rei, leaving all he had got during the time of his miniſtry to be plunder'd. The averſion of the Mirza and Canzade ſo far increas'd, that the princeſs, being highly incens'd, was oblig'd to go to Samarcand, where ſhe arriv'd juſt as Timur return'd from the Indian war, and had begun to take ſome recreation after the fatigues of that expedition, and inform himſelf of the preſent affairs of the empire. This was a favorable time for the princeſs to be reveng'd; for Timur had been already inform'd of the many diſorders committed in the kingdom of Iran, and eſpecially in Azerbijana, thro the ill conduct of the Mirza.

Mirza. Canzade at her arrival had the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet in the caſtle of plane-trees, where ſhe acquainted his majeſty with her husband's diſtemper, aſſuring him that if he did not march towards that kindom, the Mirza wou'd not fail of revolting, ſince he now made ſlight of the imperial mandates and prohibitions, and had ſquander'd away the treaſures of Azerbijana in debauches and prodigality. Chap. 2.

Theſe reaſons oblig'd Timur, before he had repos'd himſelf after the fatigues of the laſt campain, from which he had not return'd above four months, to take up a reſolution to carry his arms into the countrys of Iran, to put a ſtop to the diſorders which had crept in there, to ſuccour the weak, curb the inſolent, and deliver thoſe who were fallen under the weight of injuſtice and tyranny.

CHAP. II.

Timur's departure for a campain of ſeven years.

TIMUR, to whom the univerſal empire of Aſia was deſtin'd, was no ſooner on his return from India, where he had ſuffer'd the fatigues of a tireſom war with the infidels for a whole year, than he reſolv'd to march towards the weſtern parts of Aſia, for the reaſons given in the preceding chapter. The exempts immediately ſent meſſengers into all the provinces, with orders for the officers of the army to aſſemble their troops, as well cavalry as infantry, for a campain of ſeven years, and repair immediately to court to receive his

Book V. majeſty's orders. Timur ſent to Herat three Emirs of the court of the Mirza Charoc, to ſignify to that prince that he muſt march into Azerbijana at the head of the troops of Coraſſana, and that the Emir Solyman Chah * ſhou'd go before at the head of the vanguard to Tauris.

* Charoc's Viſier.

The Mirza Charoc having learnt the emperor's will from the Emirs, employ'd himſelf in getting ready the army of Coraſſana; and the Emir Soyman Chah departed at the ſame time with the Seid Coja, whom Timur had ſent. As ſoon as the troops were aſſembled, the Mirza at their head took the road to Beſtam and Damgan. When he was arriv'd at Jadgeron, he met Toukel Carcara, who was come from the imperial camp, which had already croſs'd the Gihon, and who brought orders for the army of Coraſſana to take the road to Chaſuman, Eſterabad, and Sari, becauſe the imperial army muſt paſs by Beſtam and Damgan. Whereupon the Mirza turn'd towards Chaſuman; but many of his horſes periſh'd in their march, as well by reaſon of the difficulty of the ways, as for that the roads were full of poiſonous herbs: and after a tedious journy he arriv'd at Firouzcouh. Timur before his departure gave the government of all the country of Touran to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, whom he left at Samarçand, the ſeat of this great empire. He fix'd ſeveral Emirs in employments near the Mirza's perſon, whoſe buſineſs was to defend the frontiers; and he gave the government of Andecan to the Mirza Eskender, to whom he entruſted the care of the limits of Turkeſtan. At length, recommending himſelf to God, he order'd the great imperial ſtandard to be brought into the field; and at the beginning of autumn, the eighth of Muharrem 802, which anſwers to the year of the Hare, this

Oct. 11. 1399.

this great conqueror departed for a campain of ſeven years; the date of which day is found in the letters of Fateh Carib, which ſignifys, eaſy conqueſt. Timur went directly to encamp. at Caratoupa, which mountain he afterwards paſs'd, and went down to Kech, where he viſited the tombs of the prince his father, and of the Cheik Chamſeddin Kelar: here he diſtributed alms, and then went to Termed, where he did the ſame in the tombs of the Cherifs, as well as in that of Coja Mehemed Ali, the great philoſopher of Termed, and in that of the illuſtrious Aboubeere Verrac, and other famous Santons, imploring their interceſſion with God for the good ſucceſs of his arms. Chap. 2.

He croſs'd the Gihon, and went down to Balc, where he encamp'd in a meadow ſituate at the foot of the fortreſs of Hendouan: he likewiſe viſited at Balc the tombs of theſe holy men, Coja Okia Chah, Coja Rommane, Sultan Ahmed Kezrouye, Edailayaz, Sefian Thaouri, and others, whoſe aſſiſtance he beſought: and he did the Emir Yadghiar Berlas, governor of Balc, the honor to lodge in his houſe. This Emir was not wanting in performing his devoirs, as well in ſprinkling gold and precious ſtones at the emperor's feet, as in preparing for him a magnificent banquet and preſents, and giving him all the marks of a profound reſpect and perfect obedience. Timur departed from Balc, and after ſeveral days march, came to Sarek Camich Dgiam, where he was join'd by the Mirza Charoc's houſhold, and by the princeſſes Melket Aga *, and Ghioher Chad Aga *, with their children, who came from Herat.

* Charoc's wives.

The emperor took pleaſure in ſeeing 'em, and receiv'd their preſents, and the precious ſtones they ſprinkled on him, with ſo much the more

Book V. ſatisfaction, in that they preſented to him the young Mirza Siorgatmich, who was born of Melket Aga but four months before, under the aſcendent of Virgo, the eighth of Ramadan 801. The emperor was tenderly affected at the ſight of the Mirza his grandſon, whom he loaded with bleſſings.

June 1399.

The Emir Acbouga came to the ſame place to pay his reſpects to his majeſty, making preſents, and ſprinkling precious ſtones at his feet. The emperor gave him a handſom reception, with a veſt, and permitted him to return to Herat. Then he went to viſit the tomb of the celebrated Mufti Ahmed Dgiam, where he diſtributed alms as uſual, to implore the protection of this famous Santon: and from thence he ſent the Mirza Rouſtem to his eldeſt brother the Mirza Pir Mehemed at Chiraz, with orders that theſe two brothers ſhou'd march together towards Bagdad; and he commanded the Emir Sevindgic to accompany him with a thouſand horſe. Timur then took the diverſion of the chace in the plains of Khergherd and Feragherd, where in two days they ſlew an exceſſive number of beaſts; and afterwards he continu'd his road by Nichabour and Beſtam, and diſtributed victuals and ammunition among the troops: he paſs'd by the province of Rei and Khouvar; and being encamp'd at the town of Aivanic, he was join'd by the Mirza Charoc, who according to his inſtructions had march'd by the road of Mazendran.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

The tranſactions of the Emir Solyman Chah.

THE Emir Solyman Chah, who had taken the road to Tauris with the vanguard, being arriv'd at Rei, heard from Beyan Coutchin, governor of that town, of the Mirza Miran Chah's being lunatic: whereupon, not thinking himſelf ſecure if he ſhou'd go to wait upon this prince, he reſolv'd to march to Hamadan. But the Mirza Aboubecre having held a council with his father's Emirs, they conſented to write a letter to Solyman Chah, in which they invited him to come to Tauris, aſſuring him that he ſhou'd receive all manner of ſatisfaction. On this promiſe the Emir went there, and with ſo much conduct wrought upon Miran Chah, that he perſuaded him to ſet out two days after to meet the emperor, with a numerous retinue; while the Mirza Aboubecre gave this brave Emir a magnificent entertainment in the meadow of Comtoupa, without the city of Tauris; honoring him with a veſt, and making him a preſent of ſeveral fine horſes, to gain his good-will; as he did alſo Seid Coja, who accompany'd the Emir Solyman Chah: and then they went together to Chehriar. When Timur had paſs'd by Chehriar, the Mirza Miran Chah arriv'd at the imperial camp; but he cou'd not obtain audience till the next day. The ſame day a meſſenger, nam'd Aman, arriv'd from Chiraz, and offer'd preſents to Timur from the Mirza Omar Cheik: he had a handſom reception, and the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet. Next

Book V. day the Mirza Miran Chah had alſo the honor to kiſs the emperor's feet: he offer'd his preſents on his knees; but he was not receiv'd by the emperor with any tokens of kindneſs, becauſe of the faults he had committed. Then Timur ſent to Tauris before the reſt, Timur Coja ſon of Acbouga, and Gelaleliſlam, to carry information of the deportment of Miran Chah. Theſe two commiſſarys, at their arrival there, caus'd the principal officers and lieutenants of this Mirza to be ſeiz'd and bound, and the regiſters of the Divan to be brought to 'em. And whereas the Mirza had ſquander'd away two parts of the revenues for four years belonging to the Divan, theſe commiſſarys wou'd not paſs his accounts for the ſame. But as information was given the court, that the principal cauſe of the diſorder of the province came from the Mirza's exceſſes, and he was buoy'd up in this evil paſſion by the inſtigation of certain profligate muſicians, and others, who made it their buſineſs to excite him to pleaſures and drunkenneſs; that theſe paraſites never ſtir'd from the prince's perſon, but took care to furniſh him with new ſubjects for debauches; the emperor iſſu'd out an order that they ſhou'd be all hang'd, not excepting one man, to ſerve for an example to others. Thus all the Mirza's favorites were ſeiz'd; and even the moſt ingenious men, who were of that number, were not ſpar'd, but ſerv'd as a warning to others; as the incomparable Moulana Mehemed Couheſtani, ſo famous for all ſciences, and ſo celebrated a poet; whoſe converſation and agreeable wit had render'd him the wonder of his age.

Timur, at his arrival at Sultania, gave audience to Muzaffer of Noteuze [4], who came

[4] A town near Cachan.

from

from Iſpahan; and preſenting to Timur jewels and precious veſſels, he kiſs'd the imperial carpet. Timur continu'd his march towards Carabagh, by the way of Caraderra and Ardebil: he hunted in the plains of Moucam [5] and Actam [5], and encamp'd on the banks of the Arana [6], which he croſs'd the next day upon a bridge of boats, and went to Carabagh Arran. He diſtributed the winter-quarters among his troops, which were to be in the neighbourhood of Coutourkint, where the hord and lordſhip of Omartaban lay. At Carabagh the Mirza Aboubecre, and the Emir Solyman Chah, had the honor to pay their reſpects to the emperor; and all the Emirs and chief lords of Miran Chah's court, and the generals of his army, made their preſents to his majeſty, according to their ability. Chap. 3.

We have already related how the Cherif Ali king of Cheki, of the hord of Erlat, had join'd the Georgian army; that he came with 'em to the gates of Alengic, and loſt his life by the hands of the young Mirza Aboubecre, ſon of the Mirza Miran Chah. Since that time, his ſon, the Cherif Sidi Ahmed, who had taken upon him the reins of government, fell into an extreme inquietude, fearing loſt his father's fault ſhou'd juſtly draw upon him Timur's vengeance: this reflection oblig'd him to ſeek the protection of the Emir Cheik Ibrahim, king of Chirvan, and to fly to him for refuge, becauſe this Emir was honor'd with Timur's particular favor, who lov'd him becauſe of his ſincerity, and diſtinguiſh'd him among his greateſt officers. Wherefore this king of Chirvan, relying entire-

[5] Towns of Azerbijana.

[6] A river frontier of Azerbijana and Arran.

Book V. ly on the emperor's goodneſs, carry'd the Cherif to the foot of the throne, deſigning to beg pardon for him, and procure him the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet. In effect, Sidi Ahmed kiſs'd the ground with a profound ſubmiſſion, and the Cheik Ibrahim ask'd pardon for his faults. The emperor full of clemency was willing to give him that mark of his affection; and not only pardon'd the Cherif on his account, but even gave him a handſom reception, and moreover confirm'd him in the principality of Cheki, which the Cherif Ali his father formerly poſſeſs'd. The Cheik Ibrahim, in quality of king of Chirvan, paid alſo his particular devoirs; and to teſtify his joy at the emperor's coming into his country, he prepar'd great banquets, and caus'd ſo great a number of horſes and ſheep to be ſlain, that all the cooks in the court were not ſufficient to dreſs 'em. Beſides this banquet, he entertain'd the court with all other pleaſures, which uſually accompany any famous feaſts; and afterwards he offer'd his preſents, which conſiſted of curious animals, beautiful boys and girls, divers ſtuffs, belts of gold ſet with precious ſtones, ſeveral ſorts of cuiraſſes and other arms; and laſtly, ſix thouſand horſes of great price and beauty.

CHAP. IV.

The arrival of good news from ſeveral parts.

DURING theſe tranſactions, advices were brought from all parts, which were very advantageous to us: among the reſt we were inform'd of the death of Timur Cotlue Aglen, who

who having fled for refuge to Timur, after the defeat and ruin of Tocatmich Can, had thro the protection of Timur been eſtabliſh'd on the throne of the Cans of Capchac, and the empire of Touchi; and yet forgetful of all the favors he had receiv'd from Timur, thro an unparallel'd ingratitude, had revolted, and declar'd war againſt him: they had advice, I ſay, of the death of this ungrateful prince, as alſo of the miſerable ſtate of the kingdom of Capchac from ſeditious and inteſtine wars. Chap. 4. Death of the grand Can of Capchac.

At the ſame time we alſo heard that Malek Ezzaher Barcoc, king of Egypt and Syria, had paſs'd from this world into the other: that diſcord having crept among the Emirs and Mamalues, the affair had ended in a civil war, in which ſeveral of the principal Emirs had been maſſacred: that Farrudge, ſon of Barcoc, who was declar'd heir and ſucceſſor to the kingdom, had neither credit nor authority: and, that the kingdoms of Egypt and Syria were entirely fallen into diſorder. Death of the Sultan of Egypt.

There came alſo advice, that Tangouz Can, emperor of China, where he had reign'd a long time, profeſſing idolatry, was dead: and that the Chineſe who had revolted, had caus'd great confuſions in that empire. Death of the emperor of China.

They alſo learnt that Kezre Coja Aglen, king of Gete, had paid the tribute to the angel Iſrael; and that after his death diſſenſions aroſe among his four ſons, Chamadgehan, Mehemed Aglen, Chirali, and Chadgehan, thro the motions of ſome ſeditious people. Death of the king of Gete.

The ſame day they alſo heard that the Mirza Eskender, ſon of Omar Cheik, was departed from Andecan at the head of his Emirs and army, and had enter'd Mogoliſtan, where, thro Timur's good fortune, he had gain'd the advantage

Book V. tage over the Moguls, whom he utterly defeated.

Theſe advices, which were of ſo great importance to the deſigns of our conqueror, arriving the ſame day, fill'd the hearts of all the emperor's faithful ſervants with joy.

As the affair of the Mirza Eskender is of ſuch great conſequence, we have thought proper to give the reader a detail of it. Diſſenſion having crept in among the people of Gete [7] after the death of Kezre Coja Aglen, the Mirza Eskender laid hold on this favorable opportunity, and got together the troops of Andecan; and tho he was but fifteen years old, he put himſelf at their head, accompany'd by the Emirs of his court, and by thoſe who in compliance with Timur's orders, guarded the frontiers of Gete; and boldly enter'd into the lands of the Mogols.

When he was come near to Cachgar [8], and the Emirs had join'd him, they advanc'd all together to pillage and ravage the town of Yarkent [9]: then they march'd on farther, and did the ſame to Sarek Camich, Kelapine, Aligheul, Yar Courgan, Tchartac, and Keiouc Bagh [1]: they at length arriv'd at the province of Aoudge in Mogoliſtan, and almoſt all the people, whoſe hords were in thoſe quarters, came to meet 'em with ſubmiſſion and obedience. They took thoſe priſoners who refus'd to obey, and carry'd 'em with 'em towards the citadel of Acſou, which they beſieg'd, and with great difficulty made themſelves maſters of it. This citadel conſiſts of

[7] The author ſeems to make no difference between the Getes and the Mogols, either becauſe the action is the ſame, or that the Mogols at that time inhabited the country of Gete.

[8] Capital of Turkeſtan.

[9] Town of Gete.

[1] All towns of Mogoliſtan.

three

three caſtles, which have a communication with one another, and is eſteem'd ſo ſtrong, that the inhabitants of all the neighboring provinces conſider it as a ſure aſylum in time of war. The Mirza ſoon encamp'd with his Emirs without the place; and being prepar'd to attack it vigorouſly with inſtruments for ſapping the walls, ſcaling-ladders, battering-rams, and other machines, he caus'd ſeveral aſſaults to be given immediately after one another, for near forty days, when the beſieg'd were oblig'd to ſurrender: to which purpoſe they ſent preſents to the Mirza, and made ſeveral very rich Chineſe merchants go out of the place, who had been ſhut up there with their effects. Then the Mirza ſent men to make inroads at Bai and Couſan; the former of which is a cool place fit for the ſummer, and the latter a warm place proper for winter. The ſcouts pillag'd theſe two towns, and brought away captive the princeſs Hadgi Melik Aga, wife of the Emir Kezre Chah, and her daughter Iſan Melik, with other ladys. At length they went to pillage the town of Tarem, whence they brought the inhabitants away priſoners. Chap. 4.

After theſe conqueſts the Mirza Eskender departed from Acſou for Cotan *, one hundred and fifty ſeven days journy from Cambalec *, capital of the northern China, call'd Catai, which is a flouriſhing and populous country, with abundance of water: for we count from Cotan to Cara Coja thirty-five days journy; from thence to Tetcaoul, frontier of China, thirty-one days journy, where there is a wall ſituate between two mountains, in which wall is a great gate, and

* Pequin.

The Chineſe wall.

* Capital of a kingdom of the ſame name.

ſeveral

Book V. ſeveral Yam Canes, or inns to lodge paſſengers, and ſeveral ſoldiers are always at this place to guard the frontiers and entrance of the wall. From hence to Ghendgian Fou, a city of China, is fifty-one days journy; and forty from that place to Cambalec. It is alſo forty from Ghendgian Fou to Nemnai. We are aſſur'd there is another road, by which to go from Cotan to the frontiers of China in forty days: but there is not one dwelling-place in it, the ſands make it very tireſom; and tho the water, which is drawn out of the wells in its deſarts, is eaſily come at, yet in ſeveral places it is venomous, and kills the animals which drink of it: and what is very ſurprizing, out of two wells at a ſmall diſtance from each other, the water of one is poiſonous, and the other perfectly good. From Cotan to Cachgar is fifteen days journy, and from Cachgar to Samarcand twenty-five. In Cotan are two rivers, Oraccach, and Caracach, the ſtones of which being jaſper, are carry'd to other countrys. Theſe two rivers have their ſource in the mountain of Carangoutac.

To return to our ſubject: at the Mirza Eskender's arrival at Cotan, the inhabitants came out to ſalute him, and bring him preſents; and he behav'd himſelf with ſo much prudence, that all the places and caſtles of this frontier-province were reduc'd to the emperor's obedience. He at length departed from Cotan, and came to Carangoutac, a very ſteep and rugged mountain; into which the inhabitants of Cotan and the neighboring places fly for refuge in time of war. When the Mirza was fully inform'd of the ſtrength and inacceſſibleneſs of Carangoutac, he did not judge it convenient to hazard his troops there, but choſe rather to return, and ſpend the winter at Cachgar. He choſe two

com-

companys of Mogul young women, the moſt beautiful of Cotan, nine in each company, whom he ſent as a preſent to the emperor by the Cheik Yeſaoul: he likewiſe ſent by the ſame perſon nine young women and nine horſes to the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who being extremely incens'd againſt him, refus'd his preſents. Chap. 4.

The reaſon of this diſcord was as follows: the Mirza Mehemed Sultan was come into Turkeſtan with an army to join the Mirza Eskender, and go with him to the war againſt the Getes; but Eskender, inſtead of waiting for him as he ought, went before, and march'd directly into Mogoliſtan, that he might not ſerve under Mehemed Sultan. This excited Mehemed's hatred, ſo that he wou'd not accept of his preſents; and he return'd to Samarcand with his army, without putting any deſigns in execution.

When ſpring was come, the Mirza Eskender return'd to Andecan, from whence he took the road to Samarcand, to viſit Mehemed Sultan; but he learnt at the mountain Ackioteb, that the Mirza being highly incens'd againſt him, had a deſign to ſeize him. This advice made Eskender jealous; ſo he return'd to Andecan, and enter'd the caſtle: but the Emirs, Pir Mehemed, ſon of Tagi Bouga, and Pir Hadgi ſon of Melik, tax'd him with a deſign to revolt. They aſſembled the militia of Andecan, and beſieg'd the caſtle, upon which the Mirza Eskender came out, and went to lodge in a garden built by the Mirza Omar Cheik, after having confer'd with 'em with a deal of good-nature. Then the Emirs ſeiz'd his domeſtics, and bound 'em; of which they ſent advice to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan at Samarcand, as alſo of Eskender's entring the caſtle, and deſign to revolt. Mehemed Sultan diſpatch'd an expreſs to bring Eskender to Samar-

Book V. Samarcand, with the officers of his houſhold. They deliver'd this prince to him at the bank of the river of Couhec; and having bound him, they put to death his Atabec[1], Beyan Timur, ſon of Bikidgek, with twenty-ſix of his domeſtics.

CHAP. V.

Timur marches into Georgia, and to the defile of Comcha.

TIMUR deſigning to carry his arms into Georgia, in obedience to the precept of the Alcoran, which teaches us to wage war upon all who disbelieve the muſſulman religion, he began to make preparations from the winter of An. Dom. 1399. 802, being then encamp'd at Carabagh Arran. He gave a veſt to the Cheik Ibrahim of Chirvan, and another to Sidi Ahmed of Cheki; and after having loaded 'em with his favors, he permitted 'em to return home. He choſe three men out of every ten to ſerve as ſcouts, whom he order'd to take victuals for ten days: and he commanded the baggage and reſt of the army to ſtay in this place. He went to join theſe ſcouts with the Mirzas his ſons; and being at- * Abcor. riv'd at the river of Cyrus *, he croſs'd it with his troops on a bridge of boats. Soon after he was join'd by the Cheik Ibrahim of Chirvan, and Sidi Ahmed, prince of Cheki, who came to follow the court.

[1] Atabec is a prince's governor.

The

The imperial army paſs'd by Cheki [a], and took the road to the defile of Comcha [b], where the infidels dwelt: and as this defile was full of thick woods, the trees of which were very cloſely interwoven with one another, the ſoldiers had orders to cut 'em down to facilitate their paſſage. Accordingly they made a road with their axes and ſaws ten days journy in length, and broad enough for five or ſix companys to march in front. At that time it ſnow'd exceedingly for twenty days together; but that cou'd not hinder Timur from arriving with his army in Georgia. Our men made the great cry, *Allah Ecber*, and fell upon the enemy with ſo much fury, that the ſurface of the mountain which the ſnows had before render'd white, with the blood of theſe infidels became as red as fields ſown with tulips; and no quarter was given to any they met. Comcha the chief of theſe infidels, who disbelieve any future judgment, was oblig'd to abandon his effects and family, and fly. Our ſoldiers purſu'd him as far as the defile of Acſou, and return'd with a great many oxen, ſheep, and other cattel. After Comcha's flight, and retreating into the woods, they ſet fire to his houſes, and pillag'd and ruin'd all his villages. And as wine was abſolutely neceſſary for this people; their men, women, and little children being ſo accuſtom'd to it, that when they were on their death-bed, they entreated that ſome might be buried in their ſepulchres with 'em, and order'd by their wills that after their deaths their bodys ſhou'd be waſh'd with wine, and their coffins made with vine-tree: for this conſideration; Chap. 5.

[a] A town on the ſouth frontiers of Georgia near the Caſpian.
[b] A defile in Georgia, belonging to prince Comcha.

that

Book V. that they might do 'em the more damage, and entirely ruin 'em, the vine-trees were diſtributed among the troops, who rooted up all of 'em, which they had with ſo great difficulty cultivated; they alſo cut down the other trees, and peel'd ſeveral. They afterwards raz'd the great edifices of this country, and eſpecially the temples, where they paid their adorations, which were ſo diſagreeable to God. And what is remarkable is, that in the winter of the preceding year, which was that of the Leopard, Timur deſtroy'd the Guebres of India, and ruin'd their temples at Deli, and upon the Ganges; and that this winter, which was the year of the Hare, he was carrying on the ſame war of religion in Georgia, and razing the temples of the Georgians. The poet ſays, that he had one foot on the eaſtern frontiers of India, and the other upon the weſtern limits of the country of Arran.

CHAP. VI.

Timur's return from the defile of Comcha.

TIMUR ſtaid near a month in this defilo; and his ſoldiers had made themſelves maſters of all the mountains, after having ſlain an infinite number of brave Oznaours, whoſe prince Comcha was retir'd to ſo great a diſtance, that no advice cou'd be got of the place he was in; and the enemy's country was entirely ruin'd. beſides all this, the cold was very violent, and the ways were clog'd up with ſnow, ſo that the horſes had nothing to eat but the barks of trees, and even ſeveral of 'em died with hunger. Where-

Whereupon Timur reſolv'd to return: he repaſs'd the river of Cyrus, and came back with glory to Carabagh, where he enter'd his imperial tent with the acclamations of all the lords and princes of his court. The joy at his preſence was augmented by the birth of a ſon to the Mirza Calil Sultan: this young prince was nam'd Berkul; and ſeveral days were ſpent in ſprinkling gold and precious ſtones upon him: they had banquets and plays, accompany'd with muſic, to celebrate this happy birth. Soon after a ſevere order was iſſu'd out, for proſecuting thoſe in a council of war, who had not behav'd themſelves as they ought in the battel fought by the Mirza Miran Chah againſt the Georgians, in the neighborhood of Alengic. The Mirza Charoc was commiſſion'd to ſee to the putting this order in execution; who having examin'd all the facts, in council with the Emirs of the Divan, they preſented a memorial to the emperor, with the ſeveral interrogatorys, informations and proofs; upon which Timur order'd the puniſhment due by the laws of Genghiz Can to be executed. The baſtinado was given to Hadgi Abdalla Abbas, and Mehemed Caſgan: Yumne Haruzai Aperdi, who had fled firſt, was order'd to be put to death; but the Chah Zades, or emperor's children, obtain'd the favor of his being repriev'd after the baſtinado before and behind; and each of theſe three lords was fin'd thirty horſes. They alſo fin'd the principal officers of the Mirza Miran Chah, ſome at fifty, ſome at two hundred, and ſome at three hundred horſes; which horſes were diſtributed among the foot-ſoldiers. Chap. 6.

Timur beſtow'd many favors and honors on the Mirza Aboubecre, becauſe of the valor he had ſhewn in the fight, when he unhors'd Sidi

Book V. Ali king of Cheki. At the ſame time the prince Burhan Aglen was likewiſe put to death, for having committed ſome conſiderable faults, very unworthy of his birth, in ſeveral skirmiſhes. His ſon was treated in the ſame manner; and his regiment, officers, and domeſtics were given to Rouſtem Foulad.

CHAP. VII.

Continuation of the hiſtory of the Mirza Rouſtem, who was gone from Dgiam to Chiraz. A great crime committed by his eldeſt brother, the Mirza Pir Mehemed.

WE have ſaid before that the emperor had ſent the Mirza Rouſtem from Dgiam [a] to Chiraz, and that he was accompany'd in his journy by the Emir Sevindgic at the head of two thouſand horſe. They happily arriv'd at Chiraz by the road of Yezd and Abrecouh. The Mirza Pir Mehemed gave him a handſom reception, and a ſumptuous banquet, in the garden of Carabagh [b], and preſented him with a veſt and a hundred thouſand Dinars Copeghis. Some time after the Mirza Rouſtem, accompany'd by the Emirs Sevindgic, his nephew Haſſan Jandar, and Haſſan Jagadaoul, who were at Chiraz, took the road to Bagdad, according to the emperor's order, and paſs'd by Behbehan and Toſtar; leav-

[a] In Coraſſana towards Bactriana: the ſame with Sarek Camich Dgiam.

[b] A royal garden at Chiraz, different from Carabagh near Tauris.

ing

ing at Chiraz, to govern that city, the Emirs Said Berlas, and Alibek Aiſa, a relation of the Emir Abbas, as Timur had commanded him. But the Mirza Mehemed, who had the ſame orders to depart at the head of this army, delay'd his departure, till a long time after; then pretending ſickneſs, he return'd to Chiraz by Nobendgian in Chouleſtan. Chap. 7.

This did not deter the Mirza Rouſtem with his Emirs from ravaging Loraſterec, in the country of Rambermez [a], from whence he brought a great quantity of booty: he made the ſame haſte, in paſſing by the village of the bridge, call'd Dezfoul: he pillag'd in the plain of Dombar all the ſubjects of the princes Saki and Fabli. From thence he went to plunder Bad [b] and Racſa [c], whence he brought away ſeveral ſlaves; and in the month of Jumaziulevel 802, he arriv'd at Mendeli. The Emir Ali Calander, the governor of it for the Sultan of Bagdad, put himſelf in a poſture of defence; but he being repuls'd at the firſt onſet, they ſeiz'd on eleven of his men, whoſe heads they cut off, and then permitted the ſoldiers to pillage the place. March 1400.

In the mean while the Mirza Pir Mehemed, who under pretence of ſickneſs had turn'd back, arriv'd at Chiraz, where by the inſtigation of certain Tadgics, who had liſted themſelves in his ſervice, he fell into ſome extravagances; undertaking to compoſe poiſons and faſcinations, the deſigns of which he was utterly ignorant of. The Emir Said Berlas, governor of Chiraz, being inform'd of it by ſome of this young prince's ſervants, immediately made a ſtrict ſearch into

[a] A town of Loreſtan. long. 86, lat. 31.
[b] Towns of Chaldea.
[c] A town of Arabia, dependent on Bagdad.

Book V. the matter, and learnt from his very officers the whole of it, even before the Mirza's face. Upon theſe inconteſtable proofs the Emir Said impriſon'd Pir Mehemed in the inner fortreſs, and lodg'd himſelf in the caſtle to guard him, leaving Alibec Aiſa in the city to govern it in his ſtead; and he ſent advice to court of what had paſs'd at Chiraz. The meſſenger of the Emir Said gave an accouut of this to Timur in the winter-quarters at Carabagh, who immediately ſent the Emir Allahdad to Chiraz, to proſecute thoſe wicked Tadgics, who had taught the Mirza to make the poiſons, that they might be put to death: he was likewiſe order'd to ſettle the Mirza Rouſtem upon the throne of Perſia, in the room of his eldeſt brother, whom he was to bring bound to court. Accordingly the Emir Allahdad, at his arrival at Chiraz, put to death Moulana Mehemed Calife, Seid Dgerrah, and Rouſtem Coraſani, who were convicted of having taught the Mirza how to compoſe the poiſons; he caus'd Maſtaoui Couchtchi's legs and arms to be cut off; and put in irons Mobarec Coja, Muhib Cherberdar, and Cheik Zadei Ferid, who were accus'd of having been concern'd in the ſame crime. Allahdad then ſent the emperor's letters-patent to the Mirza Rouſtem, in Irac-Arabi, by which he was inſtall'd in the government of the kingdom of Perſia. This prince receiv'd 'em at Mendeli, after he had gain'd the victory over Mir Ali Calander. As ſoon as he had read the emperor's orders, he departed for Chiraz: the Emirs Haſſan Jandar and Haſſan Jagadaoul, who accompany'd him, return'd back; and the Emir Sevindgic took the road to Chepchemal, for Carabagh Arran, where the army lay then encamp'd.

Mir

Mir Ali Calander, who had fled from Mendeli, being arriv'd at Bagdad, gave an account to the Sultan Ahmed of what paſs'd: this prince fell into a great inquietude, and order'd the gates to be ſhut, and the bridge of the city to be deſtroy'd. Chap. 7.

About this time there happen'd a very remarkable affair, of great ſervice to Timur. This monarch having given the government of Coureſtan to one nam'd Cherouan, this governor immediately gave himſelf up to the getting of mony at any rate: he exacted great ſums from Chamſeddin Dehdar, and other principal men of the country; he even put to death the governors of Haviza *; and what was worſe than all this, he revolted, and with a thouſand horſe well-equip'd went to Bagdad, where he offer'd his ſervices to Sultan Ahmed, who gave him a handſom reception, loading him with honors and careſſes. Cherman did not reſt there; but endeavor'd to win over to him the Sultan's principal officers, and to that purpoſe ſecretly gave 'em conſiderable ſums, from ten thouſand to three hundred thouſand Dinars of Bagdad. But it happen'd very unluckily to this traitor, that the memorandum of the ſums paid to each of theſe lords was loſt thro the negligence of his ſecretary, and fell into the hands of Caure Behader, one of the Sultan's officers, who preſented the note to his maſter, at a time when the affrighted Sultan had caus'd the gates of the town to be ſhut. This affair greatly increas'd his jealouſy; and particularly a ſum of ten thouſand Dinars, ſet down to the name of Raſe, whom the Sultan immediately caus'd to be arreſted, and cut off

* A town in the province of Coureſtan, call'd alſo Ahouaz.

Book V. his head with his own hand. In the mean while, as he had already ſent Cherouan, with Coutoub Haideri, Manſour, and other Emirs, to ravage Oirat; he immediately diſpatch'd Yadghiar Eétatchi, with orders to the Emirs to ſlay Cherouan; which was accordingly executed, and his head brought to Bagdad, where the Sultan in leſs than eight days put to death near two thouſand of his officers. He ſent to Vaſet the lady Veſa Catoun, who had nurs'd and educated Cherouan from his infancy; where ſhe was ſmother'd by a pillow laid over her face. He ſlew with his own hand moſt part of the other ladys and officers of his houſhold, whom he order'd to be caſt into the Tigris: and afterwards he ſhut himſelf up in the Seraglio, not ſuffering any one to come to him; and even when the Bayertchis, or ſtewards, brought him his dinner, they knock'd at the door, deliver'd in the diſhes, and then return'd without entring. He ſpent ſeveral days after this manner, and then order'd ſix of his moſt faithful ſervants to convey ſecretly ſix horſes out of his ſtable to the other ſide the Tigris; which river he croſs'd one night in a boat, and with thoſe ſix perſons rode into the country ſubject to Cara Youſef prince of the Turcomans. In the mean while the ſtewards, as uſual, carry'd the king's dinner to the gate of the Seraglio, and deliver'd it to an officer who was in the ſecret, the people having no knowledg of the Sultan's abſence. This prince join'd Cara Youſef, and perſuaded him to come with his troops to pillage the town of Bagdad. When they were come there, he aſſign'd quarters on the other ſide of the water for the troops of Cara Youſef: the Sultan croſs'd the river in a boat, and came to his palace; and he gave ſo much ready mony, ſtuffs, arms, Arabian horſes, gold

gold belts, and other riches, to Cara Youſef and his men, that thoſe Turcomans were content with what they had got. The Sultan wou'd by no means permit 'em to inſult the city; but as he very much fear'd being attack'd by the army of Zagatai, he ſent out ſpys on all ſides, who gave him a true information of the condition of Timur's affairs. Chap. 7.

In the month of Zilhadge 802, Timur being on his march to Sebaſte, the Sultan of Bagdad imagin'd that if the formidable armys of this conqueror ſhou'd again enter Natolia and Syria, all the paſſages wou'd be block'd up, whilſt he muſt be oblig'd to ſave himſelf by flight. He therefore reſolv'd to leave Farrudge governor of the city of Bagdad, whence he deſign'd to go out with Cara Youſef, his wives and children, and his jewels, with whatever he cou'd carry away worth taking. So they croſs'd the Euphrates, for Natolia; and being arriv'd at Aleppo, Temourtach, who commanded there, came out with his Emirs to oppoſe his paſſage. A battel enſu'd: but thoſe of Aleppo being defeated, the Sultan and the reſt purſu'd their road, and came to Natolia. As they were on their march towards the city of Sebaſte, capital of Roum, they were met by a party of Timur's army: but what paſs'd between 'em we'll relate hereafter. July 1400.

I 4 CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

A diet in relation to the affair of Georgia.

AFTER winter was over, that is, in the beginning of the year of the Crocodile, Timur left his winter-quarters at Carabagh. He aſſembled a diet, whereto the princes his ſons, the Emirs, the lords and general officers did not fail of coming: he held a council with 'em, in which it was unanimouſly reſolv'd that the war with the infidels of Georgia was preferable to all others, as well for the good of religion, which ought to be the principal object of war, as for the increaſe of the power of monarchy, and the conjuncture of the preſent affairs. The uſual feaſt was made after the diet; and the banquet, which was very ſumptuous, was accompany'd with all ſorts of plays and pleaſures. Timur, excited by a deſire of liberality, diſtributed the treaſures among the Chah Zades, his ſons, the Emirs and all the ſoldiers of the army, and gave horſes to thoſe who were on foot. He afterwards inform'd himſelf of the roads and quarters of Georgia, where they ſhou'd encamp, and had 'em very exactly ſet down in writing; and then imploring the divine aſſiſtance, he departed from Carabagh, taking the road to Georgia, the country of Malek Ghourghin. In ten days he arriv'd at the plain of Berdaa, where he encamp'd, and gave audience to Taharten, prince of Arzendgian upon the Euphrates, who had already gain'd his majeſty's favor by his good ſervices. This prince kiſs'd the earth before Timur; made a diſcourſe in his praiſe, full

full of vows for his proſperity; and offer'd his preſents. Timur being willing to diſtinguiſh him by very particular favors, not only gave him a veſt, a cap and a belt, but he further honor'd him with a horſe-tail, a ſtandard, and two kettle-drums, which are the ſigns of ſovereignty: and then he permitted him to return to Arzendgian, after having given him inſtructions concerning the application and care he ought to uſe in the government of the city in the preſent conjuncture; and expreſly recommended to him to uſe circumſpection to preſerve his frontiers from the inſults of the Ottomans; to which purpoſe he ought to be watchful, cautious, and liberal to his ſoldiers, and neglect nothing to protect himſelf from his enemys artifices, who are very politic and dangerous. Chap. 8.

Timur departed from Berdaa, and after ſeveral days journy arriv'd at the frontiers of Georgia. He immediately diſpatch'd an expreſs to Malek Ghourghin, to ſend to the camp the prince Taher, ſon of Sultan Ahmed Gelair. The meſſenger acquitted himſelf of his commiſſion; but the king of Georgia, Ghourghin, return'd him a very uncivil anſwer. The expreſs came back without obtaining any thing, and gave an account to Timur of all that had paſs'd in the audience. The raſhneſs of this refuſal kindled his wrath againſt theſe infidels; wherefore leaving the baggage, he went before, and order'd his troops to enter the lands of theſe Georgians, and to put every thing to fire and ſword. The ſoldiers ſlew every one they met, ruin'd the houſes of the Georgians, and even rooted up the trees: they deſtroy'd the vines, ſpoil'd the fruits, and brought a terrible deſolation upon this country. The affrighted Georgians fled for refuge into their high mountains,

where

Book V. where no one had ever yet conquer'd 'em; for here were fortify'd caverns, and houſes upon craggy rocks, which it wou'd in vain to think any one cou'd enter by force of arms. They had entrench'd themſelves in thoſe places, and carry'd with 'em whatever they cou'd find worth taking. Timur's ſoldiers, without examining the dangers to which they were expos'd, and full of confidence in their prince's good fortune, aſcended theſe mountains, and then laid themſelves in boxes, to which ſtrong cords were faſten'd, and ſo were let down by their comrades from the tops of the mountains to the caverns of the Georgians; where diſcharging their arrows, they approach'd the enemys, and ſlew the moſt advanc'd: then taking lances in one hand, and ſwords in the other, they enter'd the caverns, notwithſtanding the vigorous reſiſtance of the enemys, of whom they made a horrible ſlaughter. Among theſe craggy places there were ſome ſo well defended, that our men were oblig'd to caſt a great quantity of combuſtible matter, as well to diſſipate the enemys, as to burn their wooden houſes, and the entrenchments they had made. Thus by the aſſiſtance of heaven, tho theſe infidels fought with all imaginable reſolution, the muſſulman ſoldiers had the advantage over 'em, according to the promiſe of the Alcoran; taking fifteen noted places, on which they very much rely'd. Thoſe who won'd turn Muſſulmans obtain'd quarter: but thoſe who, thro the temptation of the devil, ſtubbornly continu'd in the disbelief of the Alcoran, were beheaded.

Timur left ſeveral of the beſt troops of Coraſſana in the gariſon of the city of Teflis, capital of Georgia, and then went to encamp in the plain of Mocran. The king Ghourghin being

being terrify'd at the ſucceſs of the Mahometans, fled into the deſarts, and as a vagabond wander'd about the uninhabited mountains: but the greateſt part of the Oznaours of Georgia, ſeeing themſelves reduc'd to the utmoſt extremity, ſubmitted; they came in a humble manner to the gate of the imperial pavilion, where they begg'd quarter and pardon of the victorious Timur, making divers excuſes to avert his vengeance. When our troops had reduc'd this country, they raz'd the temples and monaſterys, where the Georgians had for a long time exercis'd their religion; and erected chappels and moſques, in which they proclaim'd the Ezan [1], and read the prayers of the muſſulman religion with the uſual ceremony, to the glory of Timur. Chap. 9.

CHAP. IX.

Timur marches againſt prince Jani Bec, a Georgian.

AFTER the conqueſt and deſtruction of the country of Malek Ghourghin, Timur reſolv'd to attack the other provinces of Georgia. He departed with expedition from the plain of Mocran, and leaving the baggage, march'd towards the defile of Jani Bec. When they were arriv'd there, the troops ſurrounded all the country, pillag'd it, and brought away a conſiderable booty. Jani Bec ſoon abandon'd

[1] Ezan is the cry the Mahometans make from the top of the Minarets (or ſteeples) of their moſques, to call the people to prayer.

his

Book V. his mountain and fortreſs; and with an entire ſubmiſſion came before the emperor. In the mean while our ſoldiers ravag'd the villages, burnt the houſes, and ſlew every one they met: they carry'd away the Georgians effects; and while they enrich'd themſelves in this world, they were laying up treaſures of merit in the other. Afterwards they return'd to join the baggage; and Timur ſent, by the way of Semave, the Seid Coja, ſon of the Cheik Ali Behader, to make inroads in other parts of Georgia: he order'd the Emir Gehan Chah to paſs the defile with the troops of the left wing: and the main body, commanded by Timur, paſs'd by Semave, where it was join'd by all the troops which were gone out to make inroads in the provinces, from whence they return'd loaden with ſpoils, bringing away a great number of horſes and ſheep; and, to mortify the Georgians the more, our ſoldiers deſtroy'd all the ſtanding corn, and ruin'd their temples and other edifices. At the mouth of the defile was a fortreſs nam'd Bil, which was very high and difficult of acceſs: nevertheleſs our army was no ſooner arriv'd there than they had orders to beſiege it; and the ſiege and conqueſt of the place were almoſt perform'd at the ſame time. Having taken it, they raz'd it, leſt it ſhou'd be of uſe to the enemy on another occaſion. From thence the army went to encamp in the true antient Georgia; and Timur ſent the Emirs into all parts in ſearch of king Ghourghin, who, like wolves and chacals, wander'd as a vagabond in uninhabited woods and mountains: but not being able to find him, they return'd to join the imperial camp with a great quantity of ſpoils, and ſome of Ghourghin's officers whom they had taken. Timur at length decamp'd, croſs'd the river of Cyrus, and happily encamp'd.

camp'd on the other bank, loaded with good fortune, and pleas'd with his victorys. Chap. 10.

CHAP. X.

The taking of the fort of Zerit, and the town of Suanit.

DURING theſe tranſactions, the ſpys brought advice that a great number of Oznaours were retir'd into the caſtle of Zerit, ſituate on the ridg of a narrow mountain, which had never been taken by any conqueror. On this, Timur, to whom nothing appear'd impoſſible, march'd with expedition towards this place, and order'd it to be beſieg'd. The machines and battering rams were got ready; and after ſeveral attacks neceſſary at a ſiege, a general aſſault was given ſeven days after Timur's arrival. The fort was taken ſword in hand, and raz'd the ſame day, after putting all the Georgians to the ſword. Then they went out to make inroads, and brought away a great number of priſoners bound, whom the emperor order'd to be put to death, becauſe they wou'd not turn Mahometans. They afterwards receiv'd advice that king Gourghin was in the town of Suanit. Timur order'd the roads to this town to be taken down in writing; and that the troops which were gone out to make inroads, ſhou'd return to the camp. He left one half of the army with the baggage; and with enſigns diſplay'd march'd with the reſt. But Ghourghin, who had his ſpys about him, had advice of Timur's approach; he went out of Suanit,

Book V. Suanit, and fled towards Abkhaze [a]. The troops, at their arrival at Suanit, carry'd it upon the firſt aſſault, and then went in purſuit of Ghourghin, ſeveral of whoſe officers they ſlew; but this prince, reduc'd to the greateſt miſery, croſs'd the rivers of Aigar and Corlan [b], and had the good fortune to ſave himſelf from the dangers wherewith he was ſurrounded. Then ſeeing himſelf, in a manner, ready for the ſlaughter, he found it was not for ſo weak a prince as himſelf to protect the ſon of the Sultan of Bagdad, againſt the powerful emperor Timur: whereupon he oblig'd Taher to ſeek an aſylum in the country of the Ottomans, whither he had heard the Sultan Ahmed his father was likewiſe fled. At length Gourghin ſent to the court of Timur an ambaſſador nam'd Iſmael, who made known to him the great miſery and extremity to which his maſter was reduc'd; deplor'd the ruin of his ſtate, and deſtruction of his country; and with his face turn'd towards the ground, he ſpake thus to the emperor with all the ſubmiſſion that cou'd be expected from a miſerable and vanquiſh'd prince: "I have ſeen "the evil ſucceſs of the methods I have ſo unfortunately taken; I have taſted the fruits of "my imprudence, and the bitterneſs of the puniſhment I have merited: but if the great "emperor, whoſe generoſity after victory, I "may venture to ſay, ſurpaſſes the fury of his "arms in battel, will take pity upon me, who "am his ſervant, and confeſs my fault, and is "willing to pardon me for what is paſt, and "grant me my life, I will not only be intirely "obedient to him, but my life ſhall always be

[a] A town of Georgia on the frontiers of Circaſſia.
[b] Rivers of Capchac.

"em-

" employ'd in his ſervice. I will take great care Chap. 11.
" not to hurt the Muſſulmans in any manner:
" and moreover I conſent to pay the annual tri-
" bute to the imperial treaſury; likewiſe pro-
" miſing to ſend what number of troops his ma-
" jeſty ſhall order into his ſervice, at the time
" appointed."

CHAP. XI.

Timur marches againſt the Georgian prince Aivani.

TIMUR, upon hearing this diſcourſe of Ghourghin's ambaſſador, was touch'd with the condition of this prince, and did not doubt the truth of what he ſaid; conſidering the great miſery and neceſſity to which he was reduc'd, his ſincere confeſſion of his fault, and his repentance for having dar'd to give protection to the Sultan Taher. Theſe conſiderations, join'd with the promiſes he had made, and confirm'd with an oath, to be always ready in the emperor's ſervice, and punctually to pay the annual tribute, caus'd Timur to grant him the pardon he demanded; who then went out of his country, and march'd towards the lands ſubject to prince Aivani, one of the moſt powerful ſovereigns of Georgia. The ſoldiers having enter'd his country, ravag'd and pillag'd all they met; and as there was no army to oppoſe 'em, they diſpers'd themſelves up and down, ruining the towns and caſtles, and deſtroying every thing with fire and ſword. After they had entirely laid this country waſte, they paſs'd into that of Cara Calcanlic *, the inhabitants of which,

* A tribe of Georgians.

Book V. which, arm'd with black bucklers, were ſkilful mountaineers, and good horſemen. They were not treated with more mildneſs than the others; for their country was ravag'd, and the places raz'd whither they were retir'd, their houſes burnt, and themſelves put to the ſword, after our ſoldiers had got what ſpoils they cou'd from 'em, which were very conſiderable.

CHAP. XII.

Timur returns from Georgia.

TIMUR being ſatisfy'd with the conqueſts he had gain'd, and having reveng'd himſelf on the Georgians, gave orders for his return. After ſeveral days march he encamp'd at Yeilac Mencoul; but having advice that the enemy were again aſſembled in a place nam'd Faraſgherd in Georgia, he ſent the Emir Cheik Noureddin thither with his troops; and being willing to be in perſon at the execution of all important affairs, he decamp'd ſome days after, and leaving the baggage, march'd to Faraſgherd. In five days he made himſelf maſter of ſeven fortreſſes of the Georgians, which he caus'd to be raz'd, after having ſlain an infinite number of theſe infidels; and from thence he return'd with all his army to Mencouh, where he ſtaid ſeveral days.

About this time there came ambaſſadors from an European prince, who brought with 'em the ſon of the Emir Amurat, the Ottoman emperor, whom they had taken priſoner: and by the interceſſion of the principal Emirs of the court, they were admitted into Timur's audience; to whom they made known the high eſteem their maſter

Vol. 2. page 145.

matter had concerted of his actions, and his de- Chap. 13.
ſire to enter into an alliance with him, which he ſhould account a great honor. Timur re-
ceiv'd the ambaſſadors with all manner of civi-
lity, granted 'em what they deſir'd, and after having given 'em rich veſts, diſmiſs'd 'em; and they return'd home by the way of Trebizond [6], pleas'd with the honors they had reciv'd at court. The army lay encamp'd two months in the meadow of Mencoul, that the horſes might have ſome reſt after their fatigue, and to wait the arrival of the Emirs and troops which were diſpers'd up and down the country.

CHAP. XIII.

Reaſons which oblig'd Timur to march againſt the city of Sebaſte, capital of Anatolia.

PHILOSOPHERS tell us that the re-
lation between a king and his kingdom is the ſame as between the ſoul and body; for when the ſoul and body harmonize in the rules of mode-
ration, the body is in perfect health; but if the contrary happens, it is attack'd with diſtem-
pers, and at length falls into corruption: and ſo when a king neglects to do juſtice, his king-
dom falls into decay. This moral may with juſtice be apply'd to the caſe of the Ottoman emperor, and the Sultan of Egypt; for theſe two princes priding in their power, committed ſeveral violent actions, which drew upon 'em

[6] Capital of the kingdom of the ſame name, in Anatolia, on the ſhore of the black ſea; long. 70. 30. lat. 42.

Book V. Timur's anger, and caus'd the deſtruction of their country and the deſolation of their ſubjects. Timur being irritated at their proceedings, tho but newly return'd from a toilſom campain, and notwithſtanding the great diſtance of theſe Sultans dominions, did not fail of undertaking the conqueſt of their empires, which by the grace of God he brought into ſubjection; ſo that all the citys, towns and villages of theſe great countrys were pillag'd by his ſoldiers: which calamity was brought upon the poor innocent people thro the bad conduct of their princes.

But to come to a particular detail of this hiſtory; we muſt know that Ildurum [7] Bajazet, ſirnam'd the Thunder, who was then emperor of the Ottomans, ſurpaſs'd moſt of his predeceſſors in power, and the vaſtneſs of his dominions: he had brought into ſubjection a great part of the country of Roum [*], to wit, the provinces of Aidine, Mentecha, Kermian, and Caramania, which his anceſtors had never been able to do: and he had likewiſe extended his dominions the ſpace of four months journy in Europe. After he had taken priſoner Cara Oſman, ſon of the Cadi Burhaneddin, prince of Sebaſte, and had put to death the Cadi, he brought an army into the field, and having made himſelf maſter of Sebaſte, he puſh'd his conqueſts towards Malatia [8], a town on the Euphrates, and bordering upon the province of Aleppo. He even beſieg'd and took the city of Malatia, which had been a long time dependent on Syria. He made the

[7] Ildurum ſignifys lightning or thunder.

[8] Long. 71. lat. 37.

Emi

Emir Muſtafa governor of Sebaſte, to whoſe ſon he gave the government of Malatia. At length, as if he cou'd find no one to diſpute his conqueſts, he return'd victorious and loaded with ſpoils to the ſeat of his empire. He had a great number of troops and officers belonging to his houſhold, and among the reſt, near twelve thouſand dog-keepers. His magnificence, riches, and power, render'd him ſo proud, that he forgot the ſentence which teaches us, that God, the creator of the univerſe, hath made thoſe who are ſuperior to them who pride themſelves in their ſtrength. He had the boldneſs to ſend an ambaſſador to Taharten, to ſummon him to his court, and ſend the tributes of Arzendgian, Erzerom, and their dependences, to his treaſury; which order was in ſuch haughty terms, that it did not become him to uſe. Taharten ſent advice of this to court; and Timur was very much ſurpriz'd at the deſigns of the Ottoman, who was not ignorant that Taharten was under his protection: whereupon he reſolv'd to write a letter to him, to endeavor to bring him to a ſenſe of his fault by ſweetneſs and friendſhip. Chap. 14.

CHAP. XIV.

Timur's letter to the Caiſer Roum, that is, the Ottoman emperor.

TIMUR commanded a ſecretary to be call'd to him, whom he order'd to write a letter to Ildurum Bajazet, mix'd with counſels and reproaches, hoping by that means to make him reflect upon what he had done. The ſecretary began the letter in an eloquent manner,

Book V. with praiſes to God, and bl[illegible] he made uſe of this paſſage o[illegible] ſubject of his letter, *God bleſſes thoſe princes who know what uſe they ſhou'd make of their power, and go not beyond the bounds preſcrib'd 'em:* and he continu'd it with expreſſions which were as daggers to the heart of Bajazet, and ought to have ſhewn him his duty. The letter was as follows.

To the emperor of Roum, Bajazet the Thunder.

" AFter the uſual compliments, we let you " know, that by the infinite grace o fGod, " the greateſt part of Aſia is in ſubjection to " our officers, which we conquer'd by our " ſtrength, and the terror of our arms. Know " likewiſe that the moſt powerful Sultans of the " earth are obedient to our commands; that " we govern our dominions by our ſelf, and " have even conſtrain'd fortune to take care of " our empire; that our armys are extended " from one ſea to the other, and our guard con- " ſiſts of ſovereign kings, who form a hedge be " fore our gate. Where is the monarch who " dares reſiſt us? Where is the potentate who " does not glory in being of the number of our " courtiers? But for thee, whoſe true origin ter- " minates in a Turcoman ſailor, as every one " knows, it wou'd be well, ſince the ſhip [a] of thy " unfathomable ambition has ſuffer'd ſhipwreck " in the abyſs of ſelf-love, if thou wou'dſt lower " the ſails of thy raſhneſs, and caſt the anchor of " repentance in the port of ſincerity, which is

[a] This metaphorical way of expreſſion is very common among the Orientals: but it ſounds more proper in this place, becauſe of the race of Bajazet being related to a ſailor.

" the

" the port of ſafety; leſt by the tempeſt of our Chap. 14.
" vengeance you ſhou'd periſh in the ſea of the
" puniſhment which you merit. But as we have
" learnt, that in obedience to the precept of
" the Alcoran, which orders us to wage war
" with the enemys of the Muſſulman laws, you
" have undertaken a vigorous war with the Eu-
" ropeans; this conſideration hath hinder'd us
" from making any inſults in the lands which
" are ſubject to you: and the reflection that
" your country is the bulwark of the Muſſul-
" mans, hath oblig'd us to leave it in a flou-
" riſhing condition; for fear the paſſage of our
" armys into it ſhou'd raiſe a diviſion among
" the inhabitants, and cauſe the Muſſulmans
" to be diſquieted, and the infidels to rejoice.
" Then take care of your ſelf, and endeavor by
" your good conduct to preſerve the dominions
" of your anceſtors, not ſuffering for the future
" your ambitious foot to wander out of the li-
" mits of your power, which is but ſmall.
" Ceaſe your proud extravagances, leſt the cold
" wind of hatred ſhou'd extinguiſh the flam-
" beau of peace. You may remember the pre-
" cept of Mahomet, to let the Turks remain in
" peace, while they are quiet: don't ſeek to
" wage war with us; which no one ever dar'd
" to do, and proſper'd. The devil certainly
" inſpires you to ruin your ſelf. Tho you
" have been in ſome conſiderable battels in the
" woods of Natolia, and have gain'd advanta-
" ges upon the Europeans; it was only thro
" the prayers of the prophet, and the bleſſings
" of the Mahometan religion of which you
" make profeſſion: don't be proud at theſe
" advantages, nor attribute 'em to your own
" valor. Believe me, you are but a piſmire:
" don't ſeek to fight againſt the elephants; for

Book V. " they'll cruſh you under their feet. The dove
" which riſes up againſt the eagle deſtroys it
" ſelf. Shall a petty prince, ſuch as you are,
" contend with us? But your rodomontades
" are not extraordinary; for a Turcoman
" never ſpake with judgment. If you don't
" follow our counſels, you will repent it. Theſe
" are the advices we have to give you: do
" you behave your ſelf as you think fit."

This letter was ſeal'd with the imperial ſignet, and deliver'd to Bajazet by envoys who knew how to carry on the intrigues of princes. When they were come to Bajazet, they preſented him the letter, acquainting him with the reaſons of their coming, and their maſter's pretenſions: but pride had taken too deep root in the breaſt of the Ottoman, for a letter, or the words of an ambaſſador, to have any effect upon him: he gave 'em therefore a very haughty anſwer. " It is a long time, ſaid he,
" ſince we have been deſirous of carrying on
" a war with you. God be thank'd, our de-
" ſire has had its effect, and we have taken
" up a reſolution to march againſt you at the
" head of a formidable army. If you don't
" advance againſt us, we will come to ſeek
" you; and purſue you as far as Tauris and
" Sultania. We ſhall then ſee in whoſe favor
" heaven will declare; who of us will be rais'd
" by victory, and who abas'd by a ſhameful de-
" feat."

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

Timur marches to Sebaſte, and takes that city.

THE envoys at their return from Natolia, gave an account to the emperor's officers of Bajazet's haughty anſwer. Whereupon Timur, being incens'd againſt this Turcoman, caus'd his enſigns to be diſplay'd, in order to make war on him; and he immediately march'd towards Natolia. Being arriv'd at Avenic, he met the Emir Allahdad, who had been ſent to Chiraz to bring from thence the Mirza Pir Mehemed bound like a criminal; which he accordingly did. Timur order'd that the Mirza ſhou'd be interrogated by the council of war; and that after his proſecution, he ſhou'd be puniſh'd according to his deſerts. Accordingly, after judgment was given, he receiv'd the blows of the baſtinado, order'd by the laws call'd Yaſa; after which his chains were taken off, and himſelf ſet at liberty. In purſuance of the ſame laws, the Cheik Zade Ferid, and Mobarec Coja, who were then in irons, were put to death, for having corrupted the Mirza, and taught him magic.

Then the emperor ſent to Sultania the empreſs Serai Mulc Canum, Canzade, and the wives of the princes his ſons, with the Mirza Oloucbek, and the other young princes of the imperial houſhold, under the care of the Mirza Omar, and ſome Emirs. After that he caus'd the great imperial ſtandard to be diſplay'd, and march'd at the head of his army. At his arrival at Erzeron, he was ſaluted by Taharten prince of Arzendgian. Two days after he decamp'd, and

Book V. march'd beyond Arzendgian, to enter the frontiers of the country of Roum, or Natolia, which was then ſubject to the Ottomans.

Sept. 1. 1400. The firſt of Muharrem 803, Timur enter'd the country of the Ottomans, and march'd againſt Sebaſte. When he was come before the city, he encamp'd upon an eminence, to view its condition and ſituation; and the troops encamp'd round about it. He ſaw the place full of men lifting up their heads to heaven, and ſinging and rejoicing with muſical inſtruments in their hands: the walls, whoſe marble foundations were at the bottom of a ditch full of water, lifted up their battlements to the very clouds: and the ſoldiers in gariſon, arm'd with cuiraſſes, rais'd a great cry towards heaven. Then advice was brought that the vanguard of Bajazet's army, commanded by his ſon Kerichtchi, and Temourtach, one of the greateſt Emirs of the Ottoman empire, who had been ſent to Sebaſte, having learnt the march of Timur's army towards that city, were fled, and return'd into the very heart of Natolia. The Emirs Solyman Chah, Gehan Chah, and others, were order'd to purſue 'em with expedition; which they did, and came up with 'em beyond Cæſarea in Cappadocia, where they briſkly attack'd 'em, and cut 'em in pieces: after which, they made inroads, pillaging all the places near Cappadocia. They then return'd to the imperial camp before Sebaſte, laden with the ſpoils of the Ottomans.

The city of Sebaſte had walls of an extraordinary ſtrength, being built of free-ſtone from the battlements to the very foundations; and each ſtone was three cubits long, and one thick. The wall was twenty cubits in height; ten in depth at the foot, and ſix at the top. There were ſeven gates, and thoſe which open'd were

of

of iron. It was built by Aladin Keicobade [1], and ſurrounded on the eaſt, north and ſouth ſides, with a great ditch full of water; ſo that it was impoſſible to ſap the walls on thoſe ſides, for they had no ſooner ſapp'd a cubit than the water enter'd: but it was not difficult to ſap on the weſt ſide. The place was commanded by Muſtafa [2] with four thouſand horſe, who prepar'd to make a vigorous defence, being furniſh'd with all ſorts of arms and machines for war. The beſiegers rais'd a plat form higher than the town, over-againſt the gate of Irac, upon which they planted their machines to ſhoot ſtones. There were Arades [3], Mangenies [4], and Baſelics [5]: they likewiſe prepar'd battering-rams to beat down the walls. On the weſt-ſide the ſappers kept continually at work; while arrows were diſcharg'd from both ſides, which did a great deal of damage. Chap. 15.

After the ſiege had continu'd eighteen days, the violence of the battering-rams, and the great ſtones which were ſhot, began to ſhake the walls, and make breaches. On the other hand, the ſappers had work'd with ſo much diligence, that the towers were propt only by ſtakes, which Timur order'd ſhou'd be ſet on fire; and ſo the towers fell. This ſtruck terror into the hearts of the beſieg'd, who perceiving that the troops wou'd ſoon enter the city, and take it by aſſault, chas'd Muſtafa the governor out of it;

---

[1] A Seljukide king.

[2] The Arabian * hiſtory of M. Vatier ſays, that Solyman, ſon of the emperor of Bagdad, was governor of Sebaſte; which is a miſtake. * Arabchah.

[3] Machines to caſt fire.

[4] Machines to hurl ſtones.

[5] A kind of battering rams.

Book V. and the Cherifs, Cadis, and doctors, full of hopes, came to caſt themſelves at the emperor's feet, begging quarter and pardon for them and the gariſon. Their prayers, mingled with the cries of the women and children, ſoften'd Timur's heart: he granted quarter to all the Muſſulmans of the city, on paying the right of amneſty; but order'd that all the Armenians, and other Chriſtians, ſhou'd be made ſlaves. And as the major part of the cavalry, which had ſo ſtubbornly defended the place for Bajazet, were Armenians, he gave orders that four thouſand horſe ſhou'd be divided among the Tomans of the army, and flung into pits, and then cover'd with earth, to ſerve as an example to thoſe who ſhou'd follow their ſteps. He afterwards caus'd the walls of Sebaſte to be raz'd.

During the ſiege, advice was brought that Sultan Ahmed Gelair had fled from Bagdad, with Cara Youſef prince of the Turcomans, into Natolia. This oblig'd Timur to order ſome ſquadrons of horſe to go in purſuit of 'em; which they accordingly did, and overtook their baggage, which they pillag'd, and brought away captive the Sultaneſs Dilchade, eldeſt ſiſter of Cara Youſef, with his wifes and daughter. But he ſav'd himſelf from our hands; and being come ſafe before Bajazet, our troops return'd to the imperial camp.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Timur marches to Abuleſtan.

WHILE Timur was employ'd in the ſiege of Sebaſte, ſome robbers of Abuleſtan, which is the country of Zulcaderia, were ſo daring as to come and ſteal away the horſes of our ſoldiers, who were then buſy'd in the ſiege. For which reaſon, after the taking of the city, Timur march'd to Abuleſtan, to revenge himſelf on theſe robbers. He then ſent the lord Taharten to Arzendgian to guard his frontiers; and the Mirza Charoc ſet out in quality of chief of the ſcouts, accompany'd by the Emir Solyman Chah, and a ſelect troop, which compos'd the vanguard. The name of the ſoldiers were regiſter'd; and they had orders not to abandon the Mirza one moment. They ſoon arriv'd at Abuleſtan, from whence, on advice of their march, a great number of Turcomans fled into the mountains and deſarts. The Mirza purſu'd 'em ſo briskly, that he overtook 'em: theſe miſerable people ſeeing themſelves cloſely preſs'd, endeavor'd to ſave their lives by fighting; but after a weak defence, they were all routed and ſlain, as a puniſhment for their raſh enterprizes. The Emirs return'd to the imperial camp laden with ſpoils, and a great many horſes, mules, oxen and ſheep. Afterwards Timur ſent a courier to Malatia, to ſummon the inhabitants to ſubmit to him. Muſtafa's ſon, who was governor of it, blinded with ignorance, which is an inſeparable quality of the Turcomans, and eſpecially of thoſe of Natolia, impriſon'd the meſ-

Book V. ſenger. Timur on this was incens'd againſt the governor, and march'd towards that place. On the firſt advice theſe cowards had of the march of the imperial ſtandard, Muſtafa's ſon fled out of the place with all his party. Timur at his arrival at Malatia, carry'd it the ſame day. The Georgians and Armenians were made ſlaves; but quarter was given to the Muſſulmans, after they had paid the tribute for an amneſty, which mony was diſtributed among the ſoldiers. Timur order'd the Emir Gehan Chah to go, with other Emirs, to make inroads in the country of Malatia: he harangu'd 'em, and with the moſt charming eloquence ſet before 'em the excellence of good warriors above other men; he told 'em that they ought utterly to exterminate the enemy, to take from 'em all means of renewing the war; and he ſpoke with a great deal of force of the puniſhment they ought to execute upon thoſe who after pardon us'd hoſtilitys. After this diſcourſe, he choſe out of each Toman ſome good ſoldiers, whom he gave to the Emirs to ſtrengthen their body of the army; and then he diſmiſs'd 'em. According to theſe orders they departed, and ravag'd the country on all ſides, not ſtopping in one place: they gave no quarter to any one, and left not one habitation unpillag'd; ſo that from Malatia to the caſtle of Kakhta [e], they made themſelves maſters of a great many places, ſome by fair means, and others by force; and after having conſtrain'd the natural princes of the country to ſubmit to Timur, they return'd with a great quantity of riches, and join'd the imperial camp at Malatia, the government of which Timur gave to Cara Oſman

[e] A caſtle in the country of Roum, frontier of Syria.

...an a Turcoman. Thus the frontiers of the two kingdoms of Natolia and Syria were in a ſhort time brought in ſubjection to Timur, whoſe fame ſpread it ſelf thro all parts of the world: ſo that there was not one prince who was not ſtruck with terror at the rumor of his conqueſts. Chap. 17.

CHAP. XVII.

The reaſons of Timur's carrying his arms into Syria and Meſopotamia.

MAHOMET has told us, that when God reſolves to deſtroy any one, he deprives him of common ſenſe; conceals from him the methods he ſhou'd purſue, to protect himſelf from his deſtiny; and permits him to commit imprudent actions, which become the cauſes of his deſtruction, that the will of God may not fail of an accompliſhment. The truth of theſe words was apparent in the fate of the countrys of Syria; for the governors of the citys of this kingdom, being blinded with exceſſive pride, turn'd from the ways of peace and juſtice, and committed actions as infamous as extraordinary, violating the rights of nations, and trampling upon the laws. Thus in the year 795, Timur, having made himſelf maſter of Bagdad, and conquer'd all Irac Arabi, ſent to the Sultan Barcoc in Egypt an ambaſſador, a doctor of Savé, whoſe learning, birth and genius diſtinguiſh'd him from the chief perſons of the empire, as as we have ſaid before *. This Cheik being arriv'd at Rahhaba, An. Dom. 1393.

* Book III. Chap. 32.

Book V. haba [7], he was ſeiz'd according to cuſtom, that advice might be given the Sultan of Cairo of the arrival of an ambaſſador on his frontiers. Barcoc, being excited by the evil counſels of the Sultan Ahmed Gelair king of Bagdad, order'd this ambaſſador to be put to death, not reflecting on the conſequences of ſo enormous a crime, nor the infamy of the action, ſince to inſult an ambaſſador is to violate the right of nations. What is moſt ſurprizing is, that ſuch a king as the Sultan of Egypt ſhou'd be ignorant how Sultan Mehemed, king of Carezem, in the ſame manner put to death the ambaſſador and merchants of the great emperor Genghiz Can; and what was the tragical end of ſo black and barbarous an action*; which wou'd be too long to recite here. However the deſtiny, which caus'd the ruin of Syria, blinded the mind of Barcoc, and procur'd the cauſes of his deſtruction.

* See hiſtory of Genghiz Can, Book II. Ch. 5.

Moreover, after the conqueſt of Azerbijana, and Irac Arabi, Timur being gone to make war in Capchac, and in Ruſſia, Muſcovy, Circaſſia, and the northern countrys, there was a battel between Atilmich Coutchin, governor of Avenic for Timur, and Cara Youſef, prince of the Turcomans, in which Atilmich was made priſoner. Cara Youſef loaded him with chains, and ſent him to Sultan Barcoc at Cairo, who without any reflection upon the matter, continu'd his hoſtilitys againſt Timur, and confin'd Atilmich in a very cloſe priſon.

Timur being on the frontiers of Malatia, ſent an ambaſſador with the following letter to Farrudge ſon of Barcoc, who ſucceeded his father in the throne of Egypt and Syria.

---

[7] A town upon the Euphrates, otherwiſe call'd Rahabat Malec Ben Taouc, frontier of Syria, long. 75. lat. 34.

"The

" The Sultan your father hath committed ſe- Chap. 17.
" veral criminal and odious actions againſt us;
" and among the reſt, the murder of our ambaſ-
" ſadors without the leaſt ſhadow of a cauſe,
" and the impriſonment of Atilmich, one of
" our officers, whom he hath ſeiz'd inſtead of
" ſending him back to us. As your father hath
" ſurrender'd up his life to God, which he had
" only upon truſt, the puniſhment of his crimes
" muſt be brought before the tribunal of the ge-
" neral judgment: but as for your part, it is
" neceſſary you ſhou'd have regard to the pre-
" ſervation of your ſelf and your ſubjects; and
" to that effect you ought forthwith to ſend back
" Atilmich, leſt, the effects of your wrath and
" vengeance, falling upon the people of Syria,
" and even of Egypt, our furious ſoldiers make
" a cruel ſlaughter of their perſons, and burn
" and pillage their effects. If you are ſo ſtub-
" born as to reject our counſel, you'll be the
" cauſe of the effuſion of the muſſulman blood,
" and the total loſs of your kingdom."

The ambaſſadors, at their arrival at Aleppo, were ſeiz'd according to cuſtom, that advice might be given the Sultan of their arrival. Farrudge, to imitate his father's example, ſent meſſengers to bind the ambaſſadors, and put 'em in priſon.

It is not to be wonder'd at, that a plebeian ſhou'd commit actions of cowardice: what then may we expect from a Circaſſian ſlave? Barcoc had been ſold ſeveral times; and when his power encreas'd thro the kindneſs of his governor, who was alſo a Mameluc ſlave, he traiterouſly ſlew his benefactor, and uſurp'd the kingdom: and as there had never been any king of his race, ſo he had not in him the leaſt appearance of royalty. Thus was Barcoc; and

his

Book V. his ſon Farrudge was the crooked branch of an evil ſtock. He mounted his father's throne, tho but a child, no one having taught him how he ought to live: he had neither ſuffer'd heat nor cold; and was ignorant of policy and the art of war. In ſhort, the father was of an ill character, and the ſon without merit.

Timur being inform'd of Farrudge's raſhneſs, was tranſported with anger; and the fire of vengeance, which had lain lurking in his heart ſince the crimes committed by Barcoc, did ſo far exaſperate him, that he immediately reſolv'd to enter the Sultan's kingdom, and deſtroy every thing with fire and ſword: which reſolution he the more eaſily took up, in that Bajazet, with all his pride and menaces, had not dar'd to appear in the field of battel; and this proud Ottoman quietly ſaw our army beſiege, take, ruin and pillage Sobaſte and Malatia, and all the citys and towns of his kingdoms, as far as Kakhta, without making the leaſt defence. But theſe are all the hidden decrees of providence.

CHAP. XVIII.

Timur marches into the kingdoms of Syria and Egypt.

THE heroes who are deſtin'd to execute great affairs, are alſo endu'd with a diſcerning ſpirit, which makes thoſe enterprizes appear eaſy to 'em; and with reſolution to carry 'em on with all the ſtrength and power they are poſſeſs'd of: ſo that they eaſily compaſs thoſe deſigns, which every one elſe accounts impoſſible. In effect, the Sultan of Egypt and Syria

Syria having added to his father's crimes, by the arreſting and impriſoning of Timur's ambaſſadors; on advice of it, the wrath of our emperor was kindled, ſo that he reſolv'd forthwith to chaſtiſe him for his fault: and tho the execution of this project appear'd impoſſible to the eyes of all politicians, or at leaſt exceeding dangerous and difficult; yet the boundleſs zeal of Timur, made this great and perillous enterprize appear eaſy to him. The Emirs and principal lords of the ſtate on their knees remonſtrated to him, that it being but a ſhort time ſince the troops return'd from the long campain in India, they had not repos'd themſelves, before they march'd to the Georgian war, where they had been extremely fatigu'd, after re-iterated inroads in the mountains and rocks, and the conqueſt of the towns of that country; that after this they had march'd to Natolia, and conquer'd Sebaſte, and all the citys and towns between that and Aleppo, where they had perform'd actions of the greateſt valor; that therefore at preſent the expedition into Syria and Egypt appear'd very toilſom and difficult, as well in that the country was full of towns and fortreſſes, with lofty walls and impregnable caſtles, as in that the army of the Syrians was very numerous, good warriors, and provided with arms and every thing neceſſary to a vigorous reſiſtance: for which reaſons they beſought his majeſty to have the goodneſs to disband the troops, and ſend back the ſoldiers into their own countrys, to repoſe themſelves for ſome time; and that afterwards freſh preparations might be made ſuitable to the greatneſs of this undertaking. Timur anſwer'd them, that victory was a gift which God liberally beſtows on the princes whom he loves; that the great number of ſoldiers and arms had nothing to do with victory, which he had

Chap. 18.

Book V. had often prov'd: he put 'em in mind of the conqueſts he had gain'd with 'em, and the difficult enterprizes they had gone thro, tho they had believ'd 'em impoſſible; that it was requiſite they ſhou'd have the greateſt ambition; and then he wou'd anſwer for the ſucceſs, provided they truſted in God. The Emirs perceiving the emperor firm in his reſolution, loaded him with praiſes and applauſe; reſolving to follow him, and thinking only of the expedition into Syria, and the means of making themſelves maſters of that kingdom.

Then Timur put his army in order; and cauſing the braſs-drum to be beat, which is a ſign of his departure, all the ſoldiers began their march, every one in his proper poſt; and they took their road towards Syria.

CHAP. XIX.

The taking of the caſtles of Beheſna and Antapa.

TIMUR order'd the Mirza Charoc to depart with ſeveral great Emirs, as chief of the ſcouts. Being arriv'd at Beheſna [a], they encamp'd there, where they were ſoon join'd by Timur with the whole army, who encamp'd on an eminence near the caſtle, to view the ſituation of the place, which is in a defile where ſeveral torrents flow: its walls were high and ſtrong, being built on the ridge of a ſteep mountain. The troops ſoon made themſelves maſters of the lower town, which they entirely ravag'd. The

[a] A fortreſs of Syria, between Aleppo and Malatia:

governor

governor of the caſtle for the Syrians was nam'd Mocbel, who relying upon the ſtrength of the caſtle, put himſelf in a poſture of defence. While Timur was examining the condition of the place, the beſieg'd diſcharg'd a great ſtone from their machines againſt the emperor's perſon, which fell upon the ground near his tent, and roll'd into the very tent. This ſtir'd up Timur's wrath, who immediately order'd the ſiege to be form'd, and ſhar'd the walls among the Tomans of the army, round which they erected twenty machines, and one of 'em upon the very ſpot where the ſtone fell. The firſt ſtone caſt from this machine ſtruck that of the beſieg'd, and broke it to pieces, which was reckon'd as a good omen. Then the Mirza Rouſtem arriv'd from Chiraz with the Perſian army, and join'd the imperial camp. The ſiege was continu'd, and the ſappers follow'd their work cloſe, while the Emirs and other brave men attack'd the place on all ſides, and ſoon made breaches in ſeveral parts of the walls, propping the foundations with ſtakes. Mocbel ſeeing himſelf reduc'd thus low, was ſeiz'd with fear, and reſolv'd to ſurrender: he ſent meſſengers ſeveral times to the emperor, to acquaint him with his weakneſs and want of power; and alledg'd as an excuſe for not coming before him, the dread he had of his imperial majeſty; beſeeching Timur to grant him quarter, which cou'd not in the leaſt prejudice him or his officers. Timur made anſwer, that he wou'd grant him his liberty, but not till after the taking of the place; becauſe as this caſtle was eſteem'd impregnable, if the army ſhou'd raiſe the ſiege, thoſe who had but little inſight into things, would imagine that our ſoldiers were not able to take it by force; and that a conqueror ſhould not be thought to have ſpar'd his enemy. Chap. 19.

Book V.

Octob. 7. 1400.

The 7th of Sefer 803, they were order'd to ſet fire to the breaches; and ſo the towers began to fall: which the beſieg'd ſeeing, they were ſtruck with fear, and Mocbel loſt all hopes. He ſent the Cadi, the Imams and the Cherifs, with all the pearls and curioſitys he had, as a preſent to Timur. They addreſs'd themſelves to the Mirza Charoc, whom they beſought to be their advocate and protector. Theſe doctors let the emperor know that Mocbel was the meaneſt of his majeſty's ſervants, that he ſincerely repented of his fault, humbly demanded pardon for it, and hop'd that the emperor wou'd not refuſe him the favor of ſparing his life. Timur, at Charoc's interceſſion, pardon'd not only Mocbel, but even all the gariſon; and the envoys contentedly return'd back, praiſing the emperor, and making vows for the prince Charoc. As ſoon as this good news was brought to the city, new gold and ſilver mony was coin'd, and friday prayers read in the name of the invincible Timur.

After this, the army decamp'd and march'd towards Antapa [1]. The walls of this city were exceeding ſtrong, being built of hewn ſtone, and ſurrounded with a ditch thirty cubits deep, and near ſeventy broad, with a draw-bridge: the counterſcarp, which is of ſtone, has alſo a cover'd way, broad enough for a man to paſs on horſeback; which poſt was aſſign'd the archers. The Tartar army on their arrival at this place,

[1] A town of Syria near Aleppo.

A Note taken from Arab Chah.

Timur left Calat-Erroum without attacking it; which he dar'd not do, becauſe this place was very ſtrong; and Naſeri Mehemed, ſon of Mouſſa, ſon of Sakari, made ſome advantageous ſallys upon Timur's army, and very much moleſted him.

found

found the principal persons gone out [1], and only a few poor citizens left, who had shut the gates upon them; but the city was full of goods and ammunition. When Timur came before the place, the gates were open'd, and the keys brought out to him: he fix'd a governor over it, and join'd it to his dominions. Chap. 20.

CHAP. XX.

The siege and taking of the city of Aleppo [2].

MAHOMET tells us, that the sole terror of his name made his conquests extend a month's journy: and we may with reason say, that Timur had the honor to resemble him in that, since the terror of his name was so great, that upon advice of the approach of his troops [4], kings and princes were so terrify'd, that they abandon'd their dominions; fear blinded their eyes, and darken'd their understanding, so that all their actions tended to their destruction.

While the army was in the quarters of Behesna and Antapa, Temourtach, [5] governor of Aleppo for the Sultan of Egypt, dispatch'd a cou-

[1] The Arabian of M. Vatier says, that the governor of Antapa, nam'd Asquemar, sally'd out to defend himself; and being abandon'd and wounded, he fled to Aleppo, but was not pursu'd thither.

[2] A city of Syria in the province of Cannaserin; it is the antient Beræa; long. 72. 25. lat. 35. 35.

[4] The Arabian says, that according to the computation of Carezem, Timur's comptroller, his army consisted of eight hundred thousand men.

[5] Arab Chah says, that Temourtach had agreed with Timur to betray the Sultan of Egypt.

Book V. rier to Grand-Cairo to give advice of it to his maſter. Whereupon the Sultan ſent orders to the troops of all the towns and countrys of Syria, to march towards Aleppo, with all the arms and ammunition neceſſary for a vigorous defence. According to theſe orders, Chadoun [6], chief of the Emirs of Damaſcus, march'd to Aleppo at the head of a great army. The governors and generals of Hemſe [7], Hama, Antioch, Tripoli, Napolos-Samaria, Balbec, Canaan, Gaza, Ramla or Rama, Jeruſalem, Kerek, Calat-Erroum, and all the other countrys and lordſhips of the kingdoms of Syria, came to the ſame place, well equip'd and arm'd cap-a-pie: and in a ſhort time there were got together a very numerous army. [8] Temourtach, governor of Aleppo, who was eſteem'd one of the moſt conſiderable lords, aſſembled the chiefs of all thoſe troops, and made the following ſpeech to 'em, in order to know their opinions of the matter: "We ought not, "ſirs, ſaid he, to regard this affair which is "coming upon us as a ſlight thing; and it is "requiſite we ſhou'd reflect ſeriouſly upon it be"fore it happens. The prince who is this day "come againſt us, is exceeding powerful; he "and his officers have perform'd ſuch extraor"dinary actions, as are no where recorded in "antiquity. Whereſoever he hath march'd, he "hath always conquer'd the towns and fortreſ"ſes: and who ever attempted to reſiſt him, "always repented in the end, and ſuffer'd the

[6] M. Vatier calls him my lord Sudon.

[7] Principal citys of Syria.

[8] The Arabian tells us, that Timur ſent an ambaſſador or herald to Aleppo, to ſummon the inhabitants to ſurrender; and that this herald was immediately put to death by Chadoun's order.

" moſt rigorous chaſtiſement. Conſider, ſirs, Chap. 20.
" how in a very ſhort time he has reduc'd many
" vaſt and flouriſhing empires; as thoſe of Ca-
" rezem, Turkeſtan, Coraſſana, Zabuleſtan, and
" India, as far as the great river of Ganges; the
" kingdoms of Tabareſtan, the two Iracs, Per-
" ſia, Couheſtan, Georgia, Azerbijana, and
" Diarbekir, with all their dependences, which
" he has wreſted out of the hands of the moſt
" powerful Sultans, and the moſt illuſtrious em-
" perors of the univerſe. He has eſtabliſh'd
" himſelf in thoſe places with ſuch an abſolute
" authority, that one of his lieutenants, with a
" few officers, maintains a whole city under
" his obedience; ſo that in the vaſt extent of
" the countrys of Iran and Touran, there is not
" a ſoul who dares act the leaſt thing againſt his
" orders. It ſeems as if the great riſe of this
" prince was owing to the peculiar protection
" of Heaven; if ſo, we ought not to tempt God.
" My advice therefore, in this conjuncture, is to
" treat with him by the ways of ſubmiſſion and
" obedience; to coin our mony, and to ſay the
" public prayers in his name; and to make uſe
" of the Cherifs, Imams, and doctors, as our
" mediators with him; ſeeing there are none but
" men vers'd in the law, and pious perſons, who
" have any acceſs to him, or whom he in the
" leaſt regards. At the ſame time we'll ſend
" him preſents and jewels, the moſt ſuta-
" ble to his grandure; that we may endeavour
" to keep him from coming near us, and by that
" means preſerve the repoſe of the city, and per-
" haps of the whole kingdom. He is a prince
" favor'd by fortune, powerful, active, glorious
" and ambitious: his wrath burns and conſumes
" a thouſand times fiercer than fire; and if
" it is kindled, the ſea it ſelf won't be able to

Book V. " quench it. Therefore now conclude upon
" ſomething: chuſe either peace or war, glory
" or miſery."

Temourtach having finiſh'd his ſpeech, those who had moſt experience applauded his ſentiments, and agreed that it was the beſt method they cou'd take: but the majority, and eſpecially Chadoun governor of Damaſcus, were of a contrary opinion. Pride and preſumption were rooted in their hearts, and ignorance had ſo ſtupify'd 'em, that they gave no heed to what Temourtach had ſaid; and were ſo far from applauding him, that they made uſe of ſome haughty expreſſions, and tax'd him with cowardice, ſaying, that he who is afraid, is already fruſtrated of his deſires. " What compariſon,
" ſay they, is there between this kingdom and all
" thoſe you have mention'd? Their towns were
" built only of mud and brick; but ours are
" all of ſolid ſtone, cut out of the almoſt im-
" pentrenable rock; they are fill'd with good
" gariſons, and furniſh'd with plenty of ammu-
" nitions of war and victuals; ſo that it wou'd
" require a whole year's ſiege to force a ſingle one.
" Why therefore has fear got poſſeſſion of your
" hearts? Is it the great number of their cavalry
" and infantry, or of their arms and equipages,
" which terrifys you? Only view ours, and
" you'll ſee the difference: our bows are of Da-
" maſcus, our ſwords of Egypt, our lances of
" Arabia, and our bucklers of Alepo. In the
" regiſters of this kingdom are ſixty thouſand
" villages; out of each of which taking but a
" few brave men, we ſhall complete an army,
" which our vaſt plains won't be able to hold.
" The houſes and walls of theſe Tartars are on-
" ly of cords and canvas; while we live in good
" fortreſſes, which are of hewn ſtone from the bat-
" tlements

" tlements to the very foundations." Thus fate, having reſolv'd upon the deſtruction of theſe unfortunate Syrians, inſpir'd ſentiments of pride into 'em: and theſe obſtinate people perſiſted in their error, notwithſtanding what Temourtach, and other men of ſenſe, cou'd ſay to divert 'em from the evil ſteps they had reſolv'd to take; who repreſented to 'em that the way of peace was always the moſt ſecure, conſidering the inconſtancy of fortune, and the ſmall hopes they cou'd reaſonably expect of gaining the advantage over their powerful enemy. The others on the contrary ſaid, they need only have courage and reſolution; which if they had not, all ſorts of diſorders and loſſes wou'd happen among 'em. After a great ſtruggle on both ſides, the latter carry'd it by a plurality of voices; and it was reſolv'd and concluded, that no one ſhou'd go out of the city, but that they ſhou'd fortify it with intrenchments, and with arrows and ſtones hinder the enemy from approaching the walls. Chap. 20.

Timur departed from Antapa with joy, and made two days journy of ſix or ſeven leagues each: he afterwards gave orders that they ſhou'd march but half a league a day, and at each encampment dig a trench round the army, and make a kind of rampart with their bucklers; ſo that in a whole week they march'd but one day's journy, and that with extraordinary precautions. The Syrians, ignorant of the art of war, attributed the ſlowneſs of their march to fear, believing the Tartars miſtruſted their own ſtrength: at which they became haughty and inſolent; for abandoning their firſt reſolution of not going out of the city, and which indeed was the leaſt dangerous, they rang'd themſelves in order of battel, and pitch'd their tents in the open plains.

The

Book V. Nov. 8. 1400.

The 9th of Rabiulevel 803, which anſwers to the year of the Serpent, the army of Timur arriv'd in the neighborhood of Aleppo; and the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, with ſome great officers, met the enemy's ſcouts: he fell upon 'em, tho ſuperior to him in number, and at the firſt onſet unhors'd a cavalier, whom he collar'd, and carry'd priſoner out of the field of battel. His officers alſo perform'd ſome glorious actions, and took two priſoners: the reſt of the Syrian army fled into the city.

The ſame day the Mirza Aboubecre advanc'd with ſixty men; and a great number of the enemy made a ſally to repulſe him, After a ſharp skirmiſh, the two partys return'd to their ſeveral camps. The next day ſome brave Tartars advanc'd to skirmiſh; and having ſhewn themſelves to the enemy, not one dar'd to attack 'em. The third day at ſun-riſing, Timur order'd the whole army to take horſe, and with enſigns diſplay'd, and at the ſound of drums and kettledrums, to march towards the enemy's camp. Every one having on a coat of mail, a cuiraſs, and a helmet, they advanc'd in order of battel. The right wing was commanded by the Mirzas Miran Chah and Charoc, accompany'd by ſeveral great Emirs, as Solyman Chah and others: and the vanguard of this wing was led by the Mirza Aboubecre. The Sultan Mahmoud, whoſe lieutenant was the Emir Gehan Chah, had the command of the left wing; and his vanguard was brought up by the Sultan Huſſein. The main body was commanded by Timur himſelf, who had before him a rank of bulky elephants, which had been taken in India, equip'd and capariſon'd in the moſt magnificent manner. They ſerv'd as a rampart to this body of the army; for the towers on their backs were fill'd with archers and

and flingers of wild-fire : and theſe animals had drawn in their ſnouts like ſerpents. When the army was rang'd in order of battel, a Toman of the beſt horſe of the army was order'd to poſt themſelves on an eminence on the right ſide of the field of battel, and to keep their ground there, when the Syrians ſhou'd be put to the rout, and fly. Chap. 20.

The Syrian army was likewiſe rang'd in order : it was compos'd of a right and left wing, and a main-body ; and advanc'd with its enſigns diſplay'd. The kettle-drums and trumpets were the ſignal to begin, and both partys made the great cry of Allah Ecber *. The battel began by the skirmiſhers, who ruſh'd furiouſly out of their ſquadrons into the midſt of the enemys, and who after ſome brave action, as either the ſlaughter of ſome noted perſon, or the taking a priſoner from the midſt of the oppoſite batallion, return'd glorious to their poſt. Our right wing immediately fell upon the enemy's left with ſo much vigor, that it was routed, thro the valor of the Mirza Aboubecre, who enter'd the field of battel like a lion, and forc'd many of the enemy to fling away their arms, and abandon their enſigns ; while others were ſlain, and the ground ſoon cover'd with helmets, head-pieces, and ſabres, mix'd promiſcuouſly among the dead carcaſſes. Our left wing likewiſe defeated the Syrians right, and entirely diſpers'd 'em, ſome crying out for quarter, and others ſaving themſelves by flight. Our main-body did not in the leaſt yield to the other ; and the elephants enter'd into the midſt, and with their trunks toſs'd ſome into the air, and trampled others under their feet, no one being able to ſtop them.

Gindoun and Temourtach having ſeen the ſtrange manner of our ſoldiers fighting, quitted their

* God is the greateſt.

their former fierceneſs: they trembled at the ſight of the dreadful ſlaughter which was made in ſo ſhort a time; and ſeeing no other remedy, they fled, and enter'd the city by the gate of Mancouſa. The ſoldiers, perceiving their generals meaſures, likewiſe fled and diſperſ'd themſelves: the major part took the road of Damaſcus, and were purſu'd by our men, who slew a great number, taking their arms and horſes from 'em; ſo that out of this prodigious number of Syrians there eſcap'd but one horſeman, who fled to Damaſcus to carry the news of the defeat.

After the rout of this army, part of 'em enter'd the city. The diſorder was ſo great in the chief ſtreet of Aleppo, and the gates ſo crouded, that one cou'd hardly paſs. Here was the greateſt ſlaughter ever mention'd; for to avoid the fury of the ſword, they flung themſelves upon one another into the ditches, which were ſoon fill'd with men and horſes. On the other hand, our men with a ſingle pike often run three or four of the enemy thro at a time, in the throng at the gate; ſo that the dead bodys were pil'd upon one another to the very plinth of the walls; and at length a paſſage was made over the ditch upon thoſe bodys, level with the draw-bridge. There one might ſee the horſes and their riders mix'd promiſcuouſly together, and cover'd with blood and dirt; ſome pierc'd with arrows, and others with their brains daſh'd out; one with a coat of mail, his head bending beneath the blow of a war-club; another falling without his head, with his ſword faſt claſp'd in hand.

During this horrible ſlaughter, a body of the army was ſent to pillage the Syrians camp, wherein they found the governor's pavilion, with his tents, furniture, arms, and ſeveral beautiful horſes

horſes richly harneſs'd. Each of the ſoldiers took his ſhare of the ſpoils, of which there were great abundance. At length all the army march'd with ſo much vigor to the general aſſault, that they enter'd the city the ſame day, which was the 11th of Rabiulevel 803. Timur permitted 'em to pillage the city of Aleppo; and they ſpar'd neither the markets nor any of the houſes: they carry'd away the women and children, the horſes, mules, and all the cattel; beſides a prodigious quantity of gold and ſilver, arms, curious furniture, precious ſtones, pearls, veſſels of gold, the women's rich habits and ornaments. All theſe were taken by the ſoldiers, who render'd no account of 'em to any one. Chap. 21. Nov. 11. 1400.

CHAP. XXI.

The caſtle of Aleppo attack'd and taken.

CHADOUN and Temourtach, not imagining themſelves ſecure in the city, enter'd the caſtle; which was a fortreſs upon the ridge of a high ſteep rock [1], ſurrounded with a ditch thirty cubits wide, and ſo deep that there is a ſufficient quantity of water to carry a boat [2]. From the ſurface of the water to the bottom of the walls of the caſtle, which is the ſhelving of the mountain, is about

[1] The caſtle of Aleppo is not built on a rock, but on a mountain of earth cover'd with free-ſtone.

[2] The author ſeems not to have ſeen the ditch any more than the caſtle; for if the ditch was full of water, a veſſel might ſail in it.

Book V. a hundred cubits; and it is ſo ſmooth and ſteep, that 'tis impoſſible to aſcend it on foot, becauſe this ſhelving is cover'd with free-ſtone and flat poliſh'd bricks. The ſtrength of this place render'd theſe two governors inſolent; they undertook to make a vigorous defence, reſolving to die rather than ſurrender: they made great crys in token of their reſolution, and ran upon the walls and towers, to give orders to the gariſon. They caus'd the great and little kettle-drums to be beat, and in good earneſt began to inſult the beſiegers: they caſt a great quantity of wild-fire, and pots fill'd with ſulphur, which in their effects reſembled a thunderbolt; as likewſe ſtones and arrows: by which they let us know that they were in a condition to defend themſelves.

Timur having enter'd the city as a conqueror, encamp'd over-againſt the caſtle, ordering his troops to range themſelves round about the ditch; for the out-parts conſiſted only of a ſingle key unguarded: then there were nothing to be ſeen but ſhowers of arrows, which the beſiegers inceſſantly diſcharg'd with ſo much vigor, that none of the beſieg'd dar'd to get upon the walls. In the mean while the ſappers went down into the ditch, and favor'd by the archers, croſs'd the water upon floats; and being come to the other ſide, they began to work upon the bottom of the mountain, and to ſtrake the ſtones of the walls: but the beſieg'd having perceiv'd their deſign, five of their braveſt men went out by the great gate, and being reſolv'd either to loſe their lives or ſucceed in their deſign, they ty'd a cord to their waſte, the end of which others held from the top of the walls, that they might deſcend and get up again, notwithſtanding the ſteepneſs of the ſhelving, without fear of

of falling. Theſe five men accordingly went down, and ran ſword in hand upon the ſappers; but the Tartars, who had orders to back the ſappers, ſally'd out of their tents, and ſlew 'em with their arrows. The beſieg'd on this were afraid, and drew up again the five dead bodys with the cords. From that time no one dar'd ſo much as look thro the loop-holes of the walls, ſo far were they from making ſallys. Then Timur, whoſe advantages were conſider'd rather as the ſcourge of God, than as an effect of human power, ſent by an ambaſſador the following letter to the beſieg'd, who now began to conclude that obſtinately reſiſting him wou'd in the end produce repentance: "The Almighty having reduc'd under my command the greateſt part of the kingdoms of Aſia, my armys can't be ſtop'd either by walls or fortreſſes: the great number of ſoldiers or arms are not able to oppoſe the juſt effects of my wrath, nor ward off the deadly blows of my vengeance. I believe the beſt way you can now take, is to have pity on your own lives; otherwiſe you'll be the murderers of your ſelves, your wives and children, and muſt anſwer for the crime of having ſhed their blood." Chap. 21.

The beſieg'd ſeeing no other refuge, were conſtrain'd to give way to force. Chadoun and Temourtach took the keys of the caſtle, treaſurys, and magazines; and being accompany'd by the Cherifs, Cadis, Imams and nobles of the country, open'd the gate, and in an humble manner came to caſt themſelves at Timur's feet. Chadoun, Temourtach, and other chiefs, with a thouſand ſoldiers, were ſhar'd among the Tomans, and put in irons. Soldiers were ſent to the caſtle, who brake down the battlements

of

Book V. of the wall. Timur ſent in embaſſy to Grand-Cairo, to the ſon of Barcoc, Eſſen Bougai Davatdar, whom they had ſeiz'd in the caſtle, with advice that he had laid Chadoun and Temourtach in irons, by way of repriſal for Atilmich; and that he wou'd not ſet 'em at liberty till he ſhou'd come back to him; that he muſt ſend Atilmich immediately, if he was willing to preſerve the lives and liberty of theſe two governors, and of all the other ſlaves he had detain'd. Timur fix'd the place where Eſſen Bougai was to meet him at his return: then he went to the caſtle of Aleppo, to take the diverſion of a very beautiful proſpect, and alſo to view the ſituation of the city and country; and he ſtaid there two days. He order'd the Emir Gehan Chah to guard the gate of the caſtle and the riches within it, which conſiſted of the treaſures which ſeveral kings had amaſs'd there, and an infinite number of jewels and furniture which the citizens had carry'd into it to preſerve 'em from pillage. The whole amounted to immenſe ſums, part of which he diſtributed among the Emirs and ſoldiers. He afterwards left the baggage and cumberſom things belonging to the army, with his treaſure, in the caſtle of Aleppo: and he nam'd eight conſiderable Emirs for governors of this ſtrong place, and as guardians of the treaſures he left there. Then, after fifteen [3] days reſidence at Aleppo, he began his march, to continue his conqueſts in the reſt of Syria.

CHAP.

---

[3] *A note taken out of the hiſtory of Tamerlain by Abmed Chah his enemy.*

During the fifteen days that Timur ſtaid at Aleppo, he order'd the doctors to come before him, to perplex 'em with hard queſtions, and from thence get an opportunity to put 'em to death. He ſaid to Ahmed Ben Arab Chah (author of the Arabian

CHAP. XXII.

The taking of the towns and caſtles of Emeſſa and Hama.

WHEN Timur lay encamp'd without the city of Aleppo, he ſent the Mirzas Pir Mehemed and Aboubecre, with the Emirs Soly-man Chah, Sevindgic and others, as ſcouts, towards Hama[4]. Theſe lords ſoon made themſelves maſters of the lower town; but they cou'd not take the caſtle, becauſe it was exceeding

---

Arabian hiſtory of M. Vatier) There have lately been ſlain ſome of our men, and ſome of yours; which of the two are martyrs? This queſtion, ſaid Arab Chah, was formerly propos'd to Mahomet by an Arabian peaſant; and I'll return the ſame anſwer as he did. Timur demanded what anſwer he gave. The peaſant, anſwer'd Arab Chah, ſaid to Mahomet, Lord, apoſtle of God, ſome fight thro ſhame, others thro valor, others thro a zeal for religion: who is the martyr? He who fights for religion, anſwer'd Mahomet, and for the honor and advantage of the word of God. Very well, ſays Timur, you cou'd not have given a better anſwer: and then he related to 'em all his victorys. I have one foot, ſays he, in the grave; but yet I have employ'd my life to a good purpoſe; for I have conquer'd, &c. Arab Chah then ſaid, In gratitude for the favors you have receiv'd from heaven, pardon theſe men of learning. I never put any one to death, anſwer'd Timur, purpoſely; you are the cauſe of your own deaths: but thro God I grant you quarter. Then every one had liberty of ſpeaking, and endeavor'd to anſwer firſt, as in the college.

When Timur, ſays the Arabian, deſign'd harm to any one, he did it without delay; but when good, he remitted the execution of it to another.

Timur cut off ſeveral heads to erect a trophys.

[4] A town of Syria, of which the geographer Abulfeda was prince; long. 70. 40. lat. 35.

Book V. ſtrong. After the affair of Aleppo was finiſh'd to Timur's ſatisfaction, he went to Hama, and in his way took three or four caſtles. At the arrival of the great imperial ſtandard before Hama, thoſe who were in the caſtle, ſeeing this innumerable multitude of troops from the top of their walls, imagin'd it wou'd be beſt for 'em to go out immediately with what preſents they had, to offer the keys of the place, and ſubmit to Timur. They accordingly did ſo, and addreſſing themſelves to the Mirzas who were come before as ſcouts, they beſought 'em to intercede and obtain quarter for 'em. The Mirzas promis'd 'em this favor, and quarter was granted 'em; but their ſpoils were given to theſe ſcouts. Timur ſtaid twenty days at Hama, for the refreſhment of his troops and horſes; during which time he had apartments built for himſelf, the Mirzas, and principal Emirs of his court, and a magnificent Divan-Cané, where the councils of the ſtate were held: ſo that this place in leſs than two or three weeks became a ſecond city.

In the mean while the Emirs made another attempt, to perſuade the emperor to ſtay at this place, repreſenting, that for two years paſt the troops had been either on the march, or employ'd in a battel; that the enemy had a great number of cavalry, whoſe horſes were freſh and not fatigu'd, and being in their own country had vaſt advantages over us; and that if his majeſty approv'd of it, they wou'd go and repoſe themſelves on the ſea-ſhore at Tripoli in Syria, where they wou'd take up their winter-quarters; ſo that the horſes might have ſome reſpite after their fatigues, and at the beginning of the ſpring they might march with vigor to exterminate the enemy. Timur wou'd not hearken to their

their reaſons, tho they were plauſible; but an- Chap. 22.
ſwer'd, that they ought to make diſpatch, that the enemy might have no time to recover themſelves. Whereupon he order'd 'em to take horſe, and march towards Emeſſa [s]. One of our great Emirs went thither firſt as a ſcout; and had the good nature to adviſe the inhabitants, telling 'em that their reſiſtence wou'd ſerve only to ruin 'em, and it wou'd be pity ſo many ſhou'd be deſtroy'd; that if they wou'd go meet the emperor, and ſubmit to him, he wou'd anſwer for the ſucceſs, and their lives and even their effects ſhou'd be ſpar'd. Theſe words, which on one hand caus'd fear, and on the other hope, in the people of Emeſſa, made an impreſſion upon 'em; ſo that the principal men of the city took up a reſolution to obey Timur: they came out loaded with preſents, and ran to meet him; they caſt themſelves at his feet, kiſſing the earth, which they cover'd with gold and precious ſtones: they preſented him with the keys of the town; upon which Timur had the goodneſs to prohibit any one's inſulting 'em either in their perſons or goods. He gave 'em for their governor Ali Ecber, whom he order'd to have a ſingular regard to 'em, and to be their protector on all occaſions.

[s] Emeſſa or Hems, a town of Syria near Hama.

CHAP. XXIII.

Conqueſt of the town of Balbec.

TIMUR decamp'd from Emeſa; and continuing his road towards Balbec, he march'd a day's journy, and encamp'd near a ſalt-pit, from whence he ſent out a body of the army to make inroads towards Seid and Barut, and to pillage the country along the ſhore of the Mediterranean. When the imperial ſtandard was arriv'd at Balbec, all the army admir'd the beauty of the walls of this town: the ſtones are of a prodigious ſize, and there is one at the corner of the caſtle, which looks towards the gardens, twenty-eight cubits long, ſixteen broad, and ſeven high. This town is very famous, as well for the beauty of the walls, as for the height of its buildings; and it's believ'd to have been built by Solomon's order, by dæmons and genii, over whom he had an abſolute command. Notwithſtanding theſe advantages, it was reduc'd by our troops as ſoon as ever they appear'd before it. There were in it ſo great a quantity of fruits, pulſe, and goods, that our ſoldiers were furniſh'd with all manner of neceſſarys for a long time. Then Timur order'd the Emirs Cheik Noureddin, Chamalik, Sovindgic, and others, to advance towards Damaſcus at the head of thirty thouſand horſe.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIV.

Timur marches to Damaſcus, capital of Syria.

THEY ſtaid not long at Balbec, becauſe it was ſituated near a mountain, which render'd the air exceeding cold; and it being the beginning of winter, there fell abundance of ſnow and rain.

The 3d of Jumaziulevel, the ſun being in the ſixth degree of Capricorn, Timur departed from Balbec; and after having march'd a day's journy, he halted to viſit the tomb of the prophet Noah, whoſe bleſſings having beſought, he ſet out for the conqueſt of Damaſcus. The body of the army, which had been ſent out to make inroads towards Seid and Barut, return'd, after having ravag'd all the maritim country of Syria; and join'd the imperial camp, loaded with the ſpoils of that country. As Syria was at that time under the dominion of the Sultans of Egypt, the Syrians were contiually ſending couriers, to carry the news of our army's march, to Farrudge ſon of Barcoc, their king; whom they continu'd to preſs ſo aſſiduouſly to come to oppoſe Timur, that at their perſuaſion he rais'd an army, which he equip'd with great expence and magnificence, and above all, the cavalry, which was the beſt in the world. In this condition he took the road to Damaſcus; which he was no ſooner enter'd, than he us'd all his precautions to examine the fortifications, to poſt guards and centinels every where, to put the walls in good order, and to augment the entrenchments as well of the city as of the caſtle. Jan. 3. 1400.

Book III. In fine, he took all needful precautions: and uſing policy with ſtrength, he ſent to Timur, in quality of ambaſſador, an eloquent and perfect villain, who the better to cover his intentions took the habit of a poor religious. He order'd him for his companions two young aſſaſſins, to each of whom he gave a poiſon'd dagger, with orders to uſe their endeavours to murder Timur during the audience of the ambaſſador. At Timur's arrival near Damaſcus, theſe villains join'd the court, and came to the foot of the imperial throne to pay their compliments: they had ſeveral times the honour to approach his majeſty, and very favorable opportunitys to execute their deſigns: but the Almighty, who was always Timur's guardian and protector, wou'd not ſuffer 'em ever to come to perfection. Coja Maſaoud Semnani, one of the great ſecretarys of the council, imagin'd by the proceedings of theſe raſh fellows that they had ſome evil intention: wherefore he communicated his thoughts to ſome, who related 'em to the emperor, who order'd 'em to be ſearch'd; and they found in their boots poiſon'd daggers. The chief of the villains perceiving himſelf and his companions diſcover'd, declar'd the truth, and the reſolution they had taken to aſſaſſinate Timur. The emperor returned thanks to his ſovereign protector; and ſaid, "If it is not the "maxim of kings to murder ambaſſadors; yet it "wou'd be a crime to ſuffer this raſcal, or his "comrades, to live, who though clothed in the ha- "bit of a religious, is a monſter of corruption and "perfidy." Then he order'd, that according to the paſſage which tells us that treaſon ſhall fall upon the head of the traitor, he ſhou'd be ſlain with the ſame dagger with which he wou'd have committed

mitted this abominable action, and his infa- Chap. 24.
mous carcaſe to be burnt for an example to others. His two aſſaſſins had their noſe and ears cut off; but were not put to death, becauſe Timur wou'd ſend 'em back with a letter to the Sultan of Egypt.

Timur took horſe; and having fix'd his troops in good order, march'd towards Damaſcus, near which he encamp'd at the foot of a hill near Cobbei Seiar: a trench was dug for precaution round the army, and fortify'd with bucklers and palliſados. Then Timur aſcended the hill to examine the ſituation of Damaſcus and its outparts. He ſent ſcouts to skirmiſh with the enemy, and to keep 'em in play: the Emirs Sevindgic, Sainte Maure, and others, advanc'd, and were back'd by the Seid Coja of the right wing, and the Mirza Rouſtem of the left, at the noiſe of kettle-drums, hautboys and flutes, mix'd with the ſoldiers crys. By next morning they attack'd the enemy's ſcouts, whom they put to flight, after having ſlain ſeveral, and taken others priſoners. Then Timur, to revenge himſelf for the ſcandalous action of the Sultan of Egypt, order'd Chadoun and the other priſoners brought from Aleppo, to be put to death.

The ſame night there happen'd an affair as ridiculous as extraordinary. The Mirza Sultan Huſſein, after a debauch, was excited by ſome ſeditious Perſians to revolt againſt the emperor his grandfather; and he accordingly went to the city of Damaſcus, and liſted himſelf into the Syrian ſervice: which adventure gave the Syrians a great deal of ſatisfaction, imagining it wou'd produce to 'em conſiderable advantages. They conducted the prince into the city with a great

Book V. deal of pomp and ceremony [6]. Farrudge, imagining the union with this prince would deliver him from all troubles, and cauſe a calm after the ſtorm was over, treated him with all poſſible reſpect. The officers of this Mirza, Adouc, and Huſſein ſon of Barat Coja, gave advice of what had paſs'd to the Emir Chamelik, who inform'd the emperor thereof. At break of day they decamp'd, and after a league's march towards the ſouth-ſide of Damaſcus, which looks upon the country of Canaan, Egypt, and the deſart of Arabia, they encamp'd again, and built a wall about the height of a man round the camp, and dug a trench round the wall. The ſcouts went out to ravage the country in the neigborhood of Damaſcus: and Timur plac'd both infantry and cavalry round the walls of the camp to guard them in the night.

Two days after Timur ſent Padi Chah Baouram ambaſſador to the Sultan of Egypt, with the following letter. " You are not ignorant " of the effects which circumſpection and ex- " actneſs produce; and know that emulation and " jealouſy, mix'd with ambition, are the mo- " tives which oblige conquerors to raiſe armys, " undertake the moſt dangerous wars, and " make themſelves maſters of countrys and king- " doms; and that by this means they preſerve " the honor of their crown, and acquire eternal " fame. All this great noiſe of the world is not " ſo much to heap up riches, as to acquire ho- " nor; for half a loaf every day is ſufficient for

[6] The Arabian remarks, that the Mirza Sultan Huſſein had a handſom head of hair, which they ſhav'd off; and having honor'd him with a robe, dreſs'd him after the faſhion of their country: and that he had quitted Timur, being aſham'd to ſee him with his army in ſo miſerable a condition.

" the

"the nouriſhment of a man. We have ſeveral times demanded Atilmich of you, and you have not once offer'd to ſend him to us; but have always ſtarted ſome difficultys, and delay'd an affair of ſuch conſequence. This hath oblig'd us to make war in your country, which will bring ruin and deſolation upon your ſubjects. If rocks cou'd ſpeak, they wou'd tell you that this action of yours portends no good to you. Yet, notwithſtanding your unreaſonable proceedings, if you'll cauſe the mony to be coin'd, and the public prayers to be read in our name, that ſhall ſtop our fury. This you ought to do, if you have any compaſſion for your ſelf or ſubjects. Our ſoldiers are like roaring lions, which want their prey; they ſeek to kill their enemy, pillage his effects, take his towns, and overturn his edifices to the very foundations. There are but two ways to chuſe: either peace, the conſequences of which are quiet and joy; or war, which produces diſorder and deſolation. I have ſet both before you: it is your part to follow one or other. Conſult your prudence, and make your choice. Farewell." Chap. 24.

The ambaſſador having carry'd this letter, they receiv'd him with very particular honors, contrary to their uſual cuſtom: at which reception they practis'd all the ceremonys us'd towards the moſt illuſtrious men. And as fireworks are very often made in this country, they aſſembled a great many perſons of this trade, who paſs'd in review before the ambaſſador, to ſhew their ſtrength and power: but they were not ignorant that theſe were no more than atoms in compariſon of the court of Timur. After they had endeavor'd to pleaſe the ambaſſador by abun-

Book III. abundance of civil treatment, and ſeveral honors beſtow'd on him, they ſent him back; and he was follow'd by ſeveral lords of the court of the Sultan of Egypt, who came to caſt themſelves at the foot of the imperial throne, and ſpoke to Timur in theſe words. "Moſt excellent and formidable emperor, we "know that we appear before your majeſty as "your meaneſt ſervants; yet we are full of "reſpect and ſubmiſſion. We have reſolv'd to "ſend Atilmich to your auguſt court within "five days: and if after that you deign to "pardon our faults, we'll omit no occaſion of "giving you marks of a perfect obedience; "and as far as depends on the power of the "Sultan, and the capacity of his ſubjects, they "ſhall endeavor to merit by their ſervices the "good-will of your majeſty, and the friend-"ſhip of the illuſtrious lords and officers of "your imperial court." The emperor, being touch'd with their diſcourſe, which was color'd over with an appearance of ſincerity, gave 'em a kind reception, worthy of his clemency: he made 'em preſents of veſts, and with very obliging expreſſions aſſur'd 'em of the ſincerity of his heart; he afterwards ſent 'em back very well contented and pleas'd with having ſucceeded ſo well in their embaſſy. And this appearance of an acommodation occaſion'd joy to the inhabitants of Damaſcus.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV.

Timur gives battel to the Sultan of Egypt, and gains the victory.

AFTER ten days encampment, an account was taken of the ſtate of the army: upon which Timur order'd they ſhou'd depart from thence directly to encamp at Gouta, that the horſes might feed in that delicious place. The army had no ſooner began this motion, than thro their ill-fortune, the inhabitants of this country imagin'd that this march proceeded from weakneſs, and that our troops were fled towards the Levant. They likewiſe thought that ſo numerous an army cou'd not decamp without falling into ſome diſorder, and that if they laid hold on this opportunity to attack the rear of the Tartar army, they cou'd not fail of defeating 'em; that the ſurprize wou'd ſo embaraſs the ſoldiers, that they muſt be conſtrain'd to diſperſe and fly; and that this action wou'd be a great honor to 'em in all future ages. In this hope the whole army of Syria took horſe, and made a ſally out of Damaſcus: the populace join'd with the ſoldiers, ſome having ſwords, and others ſticks and ſtones in their hands; and as there were prodigious numbers of 'em, they had the raſhneſs to fall on our rear. There came ſo great a multitude out of the city, that the whole plain was cover'd with horſe and foot. The cavalry were arm'd with cuiraſſes, and were perfectly well equip'd; the infantry were arm'd with bows and arrows, ſwords, bucklers and axes, preſuming in victory: and there were never

ver ſeen before ſo great a multitude aſſembled together.

Timur being inform'd of this ridiculous raſh action, knew that fate had reſolv'd on the Syrians deſtruction: he implor'd the aſſiſtance of God, and reflected ſeriouſly upon the conduct he ought to uſe in this conjuncture. He gave orders that the whole army ſhou'd face upon the enemy, and that all the cavalry ſhou'd diſmount to encamp: he caus'd a kind of wall to be made with the bales of the baggage, prop'd up with great ſtones; and being thus entrench'd, they erected their tents and ſtandards. Then Timur got upon an eminence with fifty of his favorites, and according to cuſtom, on his knees addreſs'd himſelf to God in prayer: he order'd his cuiraſs and other arms to be brought him, and then he took horſe full of confidence, commanding the drums to be beat, and the great cry made. In the mean while the troops of our left wing arriv'd all in good order: and as the Syrians were already very near us, Timur ſent inſtructions to the Mirzas Miran Chah, Charoc, and Aboubecre, who commanded the right wing, to attack the enemy on one ſide; while the Emirs of the left wing ſhou'd fall upon 'em on the other. In this order they advanc'd againſt the enemy, and gave 'em battel. The Emirs Sevindgic, Chamelik, Seid Coja, Sainte Maure, and others, as well of the vanguard as of the rear, began the fight; being back'd by the main-body. And as the two wings fell furiouſly upon the unfortunate Syrians, there was ſo great a ſlaughter, that the whole plain was cover'd with blood. After an obſtinate battel, victory inclin'd to Timur: the Syrians were defeated, and repuls'd as far as to the gates of Damaſcus, having above half their ſoldiers ſlain, and a great part diſpers'd;

diſpers'd; but this part was afterwards over- Chap. 26.
taken by the Tartars, who ſlew vaſt numbers of 'em. There were nothing to be ſeen but heaps of dead bodys, and rivulets of blood, armor, and ſtandards, mix'd together. Scarce any eſcap'd the fury of our ſoldiers, except thoſe who enter'd the city. This ſignal victory was gain'd the 19th of Jumaziulevel 803, which anſwers to Jan. 19.
the year of the Crocodile. During the heat of 1400.
the battel, the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, who commanded the Syrians left wing, was ſent againſt the Mirzas Miran Chah and Charoc; but Topalic Coutchin, an officer of the Mirza Charoc, fell upon him, and having ſeiz'd his horſe's bridle, brought him to his maſter, who gave advice of it to Timur. His majeſty being incens'd, gave orders that Huſſein ſhou'd be put in priſon, and loaded with chains, as a puniſhment for his action: but he was ſhortly after ſet at liberty, thro the interceſſion of the Mirza Charoc, yet not till they had given him the baſtinado, as order'd by the law of Yaſac. This was not ſo much a puniſhment to him, as the ſhame and continual reproaches he receiv'd from the whole court: and he was never permitted to enter the emperor's hall.

CHAP. XXVI.

Taking of the city of Damaſcus.

THE next day our army decamp'd, and went to erect the ſtandard near the city at the foot of a hill, while the news of the late victory ſpread it ſelf every where. At length they departed at the noiſe of drums and trumpets; and

Book V. and Timur order'd that the army ſhou'd march in order of battel, and place before 'em a great rank of elephants, as well to augment the magnificence of the army, as to ſtrike terror into thoſe who had never ſeen ſuch things. It is remarkable, that from one end of the right wing to the extremity of the left, the Tartar army took up between three and four leagues of ground. Then having their elephants at their head, the army got upon a riſing-ground, from whence there was a proſpect of the city, that the enemy might ſee their power, and be diſhearten'd. By this means all the inhabitants of the country, as well ſoldiers as others, were ſatisfy'd of the multitude of this army, of which before they had had but an imperfect knowledge. All the cavalry being upon this hill, the drum was beat, and the whole army made the uſual great cry: and then they advanc'd nearer the city, to encamp on the bank of a deep rivulet, which ſerv'd inſtead of a trench; and with their great and little bucklers they made a ſort of rampart round the camp. After theſe precautions, both the cavalry and infantry croſs'd the rivulet; and the army, according to cuſtom, rang'd themſelves in order of battel in ſight of the enemy. There was a vaſt number of Syrians, but the diſadvantages they had had the preceding day had ſo diſcourag'd 'em, that they dar'd not advance. The Sultan of Egypt held a council with his great Emirs, as Norouz Hafezi, Yach Bec, Chadountaz, Cheiki Hajeki, and others, upon what they ſhou'd do in this conjuncture. Some, who were attach'd to the inhabitants intereſt more than to the Sultan's, ſaid, that tho they had receiv'd a great ſhock, the city and walls were entire; that there yet remain'd a vaſt number of ſoldiers, who were diſpos'd to fight; that the

the beſt way wou'd be to make a ſecond ſally, and afterwards to defend the city and fortreſs. The others who had greater experience, and were more attach'd to the Sultan's intereſt, were of another mind: they thought that men of ſenſe ſhou'd not be prepoſſeſs'd with chimeras; that when the Tartars were diſorder'd by a decampment, without precaution, or being upon their guard, and not in the leaſt expecting a battel, the Syrians with their great numbers, and in good order, went to ſurprize 'em, and attack their rear, with all poſſible diligence and artifice; yet every one knows what the ſucceſs was: from whence they concluded, that the beſt remedy wou'd be for them to take the road of Egypt in the night, under favor of the darkneſs, according to the proverb, which tells us, That he who gains his life, gains all; that in the town and caſtle there were a great number of ſoldiers, as well as inhabitants, who were capable of defending themſelves, and wou'd uſe all their efforts to preſerve their lives, their wives and familys; that if fortune favor'd 'em, and they ſav'd the city, the king wou'd always continue maſter of it; but on the contrary, if the Tartars took it, and burnt and deſtroy'd every thing, the king and court at leaſt wou'd be ſecur'd from the public deſolation. Chap. 2

The whole Egyptian council was of this opinion; upon which Farrudge ſent an ambaſſador with preſents to Timur, and a letter in theſe terms. "The affair which happen'd yeſterday "was a popular ſedition, in which we had no "hand: a number of ignorant young fellows of "the common ſort, had the raſhneſs to ſally out "of the city, and receiv'd the puniſhment they "merited. For our part, we have no other de-"ſign than to keep our words, as we promis'd be-

Book V. " fore: and if your highneſs is willing to grant
" a ceſſation of arms for this day only, to mor-
" row we will execute whatever you ſhall or-
" der, and endeavor to repair the fault com-
" mitted againſt our will, and obtain pardon
" for it."

The ambaſſador acquitted himſelf of his inſtructions: and after he had made known to the emperor the ſubject of his coming, he order'd the army to return, and encamp a ſecond time.

When night was come, the Sultan of Egypt took horſe, accompany'd by the principal lords of his court; and having diſpos'd every thing in a proper order for his departure, he went out of Damaſcus at midnight, and took the road to Grand-Cairo. A Tartar deſerter nam'd Thacmac, came with expedition to find the Mirza Charoc, to whom he gave an account of all that had paſs'd. This Mirza ran to inform Timur of it, carrying Thacmac with him. He order'd that the troops of the right wing, under the command of the Mirza Aboubecre, ſhou'd inveſt the city on one ſide, and thoſe of the left wing, commanded by the Emir Gehan Chah, on the other, that no one might get out. At the ſame time Timur ſent ſome of the moſt famous Emirs of his army, with a great body of cavalry, in purſuit of the Sultan. Theſe brave men march'd with ſo much diligence, that they overtook him: they ſlew ſeveral of his men, and oblig'd the others to abandon their horſes, mules, camels, and all their equipage, to ſave their lives; ſo that the ways were cover'd with goods which they had caſt away to fly the better. On break of day, Timur took horſe, and order'd the ſuburbs of Damaſcus to be pillag'd. Next day,
Jan. 23. the 23d of Jumaziulevel, after ſun-riſing, the whole army were commanded to march in order

of

of battel; and after having paſs'd the gardens and ſuburbs, to inveſt the city. This order was exactly executed; and Timur went to lodge in the palace of Caſrablac, ſituate over-againſt the fortreſs, and built by Malek Ezzaher, formerly Sultan of Egypt. The Mirzas, Emirs, and ſoldiers took up their quarters in the ſuburbs; where they found a great quantity of furniture, arms, ſtuffs, and all ſorts of merchandize. Chap. 26.

Timur, who never omitted any opportunity of paying his devotion, viſited the tombs of Oumme Selma and Oumme Habiba, two of the wives of Mahomet; and afterwards that of Belalhabachi, whoſe interceſſion he implor'd: and then he return'd to his camp. As ſoon as the inhabitants of Damaſcus ſaw themſelves beſieg'd in form, they were ſo ſeiz'd with fear, that all the Cherifs, the Cadis [s], Imams, doctors, and other lawyers of the city, open'd the gates themſelves, and with an entire ſubmiſſion went out, and carrying with 'em preſents, caſt themſelves at the foot of the imperial throne. They repreſented their miſery, and the great diſpleaſure they had at what was paſs'd: and they beſought the emperor to have pity on the Muſſul-

[s] *An extract out of Arab Chah.*

The chief of this deputation was the Cadi Veliddin, ſon of Cheldoun, who very much pleas'd Timur in his diſcourſes with him: this prince made him, and the others who were with him, dine at his own table. And as Veliddin had travel'd into Africa, Timur was deſirous of hearing him diſcourſe concerning the kings of that country; for Timur was well vers'd in the hiſtorys of princes and ſtates, and was not ignorant of what paſs'd either in the eaſt or weſt.

Timur gave robes of honor to theſe lawyers, and ſent 'em away contented.

He eſteems him who comes to ſee him, according to the value of his preſents, and preſently after gives him up as a prey to death.

mans, and only grant 'em quarter for themſelves, and for their familys. They made ſeveral preſents to the officers; and after having ſubmitted to pay the tribute for ranſoming their lives, they return'd home. Timur gave a commiſſion to the Emirs for receiving the tax, and ſent 'em into the city. Theſe Emirs were Cheik Noureddin, Chamelik, and Allahdad, accompany'd by the comptrollers Coja Maſaoud Semnani, and Gelaleliſlam, who enter'd into Damaſcus, and according to cuſtom wall'd up ſeven gates of the city, leaving open only the gate of Elferadis, without which they kept their office. The receivers having drawn from the city the ſums agreed upon, brought 'em to the Emirs [p]. The friday following the Coutbe, or prayer for the king, was read in the famous moſque of the Ommiades Califs, in the name and titles of the auguſt emperor Timur.

CHAP. XXVII.

Taking of the caſtle of Damaſcus.

THO the condition of the city was as bad as we have repreſented; yet Yezdar Coutual, governor of the caſtle, confiding in the ſtrength of this place, which was one of the moſt noted fortreſſes in the world, reſolv'd to defend himſelf. Its walls were of great pieces of rock, very high and regularly built. It had round it a ditch of about twenty cubits; and

[p] Timur caus'd ſome of his ſoldiers to be crucify'd, for having us'd violence after the publication of quarter.

the

the place was ſupply'd with all ſorts of ammuni- Chap. 27.
tion. The gariſon began firſt to caſt ſtones out of their machines, as alſo arrows, and pots full of naphtha and wild-fire, to hinder our approach. Nevertheleſs orders were given to all the generals of Tomans and Hezares to advance towards the caſtle, and beſiege it in form. The neceſſary preparations were made, and the battering-rams and machines to caſt ſtones were got ready; and the ſoldiers rais'd three platforms of ſuch a height, that they commanded the caſtle. They afterwards entirely drain'd the ditch: then the ſappers advanc'd to the foot of the wall, and began to work with all imaginable diligence, notwithſtanding the great ſtones the beſieg'd continually ſhower'd on 'em; which were anſwer'd by thoſe from the machines erected on the platforms, and which hinder'd the beſieg'd appearing ſo often in view. From our machines were likewiſe caſt pots fill'd with wild-fire like theirs, beſides the arrows which conſtantly fell upon the place like hail. The ſiege being divided among the Emirs, every one ſhook the walls on his ſide with battering-rams and other machines.

During theſe tranſactions, Timur order'd the Mirzas Miran Chah and Charoc, and the Emirs Solyman Chah, Gehan Chah and others, to go and take up their winter-quarters near Canaan, that their ſoldiers might refreſh themſelves, and their horſes might get ſome paſture. The reſt of the army advanc'd in the ſiege with a great deal of vigor: they heated great pieces of the rock by putting fire underneath, and caſting vinegar there; and then with their hammers they broke 'em, and took 'em out of the walls: and when the wall and baſtions were ready to fall, they prop'd 'em up with great ſtakes leſt they ſhou'd fall on a ſudden. In this manner they ſoon

finiſh'd ſapping the baſtion of Tarma, which was the largeſt of any: and the place which Altoum Bacchi inſpected was ſooneſt finiſh'd. This being done, orders were given to ſet fire to 'em: and at the ſame time this high and famous tower fell, and made a vaſt breach by its fall. The ſoldiers ran with their bucklers on their heads to enter by this breach: but on a ſudden another part of the wall fell, which rais'd a prodigious duſt, and cruſh'd to death eighty men of the troops of Coraſſana and Siſtan. This misfortune ſtop'd the ardor of our men, who wou'd advance no farther: and the beſieg'd laying hold on the occaſion, clos'd up the breach, and fortify'd themſelves behind. Theſe breaches ſtruck terror into 'em; and they had willingly ſurrender'd, if they had not deſpair'd of pardon. The other props were then order'd to be ſet on fire; and great part of the caſtle ſoon fell. This accident entirely taking away all hopes from the beſieg'd, Yezdar governor of the place caus'd the gate to be open'd; and being conſtrain'd to go out, he came full of grief to deliver up the keys of his caſtle, and of the treaſury and magazines within it. The other ſides of the walls, which had been prop'd up with ſtakes, were not ſet on fire.

Timur gave orders that the governor Yezdar ſhou'd be put to death, becauſe he had waited too long before he ſurrender'd. They found in the caſtle great quantitys of riches, jewels, curious ſtuffs, and raritys which had been kept there for many ages. There was a famous granary full of corn, being the revenues of the two renown'd citys of Mecca and Medina. Timur, who was ſincere in his religion, prohibited any one from touching 'em: and Herimulc, one of the Tavatchis, having taken a hundred Batmans

of

of barly, he was baſtinado'd both before and behind, and the mony he had receiv'd for 'em taken from him. Timur order'd the intendant of this magazine to ſell him ſome corn at the price of three Dinars Copeghis for each Batman or pound, becauſe the war had render'd proviſions extremely dear. This intendant got a great ſum of mony for the corn; and the whole ſum was diſtributed among the officers of the above citys, who were ſent back to Jeruſalem, after having receiv'd a great deal of civil treatment from Timur. Chap. 27

The gariſon were made ſlaves, and diſtributed among the Mirzas and Emirs; it was moſtly compos'd of Circaſſians, Mamalucs, Ethiopian ſlaves, and Zanghebars: all the women, children and old men had the ſame fate. The tradeſmen were ſeparated from the reſt, and ſhar'd among the Emirs, with thoſe who had been taken out of the city, to be conducted to Samarcand. Moulana Jumaleddin, and Moulana Sulleman, two celebrated phyſicians, were alſo carry'd with 'em. Then Timur went from the palace of Caſrablac to lodge in the houſe of Boutecach, one of the great Emirs of Syria, which houſe was the moſt charming and noble of any in that country. At the ſight of all this magnificence, Timur cry'd out, "Is it not "a ſhame that in a kingdom of ſo large an ex- "tent, where men give themſelves up only to "pleaſures, they ſhou'd build all theſe fine edi- "fices to pleaſe their ſenſes; and not have the "charity to erect a ſingle mauſoleum of four "walls for the holy wives of Mahomet, who "lie underneath theſe tombs?" Whereupon he immediately order'd that two magnificent domes ſhou'd be built over the ſepulchres of theſe holy ladys. The commiſſion was given to the

Book V. Mirzas Aboubecre and Calil Sultan, and to the Emirs Cheik Noureddin, Ali Sultan, and Mengheli Coja, who made the workmen proceed with ſo much diligence, that the whole was finiſh'd in twenty-five days. Theſe two domes were of white marble, full of ſculptures and chiſel-work.

As the Syrian mony was of a baſe alloy, Timur caus'd new mony to be coin'd both of gold and ſilver, which was refin'd by the coppel: there were pieces of a hundred, of fifty, and of ten Medicales, which were all honor'd with the name and titles of the auguſt emperor Timur. The mony was ſo common among the ſoldiers, that the Divan got about ſix hundred thouſand Dinars Copeghi out of the ſingle revenue for monys.

Timur commanded the principal ſecretarys of ſtate to prepare letters of conqueſt, to ſend to Samarcand, and all the capital citys of the kingdoms of Iran and Touran, which were ſubject to his empire, with advice of the reduction of Syria; and to command the governors to make publick rejoicings for his victorys. Theſe letters were diſpatch'd by couriers, who likewiſe carry'd with 'em ſeveral of theſe new-coin'd pieces of gold and ſilver, to be diſtributed among the empreſſes, the princes of the blood, and chief lords of the kingdoms of Iran and Touran.

Timur ſent Coja Haſſan to the Mirzas Miran-cha and Charoc, that they might order the Emirs Soliman Chah and Gehan Chah to make inroads along the coaſt of the Mediterranean, as far as the town of Akkia. Theſe Emirs having departed according to order, made havock in all this country, from whence they brought away a great quantity of booty, and return'd to Canaan.

During

During theſe tranſactions, Timur was attack'd Chap. 27.
with a diſtemper, which proceeded from a flux of humors which fell upon his back, and turn'd into an impoſthume. He was very bad with it: and one of the Emirs who attended his perſon, nam'd Aratmur, was ſent into Canaan, to order the princes of the blood and the Emirs to return with expedition; but at their arrival the diſtemper went off, and the emperor recover'd. Then Timur reflecting upon the hiſtory of Syria, aſſembled his privy-council to communicate his ſentiments to 'em. "I have heard, ſays he, "that in the wars which the Merouanian Om- "miades Califs wag'd againſt the children of "Mahomet, and particularly with Ali, his ſon- "in-law, nephew, and lawful heir, where they "exercis'd all the maſſacres and cruelty's they "cou'd invent, the Syrians kept an intelligence "with 'em, encouraging 'em in all theſe abomi- "nable actions. Nothing ſhou'd be more won- "der'd at than this: for how can a nation be "thought to be of the ſect of a prophet, and "be drawn from the abyſs of error and infi- "delity by the light he has afforded 'em, when "it becomes ſo far the enemy of his family as "to unite with its moſt cruel adverſarys, and "ſuffer all ſorts of cruelty and injuſtice to be "us'd towards 'em? This is what I can't com- "prehend. We ought not to disbelieve this "tradition: for if it were falſe, ſo rigorous a "ſentence wou'd not have come from the tribu- "nal of God's juſtice, in conſequence of which "they have ſuffer'd ſo cruel a puniſhment at this "time, notwithſtanding all their ſtrength and "power."

Timur having related this piece of hiſtory, with which he was perfectly acquainted, they explain'd his highneſs's thoughts among one ano-

Book V. ther; and the officers of his houſhold were conſtantly reaſoning on it. It was ſo inſinuated into the minds of the warriors, that on the firſt
March 28. of the moon of Schaban the troops forcibly enter'd the city without orders, and made a terrible ſlaughter, committing all manner of violences: they made both men and women ſlaves, took from 'em their jewels, and pillag'd their goods, which conſiſted of an infinite quantity of gold, precious ſtones, curious merchandizes, rich ſtuffs, and all ſorts of raritys. They got ſo much riches, that all the horſes, mules, and camels, which they had taken from Sebaſte as far as Damaſcus, were not able to carry 'em away: ſo the ſoldiers were oblig'd to fling away a great part, and eſpecially ſeveral pieces of gold and ſilver ſtuffs, and curious belts of Egypt, Cyprus and Ruſſia, which they had pillag'd at the beginning of the campain. This circumſtance I have heard from ſeveral credible perſons who were eye-witneſſes of it.

The firſt floor of the houſes of Damaſcus are built of ſtone, and the two upper ones of wood; and moſt of the cielings and even of the walls of 'em are varniſh'd; which renders 'em very inflammable: ſo that when any place has took fire, the judges and governors, notwithſtanding all their precautions, are not able to ſtop it; and it commonly burns a great way. This often happens in time of peace.

March 29. The 12th of Schaban, the city took fire by an accident; and every one ſtrove in vain to quench it: it increas'd ſo much, that no place was free from the ſcent occaſion'd by the ebony and ſandarac, of which the varniſh was compos'd; and the houſes became exceeding black.

Timur, whoſe regard for religion was unparallel'd, ſent the Emir Chamelik to preſerve

the

the famous moſque of Ommiades from the fire: but tho the roof was made of wood cover'd with lead, inſtead of being varniſh'd, God made his wrath appear againſt theſe people; for notwithſtanding the ſoldiers endeavors to quench it, they cou'd not hinder the eaſtern Minaret of this moſque's being reduc'd to aſhes, tho it was built of ſtone: whereas the Minaret of Arous, otherwiſe nam'd Mounar Beiza, remain'd ſafe, on which the Muſſulmans believe, that the lord Meſſiah Jeſus, on whom, as on our prophet, may bleſſings and ſalvation be ſhower'd, will deſcend from heaven, when he ſhall come to judg both the living and the dead. And what was moſt miraculous is, that this latter Minaret, tho built of wood, and plaſter'd over with lime on the out-ſide, remain'd intire, while all Damaſcus was burnt down, and the immenſe riches within it pillag'd and ſack'd, as well as the reſt of Syria. Chap. 27.

Then Timur took up a reſolution to return back; and to give the inhabitants of Syria ſome marks of his clemency, after having made 'em feel the effects of his wrath, he order'd that all the ſlaves of Damaſcus and the reſt of Syria, men, women and children, ſhou'd be ſet at liberty. Gelaleliſlam had the commiſſion for executing this order, and conducting all the ſlaves to the city of Damaſcus; which was exactly obſerv'd.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Timur returns out of Syria.

March 31. 1401. THE fourth of Schaban 803, which anſwers to the beginning of the year of the Serpent, the ſun entring Aries, Timur decamp'd from Coubaibat, and march'd to Gouta, where he encamp'd. He there caus'd two orders to be drawn up; the one to the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, to leave the government of the frontiers of Mogoliſtan, to the Emirs Codadad Huſſeini, Birdi Bei, Sarbouga, and others, and to come forthwith to the foot of the throne, to receive the crown and inveſtiture of the empire of Hulacou Can, which was granted him in conſideration of his merits and ſervices. The ſecond order was, that the auguſt empreſs Touman Aga, and the young princes his children, ſhou'd come to meet the emperor. Theſe two orders were ſeal'd, and ſent by Daué Ceja.

Timur being departed from Gouta, paſs'd by Caraoun Bec; and in three days he arriv'd at Emeſſa, the inhabitants of which had continu'd firm in their obedience, for which reaſon the troops did not moleſt 'em in their paſſage. Then a council was held, and Timur order'd the Mirzas Rouſtem and Aboubecre, with the Emirs Soliman Chah and Cheik Noureddin of the right wing, to march with ten thouſand horſe to the town of Tedmir, built by the prophet Solomon, the houſes of which were of free-ſtone; and to pillage the ſubjects of Zulcader, who were in the territorys of this town. He commanded the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, and the Emir Berendac

dac of the left wing, to march to Antioch at the head of five thouſand horſe: and he ſent the Mirza Calil Sultan, the Emir Rouſtem Tagi Bouga Berlas, Temour Coja, Acbouga, and others, with fifteen thouſand horſe of the main body, againſt the Turcomans of Coubec, who were encamp'd on the banks of the Euphrates. Chap. 28.

Thoſe of the right wing ſoon arriv'd at Tedmir, from whence they brought away about two hundred thouſand ſheep belonging to the Zulcaderians, who were conſtrain'd to fly into the deſarts of Arabia with their horſes and camels. After this the troops return'd, paſs'd the deſart, and came to the banks of the Euphrates, along which they advanc'd.

Thoſe of the left wing being arriv'd near Antioch, cou'd ſcarcely enter it, becauſe of the great waters, ſloughs and marſhes: they pillag'd the city and country, and then turn'd towards Aleppo, where they join'd the troops ſelected out of the main-body, and commanded by the Mirza Calil Sultan: with theſe they march'd into the neighborhood of Calat-Erroum, towards the Euphrates. Here they met the Turcomans, who had the boldneſs to wait their coming, and prepare for battel: they were briskly attack'd, and as courageouſly defended themſelves; but the Cheik Huſſein, ſon of Coubec, their leader, being ſlain, his brothers and the reſt of the chiefs were conſtrain'd to fly to the deſart. Several of 'em were kill'd; and abundance of horſes, camels, ſheep and other ſpoils taken, which being join'd to the other booty of our ſoldiers, they counted above eight hundred thouſand ſheep; and the ſoldiers were ſo fatigu'd, that they cou'd not carry away the reſt of the cattel.

When

Book V. When Timur was arriv'd in the neighborhood of Hama, the evil deſtiny of the inhabitants excited 'em to commit acts of hoſtility againſt our men: they deſtroy'd the edifices our ſoldiers had built when they were there the firſt time. This action inflam'd Timur's wrath, who permitted 'em to be pillag'd: the inhabitants were made ſlaves, and their houſes ſet on fire, after they had taken from 'em their beſt effects.

The army march'd from Hama to Aleppo, from whence to Damaſcus are ſeventy leagues. After ſome days journy they came near Aleppo; and the Emirs Seid Azeddin, Hezaregheri, Chah Chahan, and Mouſſa Tui Bouga, who were in the caſtle belonging to that city, raz'd the walls, burnt the houſes, as well of the caſtle as of the town, and join'd the imperial camp. After four days journy the army arriv'd at the banks of the Euphrates; and the Mirzas Rouſtem and Aboubecre, with the Emirs of the right wing, arriv'd there at the ſame time, coming from the lower part of the river. The Mirzas Calil Sultan and Huſſein Sultan, with the Emirs of the main-body, came there alſo by water: and they had all the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet, and offer preſents of the booty they had taken in their inroads. There was ſo great a number of cattel in the camp, that a ſheep was ſold for a Dinar. As the Mirza Sultan Huſſein had perform'd ſeveral brave actions, and done the duty of a good ſubject in the laſt inroads, he obtain'd a pardon for his former fault, and kiſs'd the emperor's feet, who promis'd to reſtore him his beſt favors, and take care of his advancement.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIX.

Timur croſſes the Euphrates, and hunts in Meſopotamia.

AFTER all the Mirzas and Emirs had join'd the imperial camp, orders were given to repaſs the Euphrates: and accordingly two boats were brought from the town of Bire, on the eaſt ſide of this river, to tranſport the emperor's baggage. The Mirzas, Emirs and ſoldiers ſwam over, and encamp'd near Bire, the governor of which came out to ſalute the emperor, bringing him preſents: and in acknowledgment of his ſervices, his highneſs confirm'd him in his government, and the inhabitants receiv'd no damage from our troops. Cara Oſman arriv'd at this place, and kiſſing the imperial carpet, made his preſents; and he had a handſom reception.

The army being departed thence, Timur had a deſire to hunt in Meſopotamia: the ſoldiers of the right and left wing form'd the great circle of five days journy in circumference: and the circle growing leſs and leſs, they found ſo much game of all ſorts near the fine fountain of Raſelain, that they took the beaſts with their hands. After the chace, tables were erected for a general banquet, to eat the game which had been taken, wherein the moſt delicious wines were ſerv'd up: and as an incentive to drinking, they eat roe-bucks and antilopes, whoſe fleſh is very tender, and the beſt-taſted of any creatures of the deſart.

Then

Book V. Then they decamp'd from Bire; and when they were come to the town of Edeſſa [1], the principal perſons came out with preſents to ſalute Timur, who treated 'em handſomly, aſſur'd 'em of their lives, and ſent 'em back contented. Paſſing farther, they found a caſtle inhabited by Armenian robbers. Timur gave orders for their being exterminated; and they were accordingly put to death, their goods ſeiz'd on, and the place raz'd. During theſe tranſactions Hendou Chah Cazandgi arriv'd from Samarcand: he had an audience of the emperor, to whom he gave an account of the good ſtate of affairs in Tranſoxiana. There alſo came an officer from the empreſſes Toukel Canum and Touman Aga; and another from Sultania, from the empreſs Serai Mulc Canum, with preſents of ſtuffs and jewels: and all theſe meſſengers inform'd the emperor of the good health of the princes his ſons.

CHAP. XXX.

Timur marches to the town of Merdin.

THEN the army march'd towards Merdin. Timur ſent back Hendou Chah Cazandgi, and the officers of the empreſſes, giving 'em preſents, and letters full of affection for the princes his children. To the ſame place came the Sultan of Huſni Keifa [2], and the Sul-

[1] The ſame as Rubha and Orpha.

[2] Corruptly call'd Haſan Keif, a town on the bank of the Tigris between Amed and Mouſſel.

tan

tan of Arzine, with the other princes and lords of thoſe quarters. They brought preſents and precious ſtones to lay before the emperor, and they had the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet. Chap. 30.

As to the Sultan of Merdin, we have already remark'd, that he being reduc'd to obedience, had been impriſon'd by the emperor's order in the caſtle of Sultania; that Timur in compaſſion to him had pardon'd him, and given him a veſt, with much civil treatment; and that he had promis'd to become a faithful ſervant as long as he liv'd, and let ſlip no opportunity of giving marks of it, that ſo he might render himſelf agreeable to the emperor, and merit his favors. After this it became him to follow our army into Syria with his troops; or if thro the nearneſs of the enemys, there was any difficulty in that, he ought at leaſt to have ſent one of his ſons or brothers. But as he had fail'd in this particular, he was conſcious of his fault; and dar'd not come to meet his highneſs. Nevertheleſs Timur, being arriv'd near his frontiers, had the goodneſs to ask after him, ordering him to come before him in very obliging terms: but this unhappy prince, giving way to his evil deſtiny, had the inſolence to refuſe to come, and dreamt of defending his town, being perſuaded that it cou'd not be taken by force. In effect, as a long ſiege was neceſſary to the carrying it, tho in the neighborhood were abundance of fertile plains full of paſturage, and proper to encamp in; Timur [4] was contented with ruining and burning

[4] Timur cou'd not take the caſtle of Merdin, which was ſituate upon an inacceſſible rock, large enough to contain much

Book V. burning all the houſes of the lower town, as well as the markets: and he order'd Cara Oſman, governor of Malatia, after having honor'd him with a veſt, to form the blockade of Merdin, and ſhut the inhabitants up ſo cloſe, that no one might be able to eſcape.

Timur us'd abundance of civility to the Sultans of Huſni Keifa, Arzine, and the other neighboring places, who were come to pay their devoirs to him at his arrival. He gave to each a robe wove with gold, a belt ſet with precious ſtones, and a ſabre with a gold handle; and he permitted 'em to return to their own countrys. Then Timur ſent the Emir Allahdad to Samarcand, with orders to march afterwards to Achpere, to take care of the frontiers of Gete.

CHAP. XXXI.

Timur ſends troops into Georgia, and to Bagdad.

THE army being departed from Merdin, Timur order'd the Mirzas Sultan Huſſein, Pir Mehemed, Omar Cheik, and Aboubecre, as alſo the Emirs Gehan Chah, Temour Coja, Seid Coja, and others, to march with a great body of the army to Alengic by the way of Amed,

much plough'd lands. Here are great ſprings of water; and the gariſon ſtand in no need of the out-parts to maintain 'em.

The Arabian ſays, that to be deſirous of taking Merdin, is to ſeek the friendſhip of an envious man, or to make a ſign to the blind.

to

to make themſelves maſters of Alengic, and from thence to paſs into Georgia. The Mirzas and Emirs departed according to order: but as Alengic had been beſieg'd already two years by others of our troops, (for when the army march'd towards Sebaſte, the Cheik Mehemed Deroga, with the troops of the Mirza Miran Chah, Firouz Chah, and the Mirza Charoc, went to beſiege it, and preſs'd it ſo cloſely, that moſt of the inhabitants died of hunger; they being in ſo great want of victuals, as to be oblig'd to eat old leather, skins and ſuch like things, to appeaſe their hunger; and even theſe things failing 'em at laſt, conſtrain'd 'em to go out and deliver up the place) Alengic, I ſay, having been beſieg'd two years, when the Mirzas and Emirs came near Avenic, and heard of the reduction of Alengic, inſtead of marching to it, they turn'd towards the right for Georgia. They made great haſte to ſurprize the Georgians, whoſe country they ravag'd. This exceedingly diſturb'd Malek Gourghin, who ſent an ambaſſador to the Mirzas, to acquaint 'em with the great ſurprize he was in at their coming into his country, ſeeing he was one of the emperor's moſt faithful ſervants, and to aſſure 'em that as ſoon as his highneſs ſhou'd come into thoſe quarters, he wou'd not fail of paying his obedience to him. The Mirzas ſent an expreſs to court with advice of Ghourghin's ſubmiſſion; they ceas'd ravaging his countrys, and ſtaid at Mencoul, which is a place proper to paſs the ſummer in, to wait the anſwer of the court, and know whether the emperor wou'd grant quarter to Ghourghin. The ſame day an order was iſſu'd out for the Sultan Mahmoud Can, the Mirza Rouſtem, the Emir Solyman Chah, and other Emirs, to march at the head of their

Chap. 31.

Book V. Tomans and companys towards the city of Bagdad. Theſe lords ſet out immediately, and after ſeveral days march arriv'd at Bagdad, and encamp'd on the ſouth-ſide. Farrudge, of the Mogul hord of Gelair, was governor for the Sultan Ahmed. The vaſt multitudes of Turks and Arabians, who were aſſembled in this city, render'd Farrudge inſolent; and confiding in the ſtrength of his walls, and the number of his ſoldiers, he even dar'd to ſally out to oppoſe the Tartar army, and rang'd his men in order of battel in the view of ours.

As ſoon as the rumor of the arrival of our army was ſpread, the Emirs Ali Calander of Mendeli *, and Dgian Ahmed of Bacou *, began their march againſt us, and paſs'd the Tigris at Medaine. On the other hand, Farruk Chah of Hille, and Micail of Sib, alſo departed with the ſame deſign, and join'd together at Serſer; and with three thouſand men well arm'd advanc'd to fight. The Mirza Rouſtem, the Emir Soliman Chah, and others, immediately took horſe with their troops, and ſurrounded the enemy. They repuls'd 'em as far as the Tigris, and a bloody battel enſu'd near the caſtle of the Emir Ahmed. Dgian Ahmed was there ſlain, with a great number of his braveſt ſoldiers: many caſt themſelves into the river and were drown'd, while the reſt eſcap'd with a great deal of difficulty. After the defeat, one wou'd have thought Farrudge ſhou'd not have held out any longer; but this peaſant, who had never before been maſter of a government, and had attain'd this only by cowardly intrigues, cou'd not reſolve to quit his new dignity of governor, but found a pretence to excuſe himſelf. "The Sultan Ahmed my maſter, ſays he, made me "ſwear, that if Timur ſhou'd come in perſon,

"I

* In Coureſtan.

" I wou'd ſurrender the city, for fear of bring- Chap. 32.
" ing the people into miſery: but if that em-
" peror ſhou'd not come in perſon, whatever
" number of troops approach'd, I wou'd make a
" ſtout defence, and not deliver up the place:
" and I muſt obey my maſter's orders."

Under this ſly pretence, he gain'd over the inhabitants and militia, whom he poſted upon the walls to defend the city. There he us'd all his efforts; for he excited the ſoldiers upon the walls, and advanc'd upon the water in a boat, diſcharging a ſhower of arrows on our men in the rear.

In the mean while Timur advanc'd towards Tauris: he paſs'd by Naſibene [5], a ſtrong place, which he gave orders to beſiege and raze; but the inhabitants coming out with preſents, and bringing the keys of the fortreſs, Timur gave 'em quarter; and they receiv'd no damage from the paſſage of our troops. The army being arriv'd at Mouſſel [6], they built a bridge over the Tigris, which all the troops croſs'd in a week.

CHAP. XXXII.

Timur beſieges and takes Bagdad.

THE Emirs who were before Bagdad, ſent an expreſs to the emperor, to acquaint him with Farrudge's ſentiment, and the pretence with which he color'd over his obſtinacy in defending the city. On this advice Timur

[5] A town of Courdiſtan, long. 76. 30. lat. 37.
[6] A town of Meſopotamia, long. 77. lat. 36. 30.

Book V. choſe the braveſt men of his army; and leaving the empreſs Tchelpan Mulc Aga, with the reſt of the troops and baggage, under the care of the Mirza Charoc, accompany'd by the Emir Chamelik, whom he order'd to march to Tauris by Tchinaran and Calaghi, he departed in perſon for Bagdad, by the way of Altoun Cupruc [7]; where being arriv'd, he encamp'd at the lower part of the river, over-againſt the gate of Cariet Ulacab; and all the troops encamp'd round the city. He immediately order'd the ſappers to begin to work. The Mirzas and great Emirs of the Tomans, Hezares and Couchons, fix'd the ſappers each before his poſt, and ſome bodys of the troops to ſuſtain 'em. Farrudge being deſirous to know whether Timur was there in perſon, ſent one to him whom he had confidence in, in quality of ambaſſador, becauſe this perſon knew him, having had the honor to ſee him before. The ambaſſador met with a handſom reception; and after his audience was honor'd with a veſt, and at length diſmiſs'd. At his return he gave Farrudge an exact account of what had paſs'd; but this governor, tho he well knew he ſpoke the truth, accus'd him of diſſembling, and put him in priſon, leſt others ſhou'd likewiſe know the truth from him: and then giving out that Timur was not there in perſon, he continu'd to defend himſelf, and committed hoſtilitys, not conſidering what the conſequence wou'd be. Then the Cojas Maſaoud Semnani, and Mengheli, who were employ'd in building a platform, which might have a proſpect upon the city of Bagdad, were wounded with arrows, and ſoon after expir'd.

[7] A bridge on the river of Altoun Soui near Mouſſel.

Timur

Timur ſent Locman Tavachi to the Mirza Charoc, to order him to return to Bagdad with the baggage and the reſt of the army. Locman join'd the Mirza at Calaghi, and accompany'd him in his way to Bagdad. When this great army was aſſembled together, Timur review'd it: and the aſtoniſh'd inhabitants no longer look'd upon their city as the houſe of peace *, but as the palace of hell and diſcord. The troops encamp'd on both ſides the river, and ſurrounded the city, tho it was more than two leagues in circumference. A bridge of boats was built over the Tigris below Cariet Ulacab: and ſeveral skilful archers were laid in ambuſcade down the river, to hinder any from flying. The care of the upper part of the river, was given to the Mirzas Miran Chah and Charoc, who encamp'd over-againſt Souqs Eſſultan. On the other ſide of the Tigris were Mehemed Azad, and Tangri Birmich Coja, to guard the fore-part of the city, that no one might get out that way. In fine, it was ſo block'd up and environ'd on all ſides, that tho the Tigris paſs'd thro the middle of it, and there was a great number of boats, yet it was impoſſible to get out. During theſe tranſactions, Ahmed Ogoulchai, governor of the caſtle of Alengic, who was ſeiz'd after the taking of the place, was brought to Timur, who order'd that he ſhou'd be put to death, and the caſtle committed to the care of Malek Mehemed Aoubehi. The execution of this order was given to him who had brought Sidi Ahmed to court. Chap. 22.

At the ſame time the Emir Mouſſa arriv'd from the Mirza Mehemed Sultan at Tranſoxi-

* Bagdad is ſirnam'd Dareſſelam, that is to ſay, the houſe of peace.

Book V. ana, and gave the emperor an account of the good ſtate of affairs in that kingdom. He preſented him with a piece of a balaſs ruby, weighing one hundred and twenty Medicales, dug out of the mine of Bedakchan.

In the mean while Farrudge and the inhabitants of Bagdad were ſtruck with fear; ſo that they fought not ſo much out of bravery as from deſpair: they perform'd actions of the greateſt raſhneſs, which almoſt exceeded human power; for as ſoon as the Tartars having made a breach, had ſet fire to it, and a ſide of the wall was about to fall, the beſieg'd immediately repair'd the breach with mortar and brick, and entrench'd themſelves behind. It was then ſummer, the ſun being in Cancer: and as Bagdad was ſituate in a country near the tropic, the violence of the heat was ſo great, that the birds fell down dead; and as the ſoldiers had on their cuiraſſes, one may ſay they even melted like wax: nevertheleſs they rais'd a high platform, which commanded the city, from whence they inceſſantly caſt great ſtones out of their machines. The Mirzas and Emirs fell ſeveral times on their knees before the emperor, begging leave to make a general aſſault, that they might take the city ſword in hand: but Timur wou'd not conſent to it, ſaying, perhaps the beſieg'd may come to a ſenſe of their fault, beg pardon, and deliver up the place, that they may ſave themſelves from being ſlain or made ſlaves, and that the kingdom may not be entirely ruin'd. But fate had fix'd it otherwiſe; for theſe unfortunate people continu'd in their ſtubbornneſs, notwithſtanding the dearneſs and ſcarcity of proviſions, the ſiege having already laſted forty days.

The 27th of Zilcade 803, at noon, when the inhabitants by reaſon of the heat of the ſun, not being able to ſtay upon the walls, had retir'd into their houſes, and fix'd their helmets upon ſticks which they had erected in their places, our army undertook to give a general aſſault. The Mirzas and Emirs furiouſly advanc'd, and having fix'd their ſcaling-ladders againſt the walls, the Emir Cheik Noureddin mounted firſt, and erected his horſe-tail upon the wall, crown'd with a half-moon. He caus'd the trumpet to be ſounded, and the drums and kettle-drums beat: immediately all the captains in their reſpective poſts mounted the walls, and then caſt them down into the ditch: the troops enter'd the city ſword in hand, and Timur advanc'd to the foot of the bridge which had been built below Bagdad. The ſoldiers being in the place, the inhabitants endeavor'd to get out by all the ways they cou'd, but in vain: ſo they were conſtrain'd to caſt themſelves into the Tigris, where eſcaping the ſwords of the Tartars, they became the prey of the fiſhes. Several got into boats, and others ſwam, to gain the lower part of the river; but they were no ſooner come to the bridge than they were ſhot by the ſoldiers arrows, who lay in ambuſcade. Farrudge embark'd with his daughter, and found means, notwithſtanding all Timur's precautions, to eſcape by water. He was purſu'd along the banks of the Tigris by our ſoldiers, who diſcharg'd upon him a vaſt number of arrows; whom not being able to reſiſt, he was conſtrain'd to caſt himſelf and daughter into the water, where they were both drown'd, and the boat ſunk to the bottom. The boatmen had orders to fiſh up Farrudge; and having drawn him up out of the water, they caſt his unfortu-

Chap. 32. July 23. 1401.

Book V. nate carcaſe upon the bank. As there had been ſeveral Tartar ſoldiers ſlain in the general aſſault, each ſoldier was order'd to bring one head [*] of the men of Bagdad; which they accordingly did, and ſpar'd neither old men of fourſcore, nor children of eight years of age. No quarter was given either to rich or poor; and the number of the dead was ſo great, that no one cou'd count 'em up, tho the Tavachis had orders to regiſter it. Towers were made of theſe heads, to ſerve as an example to poſterity. Some learned men found means to caſt themſelves at the feet of the emperor, who granted 'em pardon and quarter, and even gave 'em veſts and horſes, with a convoy to conduct 'em to what place of ſecurity they deſir'd: all the reſt of the inhabitants were exterminated. Afterwards Timur gave orders that there ſhou'd not remain one ſingle houſe in the city unraz'd; but that the moſques, colleges and hoſpitals ſhou'd be ſpar'd. Accordingly they ruin'd the markets, caravanſeras, hermitages, cells, monaſterys, palaces, and other edifices. Thus, ſays the Alcoran, *The houſes of the impious are overthrown by the order of God.*

---

[*] Arabſchah ſays two: and that there were ninety thouſand inhabitants of Bagdad ſlain in cold blood. They flung away the bodys, and made trophys of the heads pil'd together. There were one hundred and twenty towers made of the heads for trophys.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Timur's return from Bagdad, and march towards Tauris.

AFTER the Tigris was grown red with the blood of the inhabitants of Bagdad, and the air began to be infected by the dead bodys, Timur decamp'd from that city the beginning of Zilhadge, and march'd a league towards the upper part of the river. He encamp'd near he tomb of the great Imam Abou Hanifa, chief of one of the four orthodox ſects among the Mahometans, to implore the interceſſion of this ſaint. Then he ſent a meſſenger with letters and orders to Mouſike, who was come from Tranſoxiana; which meſſenger he order'd to be accompany'd by Nemedee, Deroga [1] of Khivak [2], that this Nemedee might have the care of the government of Carezem in the abſence of Mouſike, and till his return to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan.

Timur order'd the Sultan Mahmoud Can, and the Mirza Caleb Sultan, accompany'd by ſeveral great Emirs and a good number of troops, to make inroads in the neighbouring places. They haſten'd to obey this order, paſs'd by Hille, and went as far as Mechad Nedgef [3];

[1] Deroga is the particular governor of a town.

[2] A town ſouth of the Gihon, in the kingdom of Carezem.

[3] A place in Irac Arabi near the Euphrates, where Huſſein, grandſon of the falſe prophet Mahomet, was ſlain by the ſoldiers of Yezide, ſon of Muavias. To this place they go in pilgrimage from all parts of Aſia.

but

Book V. but inſtead of attacking that holy place, they paid their devotions there: then they ravag'd Hille and Vaſet, and return'd to court laden with booty.

Timur took the road to Chehrezour and Calghi; and leaving the care of the baggage and main of the army to the great Emirs, he order'd 'em to march ſlowly behind, while no one ſhou'd ſeparate from his Toman or company. The emperor made haſte, accompany'd by the Mirzas Miran Chah, Charoc, and Calil Sultan: but while they were on their march, the Courdes were ſo raſh as to attack thoſe who were ſeparated, tho at ever ſo ſmall a diſtance from the army, and rob 'em. Timur being inform'd of their boldneſs, plac'd ſoldiers in ambuſcade round the roads; and as ſoon as theſe villains appear'd, our men ſallying out of their ambuſcades, ſeiz'd 'em, and hang'd 'em upon the ſpot on the cheſnut trees which grew in the roads. As to theſe cheſnut-trees, I have heard it reported by very credible perſons, that one year they produce cheſnuts, and the next gall-nuts *; which appearing ſo very extraordinary, I thought fit to mention it. Timur being arriv'd at the river of Jagatou, the empreſs Serai Mulc Canum, Canzade, and the other wives of the Mirzas, with their children, among whom was the Mirza Oulouc-Bec, came to meet his highneſs, and kiſs'd his feet at Sineper, congratulating him on his conqueſts, and ſprinkling upon him precious ſtones and pieces of mony. After having offer'd their preſents,

* I believe the author is miſtaken, ſuppoſing the oaks which produce gall-nuts alternately with acorns, to be cheſnut-trees, which are very uncommon in Syria.

they

they decamp'd, and being arriv'd at Acziaret, encamp'd there. The Cherifs, doctors and principal lords of the empire of Iran, cloth'd with ſcarfs of Ihhrane which they wear in the moſques, came as far as this place to meet Timur, who gave 'em a handſom reception. They ſtaid twenty days at this place; and the baggage and remainder of the army ſoon arriv'd. And as the moſt learned Imams, and doctors were aſſembled in this place, Timur, who was extremely deſirous of being enlighten'd upon any queſtions of religion, invited 'em to diſpute upon ſome point of doctrine, for the better clearing up of the truth: he employ'd himſelf in this exerciſe as long as he continu'd at Acziaret. Afterwards he gave leave to the Mirza Rouſtem to return to Chiraz, with order, as ſoon as he ſhou'd arrive there, to ſend to court Haſſan Yandar, and Jaſan Jagadaoul. Chap. 34.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Timur ſends the Mirza Charoc to Arzendgian.

DURING Timur's ſtay in Syria, Bajazet, ſirnamed Ildurum or the Thunder, the Ottoman emperor, thro the inſtigation of Sultan Ahmed Gelair and Cara Youſef Turcoman, who had fled for refuge to his court, brought an army into the field; and to revenge himſelf for the ruin of Sebaſte, he march'd to beſiege Arzendgian, which he made himſelf maſter of, having routed Taharten. Mocbel, Taharten's lieutenant, was kill'd in the battel; and Bajazet ſent the diſconſolate wives and children of Taharten to Brouſſa; and then return'd

Book V. turn'd himſelf. When Timur was departed from Acziaret, had paſs'd by Oudgian [1], and was encamp'd at Hechtroud, that is to ſay, the eight rivers, he receiv'd advice that Bajazet was again marching towards the eaſt: upon which he order'd the Mirza Charoc forthwith to fall upon the Ottoman, and make him repent of his boldneſs; he appointed the Emirs Soly-man Chah, Chamelik, and other chiefs of Tomans, and colonels of Hezares, to accompany the Mirza. He then ſent orders by the Emir Mezrab, to the Mirzas and Emirs who were gone out to make inroads in Georgia, and had ſtop'd in Mencoul, to depart directly to join the Mirza Charoc, which they accordingly did. The Mirza being ſet out from Avenic, and arriv'd at Nevine, met the Cheik Ali, nephew of Taharten, who brought advice that Bajazet, fearing the ſucceſs of his bold undertaking, had beſought Taharten to intercede for him with Timur, that he might obtain pardon for his hoſtilitys, on condition of his future obedience; that he wou'd ſend ambaſſadors with letters to make a treaty of peace, and a ſincere alliance between the two empires, that ſo the Muſſulmans might live quietly; and that he promis'd that if the peace ſhou'd be concluded by the interceſſion of Taharten, he wou'd ſend back his wives and children, whom he had carry'd to Brouſſa. The Mirza Charoc ſent the Cheik Ali to the emperor, to give him an account of this affair; and ſtaid himſelf ſome time where he was. Timur having decamp'd from the eight rivers, went to Oudgian, and ſtaid ſome days in the Kiochk of Argoun.

[1] A town of Azerbijana near Tauris.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXV.

Arrival of the ſecond empreſs Touman Aga, and the young princes, from Samarcand.

WE have ſaid before, that when the army decamp'd from Damaſcus, orders were ſent to the empreſs Touman Aga to repair to court with her children. As ſoon as the princeſs receiv'd that letter, ſhe haſten'd thither. When ſhe arriv'd at Bocara, ſhe went to viſit the tombs of the ſaints, and among others that of the Cheik Seifeddin Bacrezi, whoſe interceſſion ſhe beſought. She croſs'd the Gihon at Amouye, and paſſing the deſart, came to Macan; and then going thro the deſart of Bigen, ſhe went to Machhad of Tous, where ſhe viſited the tomb of the great Ali, making vows, and diſtributing alms. When ſhe was arriv'd near Oudgian, Timur went to meet her, and had the pleaſure of ſeeing and embracing his dear children the Mirzas Ibrahim Sultan and Sad Vacas. He return'd thanks to God for his favors; and afterwards gave audience to the empreſs Touman Aga, and his daughter the princeſs Beghiſi Sultan, as alſo his couſin Sadekin Aga, who paid their reſpects to him. After having ſtaid ſeveral days at Oudgian, Timur took the road to Tauris, hunting in his way. When he was arriv'd there, he went into his imperial palace, where he inform'd himſelf of the affairs of all his people, and did juſtice to thoſe who had been oppreſs'd by his officers. Then the Coja Ali Semnani arriv'd from Herat, and the Coja Seifeddin from Sebzuar; they ſaluted the emperor,

Book V. peror, and made their preſents. Timur gave 'em a place in the Divan, in conſideration of their ſervices.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Timur marches into Georgia, and to Carabagh Arran.

TIMUR having ſtaid ſome days at Tauris, reſolv'd to march into Georgia: he went to encamp at Comtoupa, where he order'd the Coja Iſmael Cavaſi to be hang'd before the market-place of the camp, to puniſh him for the tyrannys he had exercis'd upon the people. He afterwards croſs'd the river Araxes, and went to encamp with all the army at Nakchivan. And as the caſtle of Alengic was near Nakchivan, he was deſirous to ſee that ſtrong place, which had been taken by his ſoldiers in ſo ſhort a time; and carrying with him the empreſſes, with the princes his ſons, and his favorite Emirs, he carefully examin'd the place, and return'd to his camp.

About this time Taharten arriv'd at court, where on his knees he preſented Bajazet's letter, gave an account of his repentance, and begg'd pardon for him; which he did with ſo much eloquence, that he appeas'd the emperor's wrath, and obtain'd his deſire. Timur ſtaid ſome days at this place, during which time he ſent an ambaſſador into Georgia, to Malek Ghourghin, to demand the tribute of him. Then the Mirzas, Pir Mehemed ſon of Omar Cheik, Sultan Huſſein and Aboubecre, with the Emirs who had been ſent to Mencoul, to join

the Mirza Charoc, arriv'd at court, and ſaluted the emperor. The army decamp'd from the meadow of Nakchivan, went to the defile of Chahboz, and enter'd into the mountains. Timur being arriv'd at Gheuktcheytonkez, had a deſire to take the diverſion of hunting; and when the circle began to cloſe as uſual, they took a very great number of ſtags. After this chace they encamp'd, and the Mirza Charoc return'd with his Emirs, and had the honor to ſalute the emperor at that place. Afterwards they departed; and when they were encamp'd at Chemkour [6], which is a delicious place, Ideeou, ſon of Coja Seifeddin Berlas, arriv'd there from Kirman; he kiſs'd the imperial carpet, and made his preſents. The commiſſary, whom Timur had ſent into Georgia to receive the tribute impos'd on Malek Ghourghin, likewiſe return'd to the ſame place. That prince ſent with him his own brother, loaded with curious preſents, among which were horſes and animals proper for the chace; he alſo ſent the tribute impos'd on him. He had an audience of the emperor, by the interceſſion of the great Emirs; and having offer'd his preſents, related the ſubject of his embaſſy. He ſaid that the king his brother had reſolv'd to continue obedient to the laws of the emperor of the Muſſulmans; that if he had committed any fault, he ſincerely repented of it; and if his highneſs wou'd pardon him, he wou'd not let one opportunity ſlip of rendring him his ſervices; that he wou'd faithfully pay his annual tribute, and always keep troops ready to march where his highneſs ſhou'd pleaſe to order 'em. Chap. 36.

[6] A town in Georgia, long. 83. lat. 42.

Timur

Book V. Timur pardon'd Malek Ghourghin; he look'd upon his brother with a favorable eye, and giving him a veſt, permitted him to return home. He order'd him to acquaint his brother that he forgave him, and wou'd quit his country, on condition that he kept within the bounds of his duty; that he treated the Muſſulmans of Georgia civilly, and protected 'em from all inſults and oppreſſions; and that he rais'd an army, which he ſhou'd ſend directly to the imperial camp.

Then Timur ſent to Samarcand Temour Coja ſon of Acbouga, with other Emirs, to ſerve under the Mirza Omar, in quality of lieutenant-general in the government of Tranſoxiana. The army departed from this place, and went to encamp at Caraoultopa, where they receiv'd advice that the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who had orders to return from Samarcand to court, was arriv'd at Nichabour, and that the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, his lieutenant-general, was dead. Timur was ſenſibly touch'd with this news, and melted into tears, becauſe of the good ſervices he had always receiv'd from that faithful ſervant.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Timur paſſes the winter at Carabagh. Arrival of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan from Samarcand.

AFTER a month's ſtay at Caraoultopa, Timur departed; and having paſs'd by Ghendge and Berdaa, went to encamp at Carabagh Arran the 22d of Rabiulakher 804, which anſwers to the year of the Serpent, the ſun being

Dec. 12. 1401.

in the middle of Sagittarius. They built houſes of reeds for Timur and the Mirzas his ſons; and within the incloſures they erected tents and pavillions. And as Timur's intention was to make war in Capchac in the ſpring, the face of the pavillions was turn'd towards Derbend; and every one took up his winter-quarters, after Timur had diſtributed the mony in his treaſury among the ſoldiers and Emirs. But at this time ambaſſadors arriv'd from Capchac: they obtain'd an audience by the intercеſſion of the great Emirs, and on their knees aſſur'd the emperor of their Can's ſubmiſſion and perfect obedience. The reſpectful terms they us'd appeas'd his anger, who granted 'em pardon, and aſſur'd 'em of his friendſhip. Chap. 37.

Then advice was brought that the Mirza Mehemed Sultan had paſs'd by Ardebil, and was arriv'd at Actam, at the head of his army. The Mirzas Miran Chah, Charoc, and others, accompany'd by all the great Emirs, haſten'd to meet him: they croſs'd the bridge of the Araxes, and join'd the Mirza on the bank of the river Agloue. The Mirzas embrac'd their brother with tenderneſs and affection, teſtify'd their joy, and congratulated him on his happy arrival. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan went to caſt himſelf at the emperor's feet, with the ordinary ceremonys. Timur embrac'd him, diſcours'd with him on the fatigues and length of his journy, and gave him a thouſand benedictions. The Mirza offer'd his preſents, as did alſo the Emirs of his court. For joy of this happy arrival the emperor made a great feaſt for ſeveral days, where the empreſſes and ladys appear'd with extraordinary ſplendor.

Timur particularly diſtinguiſh'd the Mirza Mehemed Sultan; he plac'd a crown of gold on his head, and gave him a belt of the ſame met-

Book V. tal, with nine ſets of Arabian horſes, with ſaddles of gold. When the feaſt was over, Timur again took upon him the care of the public affairs; and the firſt thing he did was to finiſh the proceſs againſt the Mirza Eskender, whom the Mirza Mehemed Sultan had bound for a fault he had committed: he was interrogated in a full Divan, and being caſt, receiv'd the baſtinado appointed by the laws of Yaſa; but at length his chains were taken off, and he ſet at liberty.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Timur ſends troops to make inroads in divers places.

WE have before remark'd, that the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, for fear of Timur's troops, had fled from his city of Bagdad for refuge into Natolia to Bajazet. Upon the rumor of Timur's march, the ſame Sultan departed from Bajazet in the neighborhood of Cæſarea in Cappadocia, and went towards Chaldea, which is call'd Irac-Arabi: he paſs'd by Calat-Erroum, and along the banks of the Euphrates; he went to Hit, and thence to Bagdad, which city he endeavor'd to rebuild, tho entirely ruin'd; and he got together all thoſe of his party who were diſpers'd, and wander'd about as vagabonds in the deſarts. Timur being inform'd of this, reſolv'd to exterminate 'em before they ſhou'd be able to gather to a head: to which purpoſe he held a council with the Mirzas and Emirs, and order'd four bodys of the cavalry to march each a different route. The Mirza Pir Mehemed, ſon of Omar Cheik,

had orders to go towards Loreſtan, Couzeſtan and Vaſet: the Mirza Aboubecre, with ſeveral Emirs of Tomans, was to depart for Bagdad: the Mirzas Sultan Huſſein and Calil Sultan were order'd to go with ſeveral Emirs into certain places of Chaldea; and the Emir Berendac was nam'd to march with a good troop, to pillage Gezire, and endeavor to exterminate the rebels. And as the Courdes had dar'd to commit inſults againſt our army, on its return from Bagdad, and had rob'd ſome of our ſoldiers who were ſcatter'd; the emperor order'd that the firſt of theſe robbers they met ſhou'd be deſtroy'd without mercy. Chap. 38.

Tho it was winter, and the cold exceeding violent, becauſe of the ſnow, ſo that it was impoſſible to paſs without laying felts before one; yet the Emirs readily obey'd their inſtructions. This execution was begun upon the Courdes robbers, who, forc'd by the ſnow and violence of the cold, were come down from their mountains, and had encamp'd in the plains of Derbend Tachi Catoun: an infinite number were put to the ſword, ſome wou'd have fled into the mountains, but were hinder'd by the ſnow and cold, and conſtrain'd to ſubmit and beg quarter, which was not granted, becauſe their own wickedneſs had brought upon 'em the wrath of Timur.

The Mirza Aboubecre, having the Emir Gehancha for his lieutenant-general, took the road to Bagdad, and blocking up the ways on all ſides, arriv'd there in the evening, when the Sultan Ahmed leaſt expected him. The Sultan was ſo ſurpriz'd and preſs'd, that he caſt himſelf into a boat in his ſhirt, paſs'd the Tigris, and accompany'd by his ſon the Sultan Taher, and

Book V. ſome officers of his houſhold, took the road to Hille. Our troops repos'd themſelves that night at Bagdad; and next morning, when they were aſſur'd of the Sultan's being gone to Hille, the Emir Gehan Chah was detach'd in purſuit of him, and went as far as Hille; but as the Sultan, who had caus'd the bridge to be broken, was gone towards the lower part of the Euphrates, into the iſles of Khaled and Malek, Gehan Chah wou'd not march ſo far, but ſtaid at Hille, and ſent a horſeman to give advice of it to the court.

The Mirzas Sultan Huſſein and Calil Sultan paſs'd by Chepchemal, and pillag'd Mendeli, from whence the Emir Ali Calander, who was governor of it for the Sultan Ahmed, fled, paſs'd the river, and having got together ſome fugitive troops, poſted himſelf on the bank of the Tigris. The Mirza Calil Sultan ſent by the upper part of the river the ſon of Gehanghir Berlas, at the head of five hundred brave men, with orders to ſwim over the river, and attack 'em in the rear, while himſelf, with his army, lay in their view to amuſe 'em. This detachment croſs'd the Tigris, attack'd the enemy's rear, while the Mirza's troops ſwam over the river, charg'd the enemy on both ſides, and having defeated 'em, pillag'd and brought 'em away priſoners of war, after having burnt alive their commander, who had had the boldneſs to defend himſelf.

The Mirza Pir Mehemed, with his lieutenant-general the Emir Solyman Chah, pillag'd at Doubendar the hords of Saki and Fili. He was join'd by the Mirza Rouſtem, who, according to his inſtructions, was come from Chiraz to paſs the winter at Chuchter: and they went together

ther towards Abada [7] and Vaſet. The Cheik Avis, a Courde, offer'd himſelf to be their guide, and advis'd 'em to ford the Tigris at Coupeſer; they afterwards march'd all night, and came to Mabedia, where they viſited Sidi Ahmed Kebir. From thence they march'd two days journy, to plunder the Arabians of Abada, from whom they brought away great ſpoils of horſes and camels. They went no farther; but repaſſing the Tigris, return'd to Chuchter, the government of which the Emir Solyman Chah confirm'd to Doucom, and that of Dezfoul to Mehemed Adjab Chir, as likewiſe that of Haviza to Temour Coja, and that of Couzeſtan with its finances to Chamſeddin Dehdar; but by way of retaliation he exacted of 'em great ſums of mony. Then the Mirza Rouſtem departed, in order to return to Chiraz. Chap. 38.

All the Mirzas and Emirs, who were gone to make inroads into divers parts, ſtaid the whole winter in Chaldea, where they ſeveral times beat the enemy, and brought away a great quantity of booty: and in the ſpring they took the road to the imperial camp; and being all join'd at the bridge of Cales near the mountain Dgebelhamri, twelve leagues from Bagdad, and four from the dome of Ibrahim Lic, they march'd together to court, to give an account of what they had done.

[7] A town in Arabia, frontier of Chaldea, on the Perſian gulf, near Baſra or Baſſora.

CHAP. XXXIX.

The cauſes which oblig'd Timur to return to make war on Bajazet the Ottoman emperor.

AS Cara Youſef, prince of the Turcomans, had begun afreſh to commit diſorders in the Muſſulman country, robbing all paſſengers of whatever quality, and even inſulting the great caravan which goes yearly to Hidgiaz and Mecca[a]; and afterwards fearing the juſt indignation of our monarch, was fled for refuge to the country of the Ottomans, which was a ſure aſylum to all the robbers of Aſia: Timur, who made it a point of conſcience to quell the diſorders which affected the Muſſulmans, reſolv'd to make war upon Bajazet. This prince receiv'd the news with indignation; and all the people of Natolia were ſo ſeiz'd with fear, that the principal men of the ſtate, as well lawyers as Cherifs, waited upon him, and gave him the following advice.

The Ottomans counſel to Bajazet.

"The prince who deſigns to march into our "country, is ſo formidable and powerful, that "he has deſtroy'd all who have refus'd to obey "him. Whatever his armys undertake, they "eaſily accompliſh: and they have never yet at"tack'd a province, city or fortreſs, which they "have not ſoon reduc'd. It is impoſſible, "mighty emperor, to execute ſo great deſigns "without the favor of God; which makes us "preſume that to wage war with ſuch an enemy,

[a] Every Mahometan kingdom ſends yearly a caravan for the pilgrims to Mecca.

"ye

" is againſt the rules of prudence. We believe it Chap. 30.
" beſt to act with him in the ways of peace and
" mildneſs; and that your highneſs ſhou'd uſe
" all your efforts to do what he deſires of you,
" and to maintain a good correſpondence with
" him."

The fear which had poſſeſs'd Bajazet made all this appear reaſonable to him. He wrote a letter to Timur, full of ſubmiſſion and obedience, which he ſent by a Cadi of the law, accompany'd by an eloquent Emir skilful in negotiations, who went in quality of ambaſſadors to our conqueror. They arriv'd in the imperial camp at Carabagh Arran; and by the interceſſion of the Mirzas and great Emirs were admitted to an audience: they fell on their knees, and having kiſs'd the imperial carpet, preſented their letter, and gave an account of the ſubject of their embaſſy. The letter imported, " That Bajazet's
" ſince by the infinite favor of the great ruler letter to
" of heaven and earth, your highneſs has been Timur.
" rais'd to the throne of the empire of Aſia,
" we willingly reſolve to be entirely obedient
" to you: and if for the time paſt we have
" acted contrary to our duty, we aſſure your
" highneſs that we will repair the fault by our
" zeal in embracing all opportunitys of paying
" our homage and ſervices."

Timur having heard the ambaſſadors harangue, and read Bajazet's letter, anſwer'd 'em in theſe terms. " Inaſmuch as we have been inform'd, Timur's
" that your maſter wages war with the infidels anſwer to
" of Europe, we have always caſt off all de- Bajazet's
" ſigns of marching into his country with our ambaſſa-
" army, not being willing to conſent to the dors.
" deſtruction of a Mahometan country, which
" will cauſe a great deal of joy to the infidels.
" But there can be nothing more diſagreeable to

Book V. "us, than to hear that he grants a protection "to Cara Youſef Turcoman, the greateſt rob- "ber and villain in the whole earth, who pil- "lages the merchants, murders paſſengers on the "high-ways, and commits a thouſand other in- "ſufferable diſorders: and what is moſt dange- "rous is, that this wretch reſides in the midſt "of the Muſſulman country, where he is as a "wolf among the ſheep; and the evil he does "is a thouſand times worſe than what a ſtran- "ger cou'd do, tho he was the moſt powerful "monarch in the world. If your maſter has "a real deſire to remove the cauſes of our quar- "l, and keep a good correſpondence with "us, he muſt reſolve upon one of theſe three "things; either firſt, to put Cara Youſef to "death as a criminal, after a legal proceſs; "or ſecondly, to ſend him to us bound in "chains, that being convicted of his crimes, "he may receive the puniſhment due to 'em; "or thirdly, that he at leaſt expel him out "of his dominions. On theſe conditions we "will maintain a friendſhip with your maſter "as far as poſſible; and give him proofs of it "by the powerful ſuccours we ſhall ſend him, "to carry on the war againſt the infidels more "vigorouſly."

The ambaſſadors receiv'd the emperor's anſwer with all poſſible marks of reſpect. Then his highneſs took horſe to follow the diverſion of the chace; he paſs'd the river Araxes, and the plain of Actam was choſen for the place to hunt in. This vaſt country was ſurrounded as uſual; and the circle growing leſs, the emperor and the Mirzas enter'd, and with their lances ſlew what game they pleas'd. Timur permitted Taharten, and the Ottoman ambaſſadors to enter the circle with the Mirzas: ſeve-

ral

ral officers of the houſhold, as Mehemed Azad, Chap. 39.
Teuckul Baourtchi, and others, had the ſame honor; and they ſlew a prodigious number of beaſts. In the mean while the circle preſs'd cloſer, and there were five or ſix ranks of ſoldiers behind one another: and then the Mirzas and Emirs came out of the circle, and order'd the kettledrums to be ſounded. The beaſts, terrify'd at this noiſe, fell upon one another in ſuch great numbers, that they form'd a kind of mountains. Then all the cavalry were permitted to kill and bind the beaſts; and the chace was ſo great, that every one took five or ſix with his own hands.

After this hunting, Timur return'd to the camp; and in few days made a moſt magnificent feaſt, in which he did particular honors to the Ottoman ambaſſadors, gave 'em caps of gold, and belts; and told 'em that he wou'd take up his winter-quarters in this place, and at the ſpring ſet out for the frontiers of Natolia, where he wou'd wait the arrival of the ambaſſador whom he ſhou'd ſend to their maſter; that if he brought a reaſonable anſwer, he ſhou'd be glad; if the contrary, the ſword ſhou'd determine who was in the right. Then Timur ſent with 'em, in quality of ambaſſador, Bayazid Tchempai Eltchikede, with a letter to Bajazet; he gave 'em a numerous attendance, and then diſmiſs'd 'em all. The tenor of the letter was as follows.

Timur's letter to Bajazet.

"After the uſual compliments, we declare "to you, that if what your ambaſſadors have "ſaid be ſincere and true, it is requiſite that "what we have propos'd concerning Cara Yuſef Turcoman ſhou'd be immediately put in "execution; and that you ſend to us forthwith "one of your Emirs you can moſt confide in,

"to

Book V. " to confirm with an oath the articles of a trea-
" ty of peace between us. After that, by am-
" baſſadors and letters a good correſpondence
" ſhall be maintain'd between us; ſo that the
" Muſſulmans ſhall no longer fear any inſults
" from either of us: otherwiſe you may expect
" to ſee our army enter your country, and ruin
" your monarchy. Safety be to him who fol-
" lows the right way."

CHAP. XL.

Timur digs the river of Berlas.

IT is a common obſervation, that the grandure of princes is known by the monuments which remain of 'em after their death. Never any potentate left ſo many of theſe marks of power as Timur. Some antient prince had dug a canal into which the Araxes was brought; but this canal was at length overflown, and its banks demoliſh'd. While Timur was hunting in theſe quarters, he by chance caſt his eyes upon this beautiful relique of antiquity; and at the ſame time his ambition, and the deſire he had to immortalize himſelf, excited him to repair this canal. To this purpoſe, he croſs'd the Araxes, and regulated the manner in which this project ſhou'd be executed: the Tavatchis diſtributed the work among the Emirs, who were to take care that the ſoldiers wrought at it. This work was carry'd on with ſo much vigor, that in a month two entire leagues of the canal deep enough for a boat to ſwim in, were dug. The place where it diſcharges it ſelf into the Araxes is call'd Kiochke Tchenghichi; and the ſpring-head

head is at a place nam'd Surcapil. Timur gave it the name of Nehri Berlas, that is, the river of Berlas: and on its banks have ſince been built ſeveral towns, villages, mills, vineyards, gardens and pleaſure-houſes. Tho Timur employ'd almoſt all his time in war, with deſign to render himſelf maſter of Aſia, uſing all the means of policy, which ſeconded by fortune, hath facilitated to him the conqueſts of this great empire, by a chain of almoſt incredible victorys; yet this prince, the better to tranſmit his memory to poſterity, has erected ſo many ſtately edifices and other famous monuments, that this canal, with all its beauty, ought to be accounted one of his leaſt undertakings, ſince if compar'd with the others, 'tis but as a rivulet to the ocean. Chap. 41.

CHAP. XLI.

Timur departs from Carabagh for the plains of Chemkour.

THE ſun was now in Piſces, and the ſpring was advancing, when the emperor was as much reſolv'd upon marching into the Ottoman country, the prince whereof was his enemy, as he was ſet againſt it by the conſideration of the religious war which Bajazet at that time ſo zealouſly maintain'd againſt the infidels. His heart being agitated by two different motives, he remain'd in ſuſpence. The vaſt extent of the Ottoman empire, the number and valor of its troops, who were perfectly skill'd in war, and prepar'd to defend themſelves, did not a little contribute to keep up his irreſolution. Moreover, our troops, having been employ'd

Book V. employ'd for three years in attacking places, fighting battels, and making inroads upon ſeveral enemys, were ſo fatigu'd, that the Emirs and generals fear'd they wou'd be diſhearten'd by this new enterprize; yet they dar'd not diſcover their ſentiments, for fear of being thought guilty of cowardice or weakneſs. They judg'd it moſt proper to reveal their mind to Chamſeddin Almaleghi, who for his great wit, eloquence and clearneſs of thought, had obtain'd ſo much acceſs to Timur, that he cou'd declare his ſentiments at any time, without being in the leaſt thought ill of. The Emirs hereupon addreſs'd themſelves to him, and unanimouſly beſought him to lay hold on ſome favorable opportunity to make known to his highneſs their thoughts of his march into the Ottoman country; they conjur'd him to let him know the conſequence of it, and adviſe him to think ſeriouſly on it, before he began it; and they even engag'd him to apprize Timur of the aſtrologers opinion, that in the campain againſt the Ottomans, there appear'd in the heavens an inevitable misfortune attending the Zagataian army. Chamſeddin willingly undertook this commiſſion, and repreſented the Emirs ſentiments to Timur, which were confirm'd by the prediction of the ſtars. Timur having heard him, order'd Moulana Abdalla Leſan, one of the moſt famous aſtrologers of the court, to be call'd before him: and to take away all fear from the Emirs, he interrogated him in public, and order'd him to declare freely the different aſpects of the planets, and the judgment which might be form'd from thence. Abdalla hereupon deliver'd the following prediction: "It appears by the Ephemerides of "the preſent year, that the aſcendant of this "empire is in the higheſt degree of ſtrength, "and

Admirable prediction of an aſtrologer.

" and that of the enemy in the lowest degree of weakness. A comet will appear in Aries; " and an army which comes from the east, will " make an entire conquest of Natolia, the prince " of which will be taken prisoner." Chap. 41.

The 13th of Regeb 804, Timur departed from his winter-quarters, and went to encamp in a meadow dependent of Carabagh, Arran. April 3. 1402.

The 7th of Schaban 804, which answers to the year of the Horse, and is the first day of the Gelalian year, he departed from Carabagh Arran for Chemkour; and in the mean while the Mirza Mehemed Sultan cross'd the river of Cyrus, and advanc'd along its banks. Then Timur sent Moulana Obaid Allah Sedre to Ispahan to guard the imperial treasure there; he sent to Chiraz Moulana Cotobeddin Garini, to regulate the expences of the Divan, and the revenues of the kingdom of Fars: and this monarch having pass'd by Berda and Ghendge, went down to the plains of Chemkour. They staid here some days, that the cattel might graze, and then they march'd towards Alatae. April 27.

When the army was encamp'd at Tabadar, which is on the frontiers of Georgia, on the 24th of Ramadan 804, which answers to the 18th of the month Ourdibehicht 324 of the Gelalian epocha, a son was born to the Mirza Charoc under the horoscope of Cancer. The emperor return'd thanks to God, and nam'd the prince Mehemed Dgiouki: the empresses, Mirzas, and great Emirs congratulated his highness and the Mirza Charoc on this happy birth, and the princess Canzade was appointed his governess. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had pass'd the river of Cyrus, pillag'd the inhabitants of the mountain Alburz Couh; and then return'd to the camp at Tabadar. June 13. Birth of Mehemed Dgiouki.

When

Book V. When the army was on their march, Timur order'd the empreſſes, and the Mirza's wives, to return home with the young princes; and they were conducted by Cohlugadgi. They ſtaid at Tauris the reſt of the ſummer, and towards autumn they went to Sultania. Timur at his arrival at Mencoul, not being willing to do any thing againſt the rules of policy, ſent a ſecond ambaſſador to Bajazet, with a letter in theſe terms.

Timur's letter to Bajazet.

"After the uſual compliments, we give you "advice, that tho we are on our march to meet "you, yet our word is the ſame as we have be- "fore declar'd: if you conſent to what we de- "ſire, and put into the hands of our lieutenants "the fortreſs of Kemac, which has been al- "ways ſubject to the countrys under our obedi- "ence, we will let you peaceably enjoy the king- "dom of Natolia, that you may continue the "war againſt the enemys of the Muſſulmans; "and we will not refuſe the ſuccour which you "may expect on that account. Do what you "think beſt for your good."

CHAP. XLII.

Taking of the caſtle of Tartoum.

TIMUR having been inform'd that there was a ſtrong place in thoſe quarters, nam'd Tartoum, in which were two hundred Georgians who refus'd to pay tribute, and inſulted the Muſſulmans and paſſengers; and that the prince who commanded 'em was abſent, and had left in his place a lieutenant nam'd Ghurdgibec: his highneſs commanded the Emirs Chamelik, Cheik Noureddin, and others, to attack the place, and take it at any rate. They accordingly

ingly came before it; and ſent to acquaint the enemy, that if they wou'd willingly ſurrender, and pay the tribute, they ſhou'd have quarter: but they refus'd ſo to do, and truſting in the ſtrength of the caſtle, prepar'd to defend themſelves. Our ſoldiers made the great cry, Alla Ecber, and Salli Alla Mehammed[1]; and having inveſted the place, they gave ſeveral aſſaults, diſcharging infinite ſhowers of arrows. The beſieg'd vigorouſly defended themſelves for five days; and the ſixth the place was taken: our men put all the Georgians to the ſword, and having overthrown the walls, they raz'd the place, even to the very foundations. The governor, who eſcap'd, came to the foot of the throne to beg pardon; and obtain'd quarter for his life. Chap. 42.

Timur ſtaid at Avenic till the return of the ambaſſadors he had ſent to Bajazet. When two months beyond the time agreed on were paſt, and he had no news from the ambaſſadors, he grew impatient. "In truth, ſaid he, extraction "is a ſtrange thing. Whatever mildneſs we uſe "with regard to Bajazet, in order to preſerve "Natolia, as being the frontiers of the Muſ- "ſulman country, and hinder as far as we are "able its being deſtroy'd by our troops; yet "the Turcoman blood of this ignoble perſon "won't permit him to deal civilly with us, "and preſerve peace and friendſhip between us. "He does not ſend back our ambaſſadors, but "carrys his hatred and hoſtility ſo far, that we "are conſtrain'd to enter his country with an "army, tho we have no deſire to ſeize by force "on his dominions and effects. But this is the

[1] That is to ſay, God is the moſt great, and God bleſs Mahomet.

"reſult

Book V. "result of providence, whoſe depths we are not "able to fathom: and we know not whether "the effects are deſign'd for good or evil till "they happen."

Timur ſent back to Sultania the ſecond empreſs Touman Aga, with the Mirza Sadvaccas, ſon of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan; and he afterwards continu'd his march towards Natolia. When he was arriv'd at Erzerom, he was join'd by the Mirzas and Emirs who had paſs'd the winter in Courdiſtan and Chaldea, where they had pillag'd and exterminated the enemys, as we ſaid before, and had departed thence in the ſpring, with great quantity of booty, by the road of Coulaghi, and the mountain of Sounatai.

CHAP. XLIII.

Taking of the caſtle of Kemac. Arrival of ambaſſadors from Bajazet.

THE caſtle of Kemac is one of the moſt noted in Aſia; it is ſituate upon a high ſteep rock, and is ſurrounded with a defile in form of a labyrinth. At the bottom of its walls are gardens and parterres of flowers on the bank of the Euphrates: and no prince has ever taken it by force. Several poets have compar'd it to the terreſtrial paradiſe, becauſe yearly for three days together, little birds, as big as ſparrows, and unfledg'd, fall out of the air; the inhabitants gather 'em up, ſalt 'em, and preſerve 'em in pots. If they don't take 'em in three days, their wings grow large enough to fly away.

The

The Mirza Mehemed Sultan beſought the emperor to honor him with a commiſſion to conquer this place; which having obtain'd, he departed with the Emirs of Tomans and Hezares, with all the arms and machines neceſſary for a ſiege. Timur being arriv'd at Arzendgian, ſent the Mirzas Aboubecre, Calil Sultan, Sultan Huſſein, and Eskender, with the Emirs Gehan Chah, Cheik Noureddin, and Berendac, to join the Mirza Mehemed Sultan; which they had no ſooner done, than they beſieg'd the place in form. The ſiege continu'd ten whole days, during which our ſoldiers ſtop'd the water which flow'd into the place. The eleventh night they made rope-ladders, on which the Mecrit ſoldiers, who run upon the ſteepeſt mountains like roe-bucks, got to the top of the mountain; and when they were there, they fix'd cords, which they let down to the bottom. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan order'd a number of brave men, whoſe names he wrote down, to mount by theſe cords; which they did, arm'd with their cuiraſſes, during the darkneſs of the night. The beſieg'd perceiving 'em defended themſelves, and caſt down great ſtones upon 'em. Alicher, nephew of the Emir Abbas, and others, miſs'd the ſteps, and fell. The next morning our ſoldiers mounted to the aſſault, at the ſound of drums and kettle-drums; and the wild-fire in pots were caſt with machines from both ſides: our men alſo attack'd 'em with arrows and ſtones; and every one gave marks of the greateſt valor. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan us'd all his endeavors to encourage his ſoldiers. The Mirza Aboubecre did wonders; and his officers firſt ſcal'd the walls, and erected their horſe-tail. At the ſame time the others mounted on all Chap. 43.

Book V. ſides, and enter'd the place, of which they made themſelves maſters.

Timur having advice of the taking of this place, departed from the meadow of Arzendgian, and came before the caſtle of Kemac, the government of which he gave to prince Taharten, becauſe it was no more than ſeven leagues from Arzendgian.

From thence he began his march in earneſt for the conqueſt of the Ottoman empire: and as ſeveral peaſants and laborers were retreated into cavorns and ſteep places, he ſent Emirs to attack 'em. But theſe men having at a diſtance perceiv'd the number of his troops, were ſeiz'd with fear: ſo they came up to 'em, and with ſubmiſſion beg'd quarter; which was granted 'em. The army being encamp'd at Sebaſte, Bayazid Tchempai Eltchik arriv'd there from the Ottoman Porte, accompany'd by freſh ambaſſadors from the emperor Bajazet; he gave an account to the emperor of his negotiation, and preſented the anſwer to the letter he had writ to the Ottoman. This anſwer, which was very haughty and arrogant, made appear that fate had reſolv'd the ruin of this monarchy: and Bajazet, to excuſe his not ſurrendring up the caſtle of Kemac, alledg'd reaſons very unſatisfactory to Timur's council.

The Ottoman ambaſſadors being admitted to audience thro the interceſſion of the princes of the blood, they kiſs'd the imperial carpet; offer'd their preſents, which conſiſted of ten horſes of great price, ſeveral animals proper for the chace, and divers other ritys; and on their knees declar'd the ſubject of their embaſſy. The emperor having heard 'em, fell into a great paſſion, refus'd their preſents, and thus addreſs'd him-

himſelf to the perſon who had been the ſpeaker: Chap. 44.
" If it were not an infamous action for princes
" to put to death an ambaſſador, I won'd this
" hour ſeparate your head from your body."
Yet having a little moderated his fury, he ſaid:
" When fortune ceaſes to be propitious, counſel
" becomes uſeleſs; for tho we had no intention
" to hurt your country, yet we are conſtrain'd
" by that faithleſs prince's manner of acting, to
" make war upon him. Had he ſent Cara Youſef
" to me, and deliver'd up the caſtle of Kemac
" to my lieutenants, he might have remain'd
" quiet in his kingdom. God be thank'd, this
" caſtle has been reduc'd to obedience by the
" valor of our ſoldiers. Tell him from me, that
" ſince he has refus'd to attend to my counſel,
" and has carry'd his obſtinacy ſo far, he muſt
" prepare himſelf like a brave man to ſuſtain the
" attacks of our ever-victorious army."

CHAP. XLIV.

Timur reviews his army.

TIMUR having reſoly'd to attack Bajazet in his own dominions, order'd the troops to rendezvous in the plain of Sebaſte to paſs in review: he poſted himſelf upon an eminence to examine their ranks, arms, and countenance. When any ſquadron paſs'd before him, the captain advanc'd, fell on his knees, and holding his horſe by the bridle, made his compliment to his highneſs generally in theſe terms: " Our
" lives ſhall always be employ'd in the ſervice of
" our great emperor: we will not leave a plant
" or ſhrub in the enemy's lands; but we'll ſack

Book V. "Natolia, and deſtroy the Ottoman." Timur anſwer'd theſe compliments, by encouraging 'em always to behave themſelves like brave men, rather to acquire honor, than in hopes of a reward.

Thus all the army march'd one after the other by Tomans, Hezares, and Couchons, with great ceremony. But when the troops of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, which came freſh from Samarcand, paſs'd by, Timur admir'd their beauty, order and magnificence: for as good order in an army is the ſole and primary cauſe of victory, this Mirza had divided his into ſeveral bodys, which had each a ſtandard of a particular color, that they might rally when at a diſtance from each other, and be known in the heat of a battel. A certain number of ſquadrons had their ſtandards and enſigns red; as likewiſe their cuiraſſes, ſaddles, quivers, belts, lances, bucklers, clubs, and other arms, of the ſame color. Another body of the army was yellow, and another white: there were likewiſe violet and other colors in the ſame order. One regiment had all coats of mail; and another cuiraſſes. The Mirza having made his troops paſs in this pompous manner, paid his compliments to the emperor.

The review laſted from break of day till afternoon, when Timur went to prayers. He order'd the Ottoman ambaſſadors to be conducted thro all the ranks: they admir'd the arms and beauty of the equipages; and were ſeiz'd with fear at the ſight of this great multitude of ſoldiers, having never ſeen any thing like it. Next day Timur gave preſents to the ambaſſadors, and at the audience of leave made the following ſpeech to 'em: "Tell Bajazet, that be-
"cauſe he employs the whole ſtrength of his

"empire

" empire to make war on the infidels, we are Chap. 45.
" ſorry we muſt be conſtrain'd to conduct our
" army into his country; that notwithſtanding
" all our reaſons to make war with him, we
" are yet willing to adjuſt matters with him,
" and pardon him. He need only reſtore to us
" the officers belonging to prince Taharten,
" whom he hath ſeiz'd, and ſend to us one of
" his ſons, whom we will regard as our own
" child, and treat with more courteſy than he
" has ever receiv'd from his father. On theſe
" conditions the empire of Natolia ſhall re-
" main unmoleſted; the war ſhall ceaſe; and
" the inhabitants of his country ſhall continue
" in peace and tranquillity, and have reaſon to
" praiſe their prince's clemency, on whom the
" merit of this action ſhall fall."

CHAP. XLV.

Taking of the caſtle of Harouc.

AFTER the Ottoman ambaſſadors return, the ſpys who had orders to give advice of every thing which paſs'd, inform'd the emperor that in thoſe quarters there was a caſtle nam'd Harouc, into which a great number of peaſants were retreated, having fortify'd the place, with deſign to make an obſtinate defence. The Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Berendac were order'd to ruin this fortreſs: they departed at the ſame time, and being arriv'd before Harouc, they caſt into it ſo great a quantity of wild-fire, that they made the inhabitants retreat from their walls, and no one dar'd ſhew their heads. In the mean while the ſappers

Book V. work'd with a great deal of briskneſs, and ſoon caſt down the walls. A general aſſault was immediately given, and all the peaſants put to the ſword.

CHAP. XLVI.

Timur marches to Cæſarea in Cappadocia, and to Ancora.

WHEN the army was encamp'd in the neighborhood of Sebaſte, the guides brought advice that the road of Tocat was full of foreſts, the paſſages of which are extremely narrow; that Bajazet was arriv'd at Tocat with a numerous army, and had ſeiz'd on the paſſage of the river [1]. This oblig'd Timur to turn towards the ſouthern ſide of Natolia: He took the road to Cæſarea in Cappadocia, and ſent before Ali Sultan Tavachi to hinder the troops going into the city. Timur was ſix days in his march from Sebaſte to Cæſarea, where he ſtaid ſome time, and granted quarter to the inhabitants, as well the criminal as the innocent. Some fled for refuge into caverns and caves; whom the ſoldiers perceiving, pillag'd their effects, becauſe of their being ſo ſuſpicious. As it was the ſeaſon for reaping the corn and pulſe in that country, the ſoldiers had orders to gather enough for the ammunition appointed to 'em. Timur nam'd the Mirza Aboubecre, and the Emir Cheik Noureddin for leaders of the

[1] The river of Czel-Irmac, which falls into the Euxine or black-ſea, and paſſes by Amaſia.

ſcouts:

ſcouts: and he departed for Ancora, arm'd with his cuiraſs and helmet. He march'd three days on the bank of the river nam'd Youlgoun Soui; and the fouth he encamp'd at Kircheher [1], where he had advice that Bajazet's army had been ſeen. Chap. 46.

Hereupon he gave orders for the army to march that way and encamp; and round the camp to dig a trench, which ſhou'd be fortify'd with bucklers and paliſadoes: Timur ſent the Emir Chamelic with a thouſand horſe to gain intelligence. This Emir being favor'd by the night, advanc'd about two leagues towards the enemy's cavalry; and at break of day he diſcover'd he was near Bajazet's camp: ſo he hid himſelf in an ambuſcade to wait a good opnity. As ſoon as the enemy's ſcouts appear'd, he fell upon 'em; and a bloody skirmiſh enſu'd. Bajazet was very much ſurpriz'd, to hear that a handful of Tartars had dar'd attack his ſcouts ſo near his camp; and cou'd not refrain from expreſſing his ſorrow at it to his Emirs: whereupon he decamp'd at ſun-riſe, and took the road to Kircheher. Chamelic ſent a courier to Timur to give him an account of the skirmiſh, and of Bajazet's march. Then Timur ſent Elias Coja, Sainte Maure, Mourad, and others, to the number of ſixty, to gain intelligence of Bajazet: and the Emir Chamelic return'd in the evening to the imperial camp.

At break of day, Timur deliver'd his ſentiments to the Mirzas and Emirs in the following manner: "There are, ſays he, two "different opinions with relation to our con-"duct in the preſent conjuncture: one is, that

[1] A city between Cæſarea and Ancora, long. 66. 30. lat. 39.

Book V. "we wait the enemy here, to give time to our "ſoldiers and horſes to repoſe themſelves from "the fatigues of a long journy; the other, "that we march into the midſt of his country, "and ravage it, which will oblige him to pur- "ſue us with expedition: and ſo we ſhall de- "ſtroy his army, which for the moſt part con- "ſiſts of infantry." He reſolv'd upon the laſt, and order'd his army to march. He left in the camp the Mirza Sultan Huſſein with two thouſand horſe; and he ſent before to Ancora [1] the Emirs Berendac, Beſteri, and other captains of companys, with orders to ſhut up the paſſage againſt the enemys they ſhou'd meet: ſome infantry were order'd to march with 'em, to dig wells in thoſe places where they were to encamp at night. Theſe Emirs march'd according to order, and were follow'd by Abderrahman Tavachi at the head of the infantry. Thoſe who had been ſent out the preceding day to gain intelligence, met a party of the enemy, whom they put to flight, cut off the head of one, and took another priſoner.

In the mean while the emperor Bajazet's ſon advanc'd at the head of a thouſand horſe towards our camp, to obſerve our motions; he paſs'd the night near our army without being perceiv'd, and laid in ambuſcade in a defile. In the morning, when our men return'd from making inroads, he attack'd 'em; and as they were but ſixty in number, he had certainly defeated 'em, tho they fought bravely, and always advanc'd towardss our camp, had he not perceiv'd the ſquadrons of the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, who

[1] A great city in Natolia, the ſame as Anghuria, long. 63, lat. 41.

were

were come to their aſſiſtance: ſo he was con- Chap. 46.
ſtrain'd to abandon 'em, and retreat.

The Emirs and infantry, who had taken the road to Ancora, acquitted themſelves exactly of their orders. The cavalry march'd as far as the city, pillaging all the country: and the infantry who follow'd 'em, dug wells in the road, to get water for the reſt. Timur finding the way ſo good, went in three days to Ancora, and encamp'd near it with all his army. An Emir, nam'd Yacoub, was governor of the fortreſs for the Ottoman emperor: and the gariſon conſiſted of ſeveral of the braveſt men in that country, who were reſolv'd to defend themſelves to the laſt. Next day Timur took horſe, and rode round the city to view it. Then he gave orders for the water of a rivulet which runs into the city to be cut off, and the walls to be ſapp'd, while the ſappers ſhou'd be back'd as uſual. Some of our brave men even ſcal'd a baſtion which looks upon the rivulet, and almoſt made themſelves entire maſters of the town: but advice was brought from our ſcouts, that Bajazet was advancing with deſign to fall upon our army in the rear, and was but at four leagues diſtance. On this Timur forthwith order'd the ſiege to be rais'd, and that thoſe who were mounted on the baſtion ſhou'd come down fighting: and they forthwith decamp'd.

The army march'd not far that day; but encamp'd, leaving the river behind 'em. Then a trench was dug round about the camp, and fortify'd with bucklers and paliſadoes, fires being made all the night. There was a little fountain at the foot of a hill near the paſſage of the enemy's army: and as the Ottomans had no other water than this, Timur ſent a great body of ſoldiers to deſtroy this fountain, and corrupt the water.

When

Book V. When night came, Timur enter'd his cloſet as uſual, to humble himſelf before God, and beſeech him to give him the victory; when in the moſt devout manner he offer'd up the following prayer: "O Lord, who art the great creator "of the univerſe, and my particular benefactor, "it is of thy grace alone that I hold the victo- "rys I have obtain'd during the whole courſe "of my life: for what am I? Does not the "union betwixt my ſoul and body depend on "thy will? And thus, Lord, what thou haſt "done for me, redounds to thy glory; and "thou art the conqueror and the triumpher. "On this occaſion therefore I beg the continua- "tion of thy favor, which thou haſt never yet "refus'd me: why then ſhou'd I deſpair?"

CHAP. XLVII.

Timur ranges his army in order of battel, to fight Bajazet.

TIMUR having ſpent the night in prayer, at break of day gave orders that the drums ſhou'd be beat, and that every one ſhou'd march out of the entrenchments with their arms, to prepare for battel. Then he rang'd his army in order. The left wing was commanded by the Mirzas Charoc and Calil Sultan, who had for their lieutenant-general the Emir Solyman Chah; and the vanguard of this left wing was led by the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, who had under him Ali Sultan. The right wing was under the command of the Mirza Miran Chah, who had for his lieutenant-general the Emir Cheik Noureddin: the vanguard of this wing was given to the

the Mirza Aboubecre, whoſe lieutenant was the Emir Gehan Chah. Chap. 47.

The main-body conſiſted of a vaſt number of the greateſt lords in Aſia: forty colonels at the head of their regiments were on the right, and as many on the left. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan was general of the whole body; and before him was carry'd the great ſtaff, on whoſe top was a red horſe-tail, and upon that a half-moon: he had for his lieutenants-general the Mirzas Pir Mehemed, Omar Cheik, Eskender, and other princes his brothers; with the Emirs Chamſeddin Abbas, Chamelic, Elias Coja, and others. Timur commanded the body of reſerve, compos'd of forty compleat companys well arm'd, with which he deſign'd to ſuccour that part of the army which ſhou'd have moſt need of aſſiſtance. He order'd ſeveral ranks of elephants to be poſted at the head of the whole army, as well to intimidate the enemy, as to ſerve for trophys of the ſpoils of India. They were cover'd with the moſt ſplendid trappings, and as uſual arm'd with towers on their backs, in which were plac'd archers and caſters of wild-fire, to ſpread terror and diſorder wherever they ſhou'd go.

Bajazet alſo took care to range his army in order of battel. The right wing was commanded by Peſir Laus an European, his wife's brother, with twenty thouſand cavalry of Europe, all arm'd in ſteel from head to foot, ſo that nothing cou'd be ſeen but their eyes. Their armor is faſten'd below the foot by a padlock, which except they open, their cuiraſs and helmet can't be taken off.

The left was led by Muſſulman Chelebi ſon of Bajazet, and compos'd of the troops of Natolia. The main-body was under the com-

mand

mand of Bajazet himſelf, having for his lieutenants-general his three ſons Mouſſa, Aiſa, and Muſtafa. The moſt skilful of his five ſons, nam'd Mehemed Chelebi, and ſirnam'd Kirichtchi, was at the head of the rear, and had for his lieutenants Balfouh Pacha, Ali Pacha, Haſan Pacha, Mourad Pacha, Aidbe, and Pachadgic, with a great number of brave captains.

Thus the Ottoman advanc'd in good order, and well equip'd, full of ardor to come to blows with our Tartars, who were not leſs deſirous of that than himſelf.

About ten in the morning, the infantry with their bucklers before 'em poſted themſelves on the neighboring hills. The drum was beat for the battel to begin, and the great cry Souroun made, at the ſound of the large trumpet Kerrenai.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Timur gives Bajazet battel, and gains the victory.

THE two armys rang'd in order of battel came in view of each other, being reſolv'd either to conquer or die. The drums and kettle-drums were beat; and Timur got off his horſe to go to prayers; following the counſel of the Santon Abdalla Euſari: then he remounted; and gave orders for attacking the enemy.

The Mirza Aboubecre, at the head of the vanguard of the right wing, began the battel by a diſcharge of arrows on the enemy's left wing, commanded by Muſtulman Chelebi, Bajazet's eldeſt ſon. The Emirs Gehan Chah and

and Cara Oſman did wonders, breaking thro the left wing. Kirichtchi, the moſt valiant of Bajazet's children, perform'd very noble actions; but when he had prov'd the ſtrength and intrepidity of our ſoldiers, he found it impoſſible to reſiſt 'em, and ſo took up a reſolution to fly with his troops. The Sultan Huſſein, who commanded the vanguard of our left wing, advanc'd vigorouſly upon the enemy's right, of whom he made a cruel ſlaughter. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan on his knees beſought Timur to give him leave to enter the field of battel; and our monarch perceiving our left wing had advanc'd too far, ſent this Mirza to back it. He accordingly march'd thither at the head of all the Behaders [a] whom he commanded; and ruſhing full ſpeed into the midſt of the Ottoman army, he broke their ranks, and put 'em into great diſorder. The Europeans on the other hand, falling upon our men, gave marks of a prodigious valor and invincible courage. Each party ſometimes repuls'd its adverſary, and were as often repuls'd by him: but at length our ſoldiers had the advantage by the death of prince Peſir Laus, as alſo by the ſlaughter of the infantry of the enemy's right wing. The Mirzas Pir Mehemed, Omar Cheik and Eskender, with the Emirs Chamelic, Cheik Noureddin and Berendac, chas'd the enemy's infantry from the hills where it was poſted. Timur perceiving the enemy begin to give way, order'd the Mirzas and Emirs to fall upon the Ottomans with all the army. Theſe generals accordingly advanc'd ſword in hand: and quickly made ſo terrible a ſlaughter, that the great

Chap. 48.

[a] The Behaders are the braveſt men of the army, as the forlorn-hope are among us.

battel

Book V. battel between thoſe of Iran and thoſe of Touran, commanded by Rouſtem and Eſfendiar, was nothing in compariſon to it. Part of the Ottoman army was put to the ſword, and the reſt fled.

While the Mirza Mehemed Sultan routed the enemy's right wing, ſix companys belonging to this Mirza aſcended a hill, which properly was their poſt. Bajazet, obſerving their ſmall number, attack'd 'em at the head of his main-body, and having chas'd 'em from that poſt, drew up his own men there. Our ſoldiers having join'd the Mirza, rally'd; and being ſtrengthen'd with ſeveral regiments, return'd with deſign to attack Bajazet's main-body. The Ottoman emperor having carefully examin'd from the hill the diſpoſition of his army, and perceiving the diſorder, or rather defeat, of his two wings, was ſeiz'd with fear. And as ſeveral of his ſoldiers came to him, who had fled out of both his right and left wing, Timur advanc'd thither himſelf with the Mirza Charoc, and enter'd into the midſt of the enemy. The Mirza Miran Chah, with the Emirs of the right wing, and the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, with the Emir Soly-man Chah, and others of the left wing, haſten'd thither likewiſe; and at the ſame time all the troops, falling upon Bajazet, ſurrounded him with his army, like beaſts in the circle of a chace. The Ottoman defended himſelf like a brave hero, and skilful warrior: he maintain'd his ground all the day, notwithſtanding the miſerable ſtate he was reduc'd to; and when night was come, he deſcended from the hill, and fled. Our ſoldiers diſcharg'd a ſhower of arrows upon him, and ſlew ſeveral of his men, while himſelf eſcap'd from that danger. Several of our brave warriors purſu'd him ſword in hand, killing

ing every one they met; and as the ſun was in the ſixth degree of Leo, it was ſo hot, that moſt of thoſe who fled dy'd of thirſt, there being no water in the place where they went to reſt themſelves. Chap. 49.

After the battel Timur return'd to his camp, and gave thanks to God for this glorious victory. The Mirzas and Emirs on their knees congratulated him, and ſprinkled upon him gold and precious ſtones. This victory happen'd on friday the 19th of Zilcade 804, which anſwers to the year of the Horſe. July 1. 1402.

CHAP. XLIX.

The taking of the Ottoman emperor, who is brought in chains before the throne of the conqueror.

BAJAZET cou'd not fly ſo ſwiftly, but that he was overtaken by our brave men, who went in purſuit of him. The Sultan Mahmoud * Can ſeiz'd him, bound him as a priſoner, and ſent him under a good guard to Timur, to whom he was preſented at the hour of ſun-ſet, with his hands bound, by the great Emirs. Timur perceiving him in this condition, cou'd not ſtifle the tenderneſs of his heart; but was mov'd with compaſſion, and taking pity on the misfortune of ſo great a prince, order'd his hands to be unbound, and he to be brought before him with reſpect. When Bajazet was admitted to the chamber of audience, Timur went to receive him at the door of his tent, with great ceremony; and cauſing him to ſit down by him, he deliver'd himſelf to him after this manner.

* Grand Can of Zagatai.

"Tho

Book V.

Timur's ſpeech to Bajazet.

" Tho accidents in this world happen thro " the will of God, and no one, how powerful " ſoever, can conduct 'em as he pleaſes; yet it " may be juſtly ſaid, that you are the ſole cauſe " of the misfortunes which have befallen you. " They are thorns which your-ſelf have planted, " and a net which you have wove. You have let " your feet ſtray beyond their bounds, and have " conſtrain'd me to march againſt you, to re- " venge my ſelf for your inſults. I cou'd not " reſolve upon any thing, becauſe I knew that " your troops were always at war with the infi- " dels. I have us'd all poſſible ways of mildneſs; " and my intention was, if you had hearken'd " to my counſels, and conſented to a peace, to " have given you powerful ſuccours, both of " mony and troops, to carry on the war for reli- " gion with greater vigor, and to exterminate " the enemys of Mahomet. To prove your " friendſhip, I entreated you to deliver up the " fortreſs of Kemac, and to ſend back the family " and officers of Taharten; as alſo to drive " out of your country Cara Youſef Turcoman, " and ſend to my court an ambaſſador who " might be confided in, to confirm the treatys " of peace between us; but you haughtily re- " fus'd to grant theſe ſmall triſles, and conti- " nu'd in your ſtubborneſs till affairs were drove " to an extremity. Every one knows, if God " had favor'd you with the victory, as he has " me, in what manner you deſign'd to have " treated me and my army. Notwithſtanding " all this, to return thanks to God for my good " fortune in this battel, I will neither treat you " nor your friends ill; and you may reſt ſatisfy'd " as to that point."

Bajazet's anſwer to Timur.

Bajazet, full of confuſion, confeſs'd his fault in theſe terms: " I have indeed done ill in not " follow-

" following the counſels of ſo great an emperor, Chap. 49.
" and have likewiſe receiv'd the puniſhment I
" merited. If your majeſty is willing to pardon
" me, I ſwear that neither my ſelf nor children
" ſhall turn aſide from the paths of obedience to
" your orders."

Timur then gave him a ſplendid veſt, and comforted him by kind promiſes, and by treating him as a great emperor. Bajazet perceiving Timur's generoſity, remonſtrated to him, that his children Mouſſa and Muſtafa were with him in the battel; that his heart being tenderly affected to 'em, he beſought him to order that ſearch might be made after 'em; and if living, that they might be brought to him: adding, that this wou'd be an addition to the obligations he ſhou'd be under to him during the remainder of his life.

Then the emperor order'd the Tavatchis to ſearch every where for Bajazet's children: they found only Mouſſa, whom they brought to Timur, who gave him a veſt, and ſent him to his father, for whom he had order'd a royal pavilion to be erected near his own, commanding Haſan Berlas and Bayazid Tchempai to keep guard at the gate, and furniſh Bajazet with every thing he ſhou'd want. Timur, in uſing Bajazet after this generous manner, imitated the great prophet Mahomet, who, after the conqueſt of Mecca, return'd thanks to God, and thus addreſs'd the inhabitants: " How do you think I ſhall uſe you
" at this time?" They anſwer'd in the proverb:
" You are a generous brother, and the ſon of a
" generous brother: and the generous man par-
" dons when it lies in his power." Mahomet ſaid to 'em, " I tell you the ſame that Joſeph
" told his brethren, who had miſus'd him, I
" have

Timur treats Bajazet with honour and reſpect.

Book V. " have nothing to reproach you with ; may God
" pardon you, for he is infinitely merciful."

CHAP. L.

Timur orders troops to make inroads in divers parts of the Ottoman empire. He ſends relations of his victory to the citys of Iran and Touran, with orders to make public rejoicings.

TIMUR then decamp'd, and went down to the meadow of Ancora, the governor of which place, nam'd Yacoub, came out to caſt himſelf at his feet, and beg his pardon, after having deliver'd up the caſtle to the officers of the court, who reſign'd it to Ali Sultan Tavachi. Then the commiſſarys of the Divan began to receive the tribute impos'd on the inhabitants of conquer'd places, as a ranſom for their lives.

Timur ſent the Mirza Mehemed Sultan northwards to the city of Pruſa [a] in Bithynia, the ſeat of the Ottoman empire ; and he was accompany'd by the Mirza Aboubecre, and the Emirs Gehan Chah, Cheik Noureddin, Sevindgic, and others, with their Tomans. The emperor order'd the Emir Cheik Noureddin to ſtay at Pruſa, and ſeize on all the treaſures of Bajazet, and the riches of that city. He likewiſe commanded the Mirzas and Emirs to ravage all the country as far as to the banks of Iſara Yaca [b], otherwiſe

[a] Call'd Brouſſa by the Turks; it is ſituate at the foot of mount Olympus; and was the ſeat of the Ottoman empire, before the Turks took Adrianople.

[b] A ſhole towards Europe.

nam'd

nam'd the defile of Alexander. He alſo ſent the Mirza Eskender with ſeveral Emirs towards Iconium [3], Akcheher [3], Caraiſcr [3], Olaya [3], and Satalia [4]. Chap. 50.

Afterwards Timur order'd an account of his victory, and the conqueſt of the Ottoman empire, to be drawn up by Moulana Chamſeddin Munchi, and ſent into all the kingdoms of his empire, that public rejoicings might be made. One letter was diſpatch'd to the empreſſes at Sultania; another to the Mirza Omar at Samarcand; another to the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir at Cabul and Zabul in India; another to the Mirza Rouſtem at Chiraz, the ſeat of the kingdom of Perſia; and others into Turkeſtan, Cachgar, Cotan, Bedakchan, Coraſſana, Carezem, Mazendram, Tabareſtan, Ghilan, Azerbijana, Irac-Arabi, Irac-Agemi, Kirman, Kidget-Mecran, and the maritim countrys. The couriers who carry'd theſe letters had each of 'em a guide. On the arrival of one of them at Yezd, the Coja Cayaſeddin Selar Semnani, who had reſided there to receive Timur's revenues, built a magnificent chappel in the middle of the great ſquare, which he nam'd the chappel of victory.

The Mirza Calil Sultan had orders to go with his troops to Samarcand, and from thence to the frontiers of Turkeſtan, and to take care of the limits of the kingdom; he was accompany'd by the Emirs Mobacher and Dolet Timur Tavachi. As the Emir Acbouga, governor of Herat, was dead, the Emir Mezrab had orders to repair to that place, and accompany the Mirza as far as Coraſſana, where he ſhou'd ſtop.

---

[3] Famous citys of Roum. [4] A town of Caramania.

Book V.

Timur departed from Ancora, and in ſix days arriv'd at the fortreſs of Sourihhiſſar, the walls of which place he aſcended, and obſerv'd the neighborhood with circumſpection. He ſent the Mirza Charoc to Ghulhiſſar [4], Eſtanous [5], and Ketir [7], with ten Tomans of the left wing. The emperor afterwards went in two days to Khioutahia [8], a delightful town, as well for the pureneſs of the air, and the charming taſte of the fruits, as for the beauty of its pleaſure-houſes, and the number of its fountains. As this place exceedingly pleas'd him, he ſtaid here a month, and granted quarter to the inhabitants, on paying the accuſtom'd ranſom to his commiſſarys, who at the ſame time ſeiz'd on the goods which Temour Tach had laid up for a long time in this place. As ſoon as Timur was arriv'd there, he ſent the Emirs Chamelic, Abdelkerim, and Hadgi Seifeddin, with ſeveral captains of companys, to Kiarada [9], Coja Eili [1], and Mentecha [2].

Timur, being highly pleas'd with the conqueſt of Natolia, and the taking of the Ottoman emperor priſoner, reſolv'd to make ſolemn feaſts and rejoicings, to recreate himſelf after the fatigues of war. The moſt beautiful ladys of the court were at theſe diverſions, where the beſt wines of Aſia were drank, and the muſicians perform'd extraordinarily. In the mean while the troops ſent out to make inroads,

---

[4] Towns of Roum towards the north.
[7] A town of Roum northwards, long. 62. lat. 43.
[8] Or Chioutaya, a noted city of Roum, long. 61. lat. 41.
[9] A town of Roum near Rhodes.
[1] A province of Roum near Rhodes.
[2] A province near Satalia, which has a town of the ſame name.

plun-

plunder'd and ravag'd all Natolia. The meaneſt ſoldier became in a manner a great lord by the booty he had gain'd; and he who before had not a ſingle horſe, was now maſter of ſeveral ſtables throng'd with 'em. The whole army return'd thanks to their Creator, who had ſo enrich'd 'em. Timur diſtributed the treaſures of Temour Tach among the Emirs, which were in the cuſtody of the commiſſarys; and he reſerv'd nothing for his own uſe, to ſhew 'em that he fought rather for them, than for himſelf. Chap. 51.

CHAP. LI.

The continuation of the hiſtory of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had been ſent to Pruſa in Bithynia.

THE Mirza Mehemed Sultan being departed from Ancora for Pruſa, according to the emperor's order, made ſo much haſte in the five days he was marching, that of the thirty thouſand horſe he had, but four thouſand arriv'd with him at Pruſa. Yet he cou'd not get there ſoon enough to execute the deſign he had in hand; for Muſſulman Chelebi had got there before him, and fled with all the treaſures belonging to his father, which he cou'd take along with him. The principal inhabitants of the city alſo fled with their effects and familys, ſome to mount Olympus, otherwiſe nam'd Kechich Daghi, at the foot of which the city of Pruſa is ſituate; and others to the ſea-ſhore. Our ſoldiers purſu'd 'em, pillag'd and brought 'em away bound. The grand Cheik Chamſeddin Mehemed Jazari, with the chief men of Pruſa,

Book V. was met in the plains of Kurya, by the Cheiks Mehemed Bocari, and Chamſeddin Fanari, and others, who were gone out to make inroads: the pillag'd the Cheik, and brought him with his ſon to the Emir Cheik Noureddin. Bajazet's wife and two daughters, who had hid themſelves in a houſe in the town of Yenicheher [3], were taken; as was likewiſe the daughter of the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, king of Bagdad, whom Bajazet had demanded in marriage for his ſon Muſtafa, and who ſtaid at Pruſa with her attendants, while her father return'd to Bagdad from the country of the Ottomans, to which he had fled for refuge from our troops.

As for Cara Youſef; as ſoon as our army arriv'd in the neighborhood of Cæſarea in Cappadocia, he fled from Pruſa to Hille, and from thence to the deſart of Arabia.

After Pruſa was reduc'd under the emperor's obedience with very little reſiſtance, the Emir Cheik Noureddin enter'd the caſtle, and ſeiz'd on what was left of Bajazet's riches, among which were a great deal of ſilver-mony, veſſels and furniture of gold and ſilver, pearls and precious ſtones, rich ſtuffs, ſplendid habits, and other curioſitys which had been laying up together a long time. Ali Semnani and Seifeddin Touni, Bitikchis or ſecretarys to the imperial council, wrote an inventory of theſe riches.

When they had carry'd away the wealth of the place, the city and caſtle were pillag'd by the ſoldiers; and afterwards the houſes were ſet on fire, which being built of wood, were ſoon conſum'd.

Burning of the city of Pruſa.

[3] Four leagues from Pruſa, and ſix days journy from Conſtantinople; the ſame as Yenitçhe.

As

As soon as the troops which had been left behind were arriv'd, the Mirza Mehemed Sultan march'd to the sea-shore, and sent to Nice [4] the Mirza Aboubecre with ten thousand men; which is one of the most famous citys of Natolia, the air and water being very wholesom. Near it is a lake two days journy in circumference, whose water is exceeding sweet and agreeable. This city is situate near the Thracian Bosphorus. Chap. 51.

Timur sent the Emir Sevindgic with a great body of the army to Kianende [5], and along the sea-shore; and this Emir pillag'd all that country. The Mirza Aboubecre being come to Nice, march'd as far as the sea, slaying and plundering all he met. Mussulman Chelebi was there with several peasants: but having again perceiv'd the fury of our soldiers, he found it was impossible for the Ottomans, in ever so great numbers, to resist 'em: so he embark'd, and cross'd the sea. *A seasonable retreat*, says the proverb, *is sometimes as good as a victory.* Having pass'd the Bosphorus, he went to Sara Yaca; and his wife and effects fell into the hands of our soldiers. After the pillage of Nice, our soldiers ruin'd that town, and went as far as Yenitche, ravaging every thing, and making the people slaves. The Mirza Aboubecre sent advice of the taking of Nice to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, assuring him that all the country was reduc'd under the emperor's obedience, and [illegible] Mussulman Chelebi was fled with great dis[illegible]ty into Europe. The Mirza receiv'd this

[4] A city of Bithynia, famous for the first general council held in it: long. 58. 35. lat. 43.

[5] A town on the gulf of Nice.

Book V. news at his camp in his meadow of Micalidge, of which he ſent word to the emperor, as alſo of the ſtate of other affairs, by a hundred men, who immediately departed. He alſo ſent by the ſame perſons a Choncar, which is a very large bird of prey, beſides ſeveral other preſents of great price. The Mirza Aboubecre alſo ſent a Choncar by Ac Sultan.

Between Pruſa and Kioutahia, which are two days journy from each other, is a mountain full of very cloſe trees, above four leagues in length, into which ſeveral peaſants had fled for refuge: they attack'd the Mirza's meſſengers in a defile with advantage. Our men, tho far inferior to 'em, ſtood their ground; and thro Timur's good fortune, Mehemed Couroumichi Yeſouri, Ibrahim Ahmed, Facreddin, Mehemed Calander, and Keſer, defended themſelves with ſo much bravery, that a great ſlaughter enſued: and the enemy were conſtrain'd to retreat, and let 'em paſs by. They had the honor to ſalute the emperor at Kioutahia, and offer their preſents, after having given him an account of all that had happen'd.

The Emir Cheik Noureddin having ſeparated the gold and precious ſtones from the other riches of Bajazet's treaſury, of which he had taken poſſeſſion, deliver'd 'em to Chamſeddin Almaleghi, whom he ſent to Timur under a convoy of ſeveral brave men. Chamſeddin carry'd all to his highneſs at Kioutahia. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan being return'd from Micalidge, took up his quarters at Pruſa, where he was join'd by the Mirza Aboubecre, who was come from making inroads. The Emir Sevindgic alſo came there, after having pillag'd the villages on the ſea-ſhore, and ruin'd Kianende. Then the Mirza Mehemed Sultan decamp'd with all his troops,

troops, and went down to the meadow of Ye- Chap. 52.
nicheher, contiguous to that of Pruſa, where
the Mirza Aboubecre, with the emperor's per-
miſſion, marry'd Bajazet's eldeſt daughter.

CHAP. LII.

Account of the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were gone out to make inroads.

THE Mirza Sultan Huſſein, and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were gone out to make inroads in the ſouthern parts of Natolia, plunder'd Kepec a Turcoman prince, and took the towns of Akcheker and Caraiſer, in which places the Emir Solyman Chah eſtabliſh'd governors to defend the inhabitants from inſults. He plac'd Tcherkes Soutchi in Akcheker, impos'd a tax on the towns for the ranſom of the inhabitants lives, and plunder'd every one who oppos'd him. He pillag'd the town of Tchaker Boulagh, and the hord of Caoumi Hamid; and ſeiz'd on ſo many horſes, camels and ſheep, that the ſoldiers were not able to bring 'em away. After having taken the town of Chehermata, he ſtop'd at Iconium: he took the tribute of Gane[†] from the ſoldiers he had made priſoners, which he ſent to Timur. The Seid Coja, ſon of Cheik Ali Behader, went to the country of Aidin, which he ravag'd, killing all the enemys he met as far as the ſea-ſhore. Bajazet's treaſure was carry'd upon mules and camels to Kioutahia, where it was preſented to Timur by the

[†] The tribute due to a prince from captives.

Emir

Book V. Emir Cheik Nourcddin, with Bajazet's family, and his beautiful ſlaves, who were good dancers, cou'd ſing well, and play finely upon muſic. The generous emperor ſent to Bajazet his wife, nam'd Deſtina[s], daughter of Laus an European, with his daughter and all his domeſtics; but he was deſirous that that princeſs, who till then had been tolerated in the Chriſtian religion, even in Bajazet's ſeraglio, ſhou'd embrace Mahometaniſm. The Cheik Chamſeddin Mehemed Jazari, who had been carry'd away priſoner of war, was likewiſe preſented to the emperor. They brought to court the Emir Mehemed, ſon of Caraman, who had for twelve years been kept in chains by Bajazet: Timur honor'd him with a veſt and belt, and gave him the government of all the province of Caramania, with Iconium, Larenda, Acſerai, Anzarya, Alaya[t], and their dependences; and thro the protection of our monarch, all theſe provinces remain'd without oppoſition in the hands of this Emir, and after him in his children.

CHAP. LIII.

Timur departs from Kioutahia.

AFTER Timur had ſtaid a month at Kioutahia in the delights of banquets and plays, he departed from thence, and was join'd

[s] The European romances call her Roxana, and ſay that Timur kept her for his own uſe; the truth of which this author denies.

[t] Citys of Natolia.

in

in his way by the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had left the Emir Chamſeddin Abbas with the baggage at Cheherno *, and was ſet out with the Mirza Aboubecre, the Emir Gehan Chah, and Sevindgic Behader, to return to court, where he kiſs'd the ground before the emperor, and offer'd his preſents. Chap. 53.

* Or Yenicheher.

Timur, who as emperor was oblig'd to take care both of church and ſtate, iſſu'd out a ſevere order that the brave Sainte Maure and his brother Mourad ſhou'd be put to death, for ſeveral crimes they had committed; and that even his ſon and other brothers ſhou'd be ſought for, and treated in the ſame manner: which order was immediately put in execution.

The Mirza Mehemed Sultan, with the Mirza Aboubecre, and the Emirs of his court, return'd to join the baggage, which had been left at Pruſa and Cheherno. Timur march'd towards Tangouzliq, paſs'd the mountain of Alcountach, and encamp'd in an agreeable meadow near it. He then gave orders that the Coja Firouz, prince of Iſra Yaca, ſhou'd be put to death; and he afterwards made preparations for feaſts and banquets, with muſic and dancing; and the wine was ſerv'd about by the moſt beautiful damſels of the country. Timur invited Bajazet to theſe entertainments; that as he had taſted the bitterneſs of his wrath, he might alſo partake of the ſweetneſs of his friendſhip. Bajazet was conducted into the aſſembly with great honors, and Timur did every thing he cou'd to pleaſe him: he ſpar'd neither careſſes, nor expreſſions of kindneſs and affection; and in fine, he even granted him the inveſtiture of the kingdom of Natolia, which he had poſſeſs'd before his diſgrace: then the crown was plac'd on his head, and the ſcepter put into his hand, with the

Book V. the patents uſually given to princes for their governments. After this feaſt Timur departed, and continu'd his road towards Tangouzliq.

CHAP. LIV.

Timur diſpatches couriers into divers countrys. The arrival of ſeveral ambaſſadors.

TIMUR ſent the doctor Bedreddin Ahmed, ſon of the Cheik Chamſeddin Mehemed Jazari, into Egypt, in quality of ambaſſador to the Sultan Farrudge ſon of Barcoc; the ſubject of whoſe embaſſy was compriz'd in this letter.

Timur's letter to the Sultan of Egypt.

" By the grace of the Almighty, the empire " of Natolia is now reduc'd under our autho- " rity, and join'd to our dominions. Our will " at preſent is, that the mony which is coin'd " at Grand-Cairo, and throughout all Egypt, " have our inſcription; and likewiſe that the " prayer of the Coutbe be made in our auguſt " name, and with our titles. We will alſo that " without delay you ſend Atilmich to our court: " and if, inſpir'd by your evil genius, you don't " readily execute theſe orders, we let you know, " that at our return from the Ottoman country, " which will be ſhortly, we ſhall march to " Grand-Cairo at the head of our ever-victo- " rious army. And that you may not pretend " ignorance, we ſend you this ambaſſador, " whoſe merit you are ſufficiently acquainted " with."

Bedreddin departed with full inſtructions the Octob. 25. 1402. firſt of Rabiulevel 803, accompany'd by ſeveral couriers, who carry'd relations of the conqueſt of Natolia into Syria, with orders to make public

public rejoicings. Moulana Omar conducted the ambaſſador as far as Satalia, where he embark'd for Alexandria, from whence he was to go to Cairo; and Omar return'd after they had ſet ſail. Chap. 54.

Timur likewiſe ſent two ambaſſadors to Conſtantinople, vulgarly nam'd Eſtanbol, to the Tecour, or Greek emperor, to ſummon him to pay the tribute and cuſtoms. He afterwards ſent two meſſengers to find out Muſſulman Chelebi, Bajazet's ſon, who had fled to Iſra Yaca, and reſided at Ghuzelhiſſar[1], which his father had built over-againſt Conſtantinople. Theſe meſſengers had orders to tell him that he muſt repair to court forthwith, or at leaſt ſend ſome money to Timur; otherwiſe the army wou'd immediately croſs the ſea to ſeek him, which he wou'd have cauſe to repent. Some time after, the ambaſſadors who had been ſent to the Greek emperor return'd, accompany'd with two others, who came to make their maſter's ſubmiſſion to Timur. They had the honor of an audience; and having notify'd the Tecour their maſter's reſpects and obedience to his highneſs's orders, they declar'd his conſent to pay an annual tribute, and the cuſtoms, and to do every thing he cou'd deſire of him. At length the ambaſſadors offer'd their preſents, which conſiſted of gold florins, and ſeveral curioſitys. Timur impos'd on 'em the tribute he thought reaſonable; and they confirm'd it by a ſolemn treaty. Afterwards he gave 'em veſts, and permitted 'em to return home. Embaſſy to the emperor of Conſtantinople.

[1] A town in Europe, built by Bajazet. There is another of the ſame name in Natolia, near Tire, on the river Menderan.

When

Book V. When Timur was arriv'd at Boulouk *, he was join'd by the meſſengers he had ſent to Muſſulman Chelebi; and with them came the Cheik Ramadan in quality of ambaſſador, with ſeveral preſents of animals, horſes and florins. This ambaſſador, who was a very illuſtrious perſon, having been prime miniſter to Bajazet, and grand Cadi of the empire, brought a letter from his maſter to Timur in theſe terms. "I have the "honor to call my ſelf your highneſs's ſervant. "If you have had the goodneſs to pardon my "father, and have done him the honor to grant "him a place in your imperial aſſembly, accord-"ing to his rank; I have all the reaſon in the "world to confide in your highneſs's bounty; "and whenever you ſhall order it, I will come "to the foot of your imperial throne, and per-"form the dutys of a faithful ſervant in what-"ever you ſhall pleaſe to command me."

Timur receiv'd the letter and the ambaſſador's ſpeech very graciouſly, and return'd the following anſwer. "All that ought to have happen'd "in this affair has happen'd: fate has executed "its project. We have pardon'd all that is "paſs'd: and ſo your maſter need only come "here without any fear, that there may remain "no more animoſity between us, but that I "may give him ſome marks of my favor." Then Timur preſented a belt and a cap of gold to the ambaſſador, and diſmiſs'd him.

Advice was afterwards brought that the Sultan Mahmoud Can, titular emperor of Zagatai, who by Timur's order was gone to make inroads in the Ottoman country, had been ſeiz'd with a violent diſtemper at Ketchic Bourlough,

* A town of Natolia, long. 61. lat. 40.

and

and had paſs'd from this world into the other: at which news Timur was very much afflicted. Chap. 55.

In the mean while the Emirs ravag'd the maritim countrys of Natolia. The Emir Chamelic pillag'd Kerchic Bourlough, Acyaca, and Satalia, ſituate on the ſea-ſhore. The Cheiks Ali Sebiai and Hadgi Seiduz were ſlain. The provinces of Mentecha and Teke *Eili* were afterwards ruin'd; and the Emirs return'd to court laden with booty. During autumn Timur lay encamp'd at Tangouzliq, to which place the Seid Coja return'd, after having pillag'd Aidin. As it was exceeding hot, and the air infected at Tangouzliq, ſeveral ſoldiers fell ſick and died; and even Seid Coja was near the point of death, but the joy he conceiv'd at the good reception his highneſs gave him, reſtor'd him to his health.

In this place is a fountain, whoſe water petrifys when it ſtagnates; and ſome ſoldiers, who being ignorant of its effects, had drank of it, loſt their lives. A petrifying water.

CHAP. LV.

Timur regulates the winter-quarters.

TIMUR held a council with the Mirzas and great Emirs touching the diſtribution of the winter-quarters: he appointed a town to each colonel, and ſent orders to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan to paſs the winter at the town of Magni Siah [3] in the province of Serhan Eili *. This Mirza departed from Pruſa to Micalidge, * Or Saroucan Eili.

[3] Long. 60. lat. 40.

where

Book V. where he ſtaid ſeveral days; from whence he march'd to Balikiſra, which he pillag'd, and encamp'd in a meadow. In the night he was attack'd by Elias Soubachi at the head of a number of peaſants, of which Veſador had given advice, tho too late; for the enemy came to ſurprize our camp, while part of the ſoldiers were gone to make inroads, and the others were aſleep in the camp without any precaution. The Mirza immediately took horſe, and ſally'd out of the camp; and the Emir Gehan Chah with the other Emirs having join'd him, they fell upon the enemy, and having ſlain ſeveral, and conſtrain'd the reſt to fly, they encamp'd in that meadow, till the Mirza's equipage arriv'd there. The Emirs Gehan Chah and Sevindgic were ſent from this place to the town of Birana to pillage it. The Mirza after that went to Magni Siah, where he paſs'd the winter; this town is ſituate at the foot of a mountain, waſh'd by many rivulets, the waters of which are wonderfully good, and the air is ſweet, even in winter.

The Mirza Charoc, with the troops of the left wing, had the province of Ghermyan-Eili for his winter-quarters; and he encamp'd between Olouc-Bourlough and Ketchic-Bourlough.

Timur departed from Tangouzliq, and march'd to Dougourlic, a town full of goods and all ſorts of delicious fruits, to the inhabitants of which he granted quarter on the payment of the tribute for their ranſom. Then he croſs'd the river of Mendouras * on a bridg which Temourtach had built, and encamp'd on the other ſide,

* Or Madre, a river which paſſes by Tire in Natolia, and Aidin, and falls into the Archipelago.

where

where he gave audience to the Emirs Mehemed and Eſfendiar, ſons of the Emir Mehemed prince of Mentecha, who made him a preſent of a thouſand horſes. Timur, after giving 'em an honorable reception, preſented 'em with a veſt, a belt and a crown. Eſfendiar follow'd the court, and Mehemed conſented to pay the tax, and return'd to the place of his reſidence, with the receivers Elias Coutchin, Firouz Chah, and Mirouz Chah Cherbetdar. Timur being arriv'd at Ghuzelhiſſar, ſtaid there ſome days till the entire payment of the ranſom was made. Near this place was a mountain, in which two hundred peaſants had fortify'd themſelves: theſe raſh fellows ſlew and pillag'd our ſoldiers, who were gone out to fetch in wood and forage. Timur being inform'd of this, reſolv'd to attack 'em in the night. Several of our ſoldiers who were enrag'd, inveſted the mountain, and at break of day fell upon theſe villains, whom they cut in pieces, and afterwards return'd to the camp. The doctor Abdelgebbar Carizmi fell ſick, and died in this place. Chap. 55.

Timur departed ſome days after from Ghuzelhiſſar, and went to encamp at Ayazlic, where he ſtaid ſeveral days: he order'd 'em to pay the tribute for their ranſom, and eſtabliſh'd a governor, and a comptroller of the finances. From hence he went to encamp before Tirè, one of the moſt noted citys of Natolia, the inhabitants of which he oblig'd to pay the ranſom for their lives: and thoſe who were gone with the Emir Mehemed prince of Mentecha, to receive the ſums theſe people were tax'd at, return'd loaded with ready mony, jewels and divers curioſitys, and bringing with 'em ſeveral horſes and other beaſts, from this Emir; all which they preſented to Timur.

Book V.

In the mean while the emperor was inform'd that there was an exceeding ſtrong place on the ſea-ſhore, built of free-ſtone, ſurrounded with the ſea on three ſides, and on the other with a deep ditch, entirely built with lime and mortar, from the foundation to the top; that it was inhabited by Europeans, and nam'd Ezmir or Smyrna; that the Greeks eſteem it a holy place, and go in pilgrimage thither with great devotion; that near it is another fortreſs on the ridge of a mountain, alſo nam'd Ezmir, but inhabited by Muſſulmans, who inceſſantly wage war with the others, becauſe of the difference of their religion; and as the Smyrna of the Chriſtians is ſurrounded by the ſea on three ſides, the Europeans ſupply 'em with ammunition and all neceſſarys, looking upon this place as of great importance, ſeeing it is at the extremity of Aſia and of the Muſſulman country; that it had never been taken by any Mahometan prince, nor paid tribute to any; that Amurat, Bajazet's father, had ſeveral times appear'd before it at the head of a formidable army, but to no purpoſe; and that Bajazet had laid ſiege to it ſeven years in vain; that this place, as ſtrong as that of Caiber[1], very much moleſted the Muſſulmans, whoſe blood was always flowing into the ſea like torrents.

[1] A place celebrated in the oriental romances.

CHAP.

CHAP. LVI.

Timur beſieges Smyrna, and takes it.

WHEN Timur was inform'd of the ſtate of Smyrna, his zeal for religion inſpir'd him with the thoughts that it was his duty to deliver the Muſſulmans from troubles, by exterminating their enemys. Whereupon he ſent thither the Mirza Pir Mehemed, ſon of Omar Cheik, the Emir Cheik Noureddin, and others, to ſummon 'em forthwith to embrace the Muſſulman religion, according to Mahomet's order; which if they ſhou'd be ſo fortunate as to do, they ſhou'd be well treated, and partake of his favors; and if they wou'd leave their obſtinacy, tho they ſtill remain'd Chriſtians, and pay the tribute, he wou'd fix the ſum, and order the receit; but if they undertook to defend themſelves, he wou'd order 'em all to be put to the ſword.

The Mirzas and Emirs being arriv'd before Smyrna, ſent an ambaſſador to invite the inhabitants to turn Muſſulmans, as well by menaces as promiſes: but as they were predeſtin'd to periſh, it all prov'd in vain. Mahmous, the governor, had ſent to demand ſuccours of all the European princes, ſo that there was aſſembled a great number of the braveſt Chriſtian captains, or rather a band of deſperate wretches, who had laid up ammunitions in the place. Our generals ſent advice of all this to Timur, who reſolv'd to march thither in perſon. He left the baggage at the foot of the mountain of Tire; and tho it was winter, and great rains had fallen,

Book V. yet he took horſe that he might acquire the merit of this religious war. He arriv'd at Smyrna
Dec. 6. 1402. on ſaturday the ſixth of Jumaziulevel 805, and ſent orders to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who was in his winter-quarters at Magni-Siah, to repair to him. The ſame order was ſent to the Mirzas Miran Chah and Aboubecre, as alſo to the Emir Gehan Chah and others.

At Timur's arrival before Smyrna, the drums and kettledrums were beat, and the great cry made by the whole army. The place was immediately attack'd on the land-ſide; and each general order'd the ſappers to work, and the machines and battering-rams to be got ready over-againſt his reſpective poſt; while arrows were ſhot, and pots of wild-fire thrown upon the gates of the caſtle. The Emir Chamelic built in the midſt of the water, great ſcaffolds with three feet, near one another, on which they laid planks: and from the two ſides of the caſtle, to the place where the feet of the ſcaffolds touch'd the ground, they made an even way, which they ſecur'd on each ſide, ſo that the ſoldiers might fight upon it with ſafety, as if they were on land. The Muſſulmans, arm'd with their bucklers, mounted the ſcaffolds, from whence they gave aſſaults upon the caſtle: and as the way was ſhut up to the ſea-ſide, it was impoſſible to bring any ſuccour to the beſieg'd.

In the mean while the Mirzas Mehemed Sultan and Miran Chah arriv'd, having left the baggage at Magni-Siah under the conduct of the Emir Chamſeddin Abbas: which re-inforcement did not a little ſerve to forward the ſiege. Then Timur order'd a general aſſault. The Emirs of Tomans, and the colonels of Hezares, advanc'd with their troops, againſt their

their reſpective poſts; and the aſſault laſted from morning till evening, and from evening till morning, wherein the braveſt men of both ſides perform'd actions of the greateſt valor. If the attack was carry'd on with reſolution, the defence was equally ſo. The battering-rams and other machines beat down the walls and towers; and the dauntleſs beſieg'd never ceas'd throwing pots of naphtha and wild-fire, arrows and ſtones. In the mean while it rain'd in ſuch abundance, that a ſecond deluge ſeem'd approaching; notwithſtanding which, the indefatigable Timur was always giving orders to his generals, and exciting his ſoldiers. After the ſappers had done undermining, and prop'd up the baſtions and courtines with ſtakes, they put in a great number of faſcines done over with naphtha; which having ſet on fire, the walls on a ſudden fell down, and with 'em ſeveral of the beſieg'd, who were thereby deſtroy'd. The Muſſulmans forc'd the enemy to quit the breaches, and then enter'd the place, returning thanks to God, and crying out, *Victory!* A few eſcap'd ſlaughter by caſting themſelves into the ſea, and ſwimming to the veſſels; while others were drown'd. After our ſoldiers had put the inhabitants of Smyrna to the ſword, they raz'd the houſes, as well of the city as of the caſtle, caſting their arms and movable goods into the ſea. There were come from certain parts of Europe great ſhips nam'd Caraca, with two maſts, and ſome with more, which brought over ſoldiers and arms to ſuccour the inhabitants. When they were come near the place, and beheld the town and caſtle in ruins, they were ſtruck with fear, and anchor'd. Timur order'd that ſome of the Chriſtians heads ſhou'd be thrown into theſe ſhips, which the ſlingers of wild-fire ac- Chap. 56.

Book V. cordingly did. The mariners ſeeing their companions heads, return'd in fear, and fruſtrated of their hopes. From the beginning of the ſiege to the ruin of the place there paſs'd but two weeks; which very much aſtoniſh'd the men of that country, who were acquainted with the ſtrength of the place; and eſpecially Bajazet. Every one acknowledg'd that Timur was the greateſt and moſt formidable monarch that ever appear'd in Aſia. The author of this hiſtory in his travels afterwards paſs'd by the walls of Smyrna, which then belong'd to the Muſſulmans; and one of his companions having related to him the hiſtory of this place, the author expreſt himſelf in theſe words: "Smyrna hath been ruin'd by "Timur in leſs than two weeks, tho the Ot- "toman emperor in vain beſieg'd it ſeven years; "judge from hence the power and conduct of "each of 'em."

CHAP. LVII.

Second arrival of ambaſſadors from Bajazet's ſons.

DURING theſe tranſactions the Cheik Ramadan, who came once before in quality of ambaſſador to Timur from Muſſulman Chelebi, arriv'd here again; and being admitted to an audience, offer'd large preſents of horſes and other animals, curious ſtuffs, and florins of gold; and with abundance of ſubmiſſion made the following ſpeech: "I take the liberty to "repreſent to your highneſs, that ſince you have "been pleas'd to pardon the emperor Bajazet, "and load him with honors and favors, every

"one

" one is freed from the fears he was in, and Chap. 57.
" even hopes for advancement thro your high-
" neſs's benevolence. The prince Muſtulman
" my maſter, who looks upon himſelf as one of
" the meaneſt ſervants of your court, and is re-
" ſolv'd to obey the orders with which you
" ſhall honor him, with all imaginable ſincerity,
" waits with impatience for an opportunity to
" give you the true marks of his reſpect, and
" his deſire to expoſe his life in your highneſs's
" ſervice, to whom may God continue ever-
" laſting glory and proſperity."

The ambaſſador having ended his ſpeech, Timur was touch'd with compaſſion for the deplorable condition to which Muſtulman was reduc'd: he confirm'd him in the principality of all the country of Iſra Yaca [1], for which he iſſu'd out patents, which he ſeal'd as uſual with his red hand; he honor'd the ambaſſador with a magnificent veſt, and a horſe richly capariſon'd, with a ſaddle of gold; and having given him a veſt wove with gold, a crown, and a belt for Muſtulman Chelebi, he diſmiſs'd him.

About the ſame time arriv'd an ambaſſador, nam'd Cotobeddin, from Iſſa Chelebi, another of Bajazet's ſons: being admitted to an audience, he kiſs'd the earth, and made his preſents; which Timur having accepted, the ambaſſador deliver'd his meſſage, declaring his maſter's reſpect, and obedience to whatever his highneſs ſhou'd order. Then he return'd, after having receiv'd the uſual honors, and the teſtimonys of friendſhip for his maſter.

Timur afterwards gave orders to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan to beſiege the caſtle of Fodgia [2],

[1] Iſra Yaca is Turky in Europe.
[2] A town on the gulf of Smyrna.

Book V. ſituate on the ſea-ſhore, a day's journy from Smyrna, becauſe ſeveral European Chriſtians had retreated thither. The Mirza immediately departed, and encamp'd before it; and was about to beſiege it in form, when the governors of the place ſtruck with terror at the name of Timur, came out to caſt themſelves at the Mirza's feet; and with ſubmiſſion and obedience gave conſent to pay the tribute, provided quarter was granted the inhabitants. The Mirza agreed to their propoſal, impos'd a tribute on 'em, and nam'd commiſſarys to receive it; after which he return'd with his Emirs and troops to Magni-Siah, where he had left his baggage.

CHAP. LVIII.

Timur departs from Smyrna.

AFTER the deſtruction of Smyrna, and the extirpation of the enemys of the law, Timur took care to reſtore peace and quiet to the Muſſulmans who inhabited the other caſtle, giving 'em veſts, bucklers, cuiraſſes, bows and arrows, ſabres, lances, and all ſorts of arms, to enable 'em to carry on the war of religion in theſe frontiers againſt the Europeans, and hinder the Grecian Chriſtians ever paſſing into Aſia this way; and he order'd 'em to build a ſtrong citadel near the place where Smyrna ſtood.

After Timur had deliver'd the Muſſulmans from the continual inſults they receiv'd from the Chriſtians of Smyrna, loaded 'em with favors, and ſuccor'd 'em with arms and mony, he departed from this country, and went to encamp

at

at Ayazlic, where he was join'd by the Emir Solyman Chah, who had departed from Ancora to make inroads, return'd by Eſouac, and join'd the Mirza Charoc at Caraigadge; but he came alone to court, and after his audience went back to join the ſaid Mirza. Chap. 58.

An European nam'd Soba, prince of the iſland of Chio [1], in which maſtich grows, having heard by credible perſons of the great valor and power of Timur, ſent him ſeveral preſents by an ambaſſador, whom he order'd to acquaint him that he was one of his meaneſt ſervants, willingly conſented to pay the tribute, and was ready to obey his highneſs's orders, hoping Timur wou'd deſign to give him ſome marks of his clemency. The ambaſſador being arriv'd at the imperial camp, was admitted to an audience, where he made an harangue in the form his maſter had inſtructed him. Timur handſomly receiv'd the king of Chio's offer of ſervice, promis'd protection to him and his ſubjects; and after having fix'd the ſum for a tribute, made a peace with him: he gave a veſt to the ambaſſador, whom he honor'd, and permitted to return home. Embaſſy from the prince of Chio.

Timur then ſent the Mirza Eskender, ſon of Omar Cheik, and Ali Sultan Tavachi, to plunder the country of Bezem; they enter'd the capital of it, and having taken the ranſom for the inhabitants lives, return'd to the imperial camp.

After this Timur decamp'd from Ayazlic, and being arriv'd at Tangouzliq, he was join'd by the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had left his winter-quarters at Magni-Siah, and having taken the road of Alicheher before the reſt, came

[1] An iſland in the Archipelago.

to

Book V. to court with a ſmall number of his domeſtics. Timur order'd him to march at the head of the troops of the right wing by the road of Ancora, and rejoin the imperial camp at Caſarea. This Mirza ſtaid at Tangouzliq till all his troops had join'd him. Timur departed from thence for Sultanhiſſar; he order'd a great number of peaſants, who were got together in the neighboring mountains, to be put to the ſword; and he gave the towns of Chioutahia, Tangouzliq, and Caracheher, as well as the demeſn of the province of Ghermyan-Eili, to Yacoub Chelebi, to whom the principality of theſe provinces fell by right of ſucceſſion. This Yacoub had formerly fled from Bajazet into Syria, after the conqueſt of which kingdom he follow'd Timur's court. The emperor iſſu'd out his patents to this purpoſe; and honoring him with a veſt and belt, left him in this place, the principality of which remains in the hands of his children to this day.

The court took the road of Olouc-Bourlough, where it was join'd by the Mirza Charoc, who was come from his winter-quarters. As this place had not yet ſurrender'd, Timur gave orders that it ſhou'd be attack'd. It was taken in a very ſhort time: and as the Emir Gelaleliſlam had been ſlain by an arrow, all the men were put to the ſword, and the women carry'd away captive, after the razing of the place.

CHAP. LIX.

Taking of the towns of Egridur and Naſibine.

IN the province of Hamid-Eili is a lake of ſweet water, five leagues in length, and four in breadth, into which ſeveral rivers fall, and go out again by other paſſages; and round it are kitchen-gardens, orchards, and cultivated lands. On the bank of the lake ſtands a town nam'd Egridur, built of free-ſtone; three of its ſides are ſurrounded by the lake, and the fourth by the mountain. This lake is nam'd Falac Abad by ſome hiſtorians. Near the town, in the midſt of the lake, are two iſles; one nam'd Ghuliſtan, and the other Naſibine: in the latter, which is exceeding large, is built a fortreſs with houſes and gardens. The people of the neighboring places had convey'd thither their mony and beſt effects; and abundance of ſoldiers were got into it, who had laid up ſtores of all ſorts of ammunition, believing themſelves ſafe, becauſe of the lake which ſurrounds the place. Timur being inform'd of all this, conceiv'd it wou'd redound to his honor to conquer this place: whereupon he order'd the baggage to be conducted by the road of Akcheher.

About this time Bajazet falling ſick, Timur order'd ſeveral skilful phyſicians of his court, as Moulana Azeddin, Maſaoud Chirazi, and Moulana Gelaleddin Arab, to attend him with the ſame care as they wou'd uſe towards himſelf: and Bajazet was conducted with the baggage,

Timur

Book V. Timur departed from Olouc-Bourlough, and in two days and one night arriv'd at Egridur the
Feb. 28. 1403. 17th of Regeb 805 in the morning. Next day the Mirzas and Emirs march'd towards the walls of the town: ſome aſcended the mountain, while others attack'd the gate by the foot of the mountain; they gave aſſaults on all ſides, and ſoon made themſelves maſters of the town, which they enter'd in a furious manner, and put moſt of the inhabitants to the ſword, a few only eſcaping to Naſibine in boats.

Then Timur caus'd floats to be made of the skins of oxen and horſes, on which the Mirzas and Emirs croſt over to attack Naſibine, which they ſurrounded, ordering the drums to be beat, and the great cry made. The inhabitants were ſurpriz'd, not imagining they cou'd have been beſieg'd by water. The governor Cheik Baba, perceiving he was unable to defend himſelf, went out, and beſought the Mirzas to intercede for him. They brought him to Timur, before whom he kiſs'd the ground, ſubmiſſively begging pardon and quarter. Timur order'd that he and his family ſhou'd follow the army. Thus Naſibine was taken by our troops, who brought to the camp all the riches they cou'd find, which Timur diſtributed among 'em.

Then Mobacher's ſon arriv'd from the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, to give notice that this prince was fallen ſick. Timur was exceedingly griev'd, and ſent a skilful phyſician to him immediately, to diſcover the true ſtate of his illneſs, and bring him back certain advice of it.

The court at length decamp'd, and march'd toward Akcheher; they met the troops of the left wing, and the Mirza Charoc's camp. This prince made a feaſt for Timur, and offer'd his preſents; as did likewiſe the Sultan Huſſein and the

the Emir Solyman Chah, who ſtrove to excel each other in entertaining the emperor. At this time the Emir Mehemed Caraman came to court from Iconium; and under the name of a ranſom, he preſented ſuch vaſt ſums of ſilver mony, curious ſtuffs, and great numbers of horſes and camels, that it was believ'd he did more than he was able, conſidering the ſmall extent and power of his country: upon which Timur diſtinguiſh'd him by ſeveral honors, and confirm'd him in his principality. As the emperor had before deliver'd him from priſon, where he was detain'd by Bajazet, and had reſtor'd to him his father's eſtates, ſo he again join'd other country's to his demeſns, and diſmiſs'd him: after which the court departed, and continu'd its march. Chap. 60.

CHAP. LX.

The death of the Ottoman emperor Bajazet, and of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, Timur's grandſon.

THE world is ſo inconſtant, that we may rather look upon it as a continual deſtruction, than an agreeable habitation, ſince there is nothing of a certain duration but God: a melancholy inſtance of which we find in Bajazet; who died of an apoplexy at Akcheher on thurſday the 14th of Chaban 805; at whoſe death Timur was ſo extremely affected, that he bewail'd the misfortune of that great prince with tears. He began to reflect how providence often baffles human projects; for he had reſolv'd, as ſoon as he had finiſh'd the conqueſt of Natolia, to raiſe the March 23, 1403.

Book V. dejected ſpirit of Bajazet, by re-eſtabliſhing him on the throne with greater power and magnificence than he had before been poſſeſs'd of: but fate had otherwiſe order'd it.

Timur being got to the frontier of Akcheher, Dané Coja arriv'd from the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, with advice that doctor Farrudge had given ſome medicine to the prince, which had had an ill effect; and that the vapors having got into his brain, he was fallen into a delirium. This news very much afflicted the emperor, who diſpatch'd away Dané Coja poſt, to acquaint the Mirza that he wou'd ſoon be with him.

Timur encamp'd at Akcheher, where he comforted Bajazet's officers by ſeveral largeſſes he beſtow'd upon 'em. He made a preſent to his ſon Mouſſa Chelebi of a royal veſt, a belt, a ſword, and a quiver enrich'd with precious ſtones, a load of gold, and thirty horſes: he likewiſe gave him his letters-patent ſeal'd with the impreſſion of his red hand; and then diſmiſs'd him, telling him that the coffin of the deceas'd emperor his father was laid by his orders in the tomb of the Cheik Mahmoud Hairan at Akcheher; and that it ſhou'd be convey'd to Pruſa with all the pomp and magnificence us'd to the greateſt kings, to be inter'd in the mauſoleum, which he had built there himſelf.

Timur then left the baggage, and departed from Akcheher, for the place where the Mirza his grandſon lay ſick. On his way thither he learnt that the horde of Turcomans nam'd Durgot, whoſe chiefs were Kezerbei and Ibrahim, had revolted, and were entrench'd in a mountain near the great road, hoping to defend themſelves there. Some troops being order'd againſt 'em, they block'd up all the avenues, and inveſted the mountain; and then attacking the Durgots with

their arrows, they fled. Our ſoldiers purſu'd 'em ſword in hand, ſlew ſeveral on the ſpot, pillag'd their horſes, camels, oxen and ſheep; and made their wives and children ſlaves, to ſerve as an example to mutineers. Chap. 67.

The ſixteenth of Chaban, Timur met Dolet Coja ſon of Eltchi Bouga, who gave advice that the Mirza's ſickneſs increaſing, his life was deſpair'd of. This oblig'd Timur to haſten his march; and being come to the place where he was, he went up to his bed-ſide, where finding him very ill, having loſt his ſpeech, he became very diſconſolate. Timur order'd the Mirza to be put in a litter, and departed the ſame day. When they had march'd three days journy, and were come near Carahiſſar[1], they encamp'd; and here the great and mighty prince, the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who was but nineteen years old, paſs'd from this life into the other, on the 18th of Chaban 805, which anſwers to the year of the Sheep, the ſun being in the laſt degree of Piſces. Thus died this great prince, who tho but a child in a manner, had already obtain'd more victorys, and perform'd greater actions of valor, than many famous heroes recorded in hiſtory. March 25. March 27. 1403.

[1] A city long. 70. lat. 38.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXI.

Mourning for the death of the Mirza Mahomed Sultan: and the tranſlation of his coffin.

THE natural love which fathers bear towards their children, was not the only motive that afflicted Timur for the death of the Mirza; but the great things which this young prince's virtue promis'd, were the principal cauſe of his exceſſive grief: he flung his crown aſide, and quitted his throne, rent his clothes, and caſt himſelf upon the ground in the moſt ſurprizing tranſports of grief. This caus'd a great change in his temper: and in this delightful ſeaſon of the ſpring, inſtead of being chearful, the princes and lords of the court cloth'd themſelves with hair-ſacks, and black and blue habits, with felts about their necks. The ladys did the ſame; and they ſprinkled earth upon their heads, and fill'd their boſoms with ſtones: they wou'd take no reſt but upon chaff and aſhes, inſtead of bedding; and nothing cou'd be heard in the court but groans and lamentations, eſpecially from the princeſs Canike, wife of the deceas'd, who was ſo overcome with ſorrow, that ſhe often fell into ſwoons, and loſt her ſenſes.

Such is the ſtated courſe of affairs in this world; we ſhou'd not place our confidence in it, for thoſe who do, will at laſt repent: but we belong to God, and muſt return to him. Timur order'd the Mirza's coffin to be convoy'd in a litter to Avenic by two hundred horſemen, commanded by ſeven Emirs; and

that

that when they arriv'd there, Ouaisel and Chap. 62.
Mourdoucha shou'd lay the corps in a new coffin, and carry it to the tomb of the prophet Caidar in the town of Sultania; from whence it was afterwards to be translated to Samarcand: and he likewise gave order that the other five Emirs shou'd stay at Avenic with a litter and an empty coffin, whose covering shou'd be nail'd up.

After their departure Timur return'd to the camp, and then set out from the meadow of Akcheher to continue his journy. The grief was beyond comparison; and not only the courtiers, but even the soldiers of the army, never ceas'd from weeping. When they had march'd some days journy in this condition, the principal Emirs and ministers of state came to the emperor, and falling on their faces, remonstrated to him, that all the soldiers of the army continu'd in such excessive grief, that nothing was ever like it; that the continuation of this grief did not become the majesty of so august a court; that it was better he shou'd arm himself with patience, and endeavor to comfort his royal heart. They at last persuaded Timur, tho with great difficulty, to compose his mind, and live after his usual manner: so he gave orders for every one to leave off their mourning-habits, as being of no advantage to the deceas'd.

CHAP. LXII.

Arrival of ambassadors from Egypt.

WHEN Timur's ambassadors, whom we before mention'd, were arriv'd at Grand-Cairo, they found a handsom reception. Far-

Book V. rudge, ſon of Barcoc, ſirnam'd Elmalekennaſer, king of Egypt and Syria, having been inform'd of all that had paſs'd between Timur and Bajazet, whom he had eſteem'd the moſt powerful prince in the univerſe, was now convinc'd that it would be wrong to think of dealing with Timur upon any other foot than that of an entire ſubmiſſion and perfect obedience; and he repented of the difficulty his father and himſelf had made of ſending back Atilmich. He hereupon held a council with the principal perſons of ſtate; and with their approbation releas'd Atilmich out of priſon, admitted him to an audience, treated him in an honorable manner, and made divers apologys for what he had done. He caus'd the mony to be coin'd, and the prayers read in the auguſt name and titles of Timur; and ſent back Atilmich, with two ambaſſadors, Ahmed and Acta, beſeeching Atilmich to be his interceſſor at the court. Farrudge order'd his ambaſſadors to make known to Timur his repentance for his former faults, his conſent to pay the annual tribute, and what he had done in relation to the mony and the public prayers. He ſent as a preſent, by the ſame perſons, abundance of gold and ſilver mony, precious ſtones, belts, Alexandrian ſtuffs, ſwords of Cairo, horſes of a fine breed, and other curioſitys.

As ſoon as they enter'd the frontiers of the Ottoman country, Atilmich ſet out before 'em for the court; and having the honor to ſalute the emperor, he inform'd his highneſs of the affairs of Egypt, and of the Sultan and people's fears. The ambaſſadors ſoon arriv'd at court; and being admitted to an audience, declar'd to the emperor the intentions of the Sultan their maſter, and offer'd their preſents.

Timur

Timur was again pleas'd to ſhew his clemency to the king of Egypt, and ſpake to 'em as follows. "I know that Farrudge loſt his father "when very young; which will make it my "glory to take care of this young prince, and "be to him as a father. If he continues firm in "his obedience, which is the only way of ſecuring himſelf, we will give him teſtimonys of "our benevolence, and grant him ſuccours, "with which he may preſerve his kingdom, "provided he zealouſly continues in the ſervice "of the two holy citys of Mecca [a] and Medina." He afterwards preſented veſts, belts, and crowns to the ambaſſadors, and permitted 'em to return home; giving 'em a crown, a royal mantle, and a belt enrich'd with precious ſtones, for the Sultan Farrudge their maſter, to whom he promis'd his protection. Chap. 63.

CHAP. LXIII.

Timur marches againſt the Caratatars, or black Tartars.

CARATATAR is a nation of Turks, which Hulacou Can [b] liſted into his army when he was ſent into Iran by Mangou Can, emperor of the Moguls. Hulacou being eſtabliſh'd on the throne at Tauris, and having experienc'd the malice of this wicked people, oblig'd 'em to reſide with their familys in the fron- A. D. 1256.

[a] All Mahometan princes take upon 'em the title of the ſervants of the two citys of Mecca and Medina.

[b] Brother of Mangou Caan, and grandſon of Genghiz Can the great.

Book V. A. D. 1320.

tiers of Natolia and Syria. When by the death of the grand Can Abouſaid *, there remained no longer in Iran any abſolute emperor of the race of Genghiz Can, this people revolted, and divided themſelves into fifty-two hords, every hundred chuſing a particular reſidence, being all reſolv'd to live independent. When Bajazet, after the reign of Cadi Burhaneddin at Sebaſte, was become maſter of this kingdom, he enroll'd 'em in the Ottoman army, and gave 'em a reſidence in his empire: and as there were no great taxes or tribute to pay in theſe parts, theſe Tartars enrich'd themſelves, and became exceeding powerful. But Timur, who deſign'd to make 'em change the place of their reſidence, and to fix 'em in the colonys of Gete, that they might repeople that country, treated their chiefs in an honorable manner when they came to ſalute him: he gave 'em robes wove with gold, belts and ſwords of gold, with ſeveral largeſſes. As no one inſulted 'em in the leaſt manner during the whole courſe of this war, but ſuffer'd 'em to continue quiet in their hords; this ſufficiently denoted that they were in obedience and ſubjection, or at leaſt ought to have been ſo.

When the ambaſſadors of Egypt arriv'd at court, Timur ſtaid three days among the Caratatars; and after having held a council, and maturely deliberated about the ways of bringing his enterprize to perfection, he reſolv'd to remove 'em out of that country, and conduct 'em into Tranſoxiana. But as there were between thirty and forty familys of 'em, he order'd the Mirzas and Emirs to ſurround 'em, each on their reſpec-

* Son of Codabende king of Perſia, and of the race of Genghiz Can.

tive

tive ſides, ſo that none of 'em might get away, Chap. 63.
but not to do 'em the leaſt damage. Accordingly the Emir Gehan Chah, with the Emirs of the right wing, and the troops of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, took the road to Tocat and Amaſia. The Emir Solyman Chah, with thoſe of the left wing, march'd by Cæſarea and Sebaſte. Timur went by the plains of Amaſia, and Cæſarea, the reſidence of the Caratatars; and he ſent the Mirza Charoc, with the Sultan Huſſein, to cut off their paſſage, and hinder any one's flight.

The emperor having paſs'd the bridge of Kircheher, after ſeveral days march, arriv'd at the country of the Caratatars, whoſe chiefs he order'd to be call'd before him. There came two of 'em, Akhi Tebarec and Murvet: they kiſs'd the ground before the emperor, who gave 'em a handſom reception, preſented 'em with veſts and belts wrought with gold, and ſwore he wou'd never do 'em the leaſt harm. "It is a long while, "ſays he, ſince your anceſtors came out of the "country of Touran, which was their antient "reſidence, into theſe foreign lands, by the or-"ders of the emperors our predeceſſors. As "all that vaſt country is at preſent govern'd by "one maſter, God having brought it under my "obedience, you ought to look upon this op-"portunity as very fortunate to you; and re-"turn from hence, with your wives, children, "ſlaves, cattel, and other riches, under the "convoy of our ſoldiers, to the country of your "anceſtors, where you may paſs your life agree-"ably under the ſhadow of our protection."

---

* I believe it ſhou'd rather be Acſara.

The chiefs return'd thanks to Timur, and aſſur'd him that they were ready to obey his orders with pleaſure; that they look'd upon it as a piece of good fortune to be under his protection; and that they were reſolv'd to ſpend their lives in his ſervice. Timur order'd that they ſhou'd be divided into companys and regiments, and diſtributed among the Emirs of the Tomans. Being thus made to decamp with their cattle, they began their march; they were prohibited buying any ſheep or horſes, that they might be leſs embaraſs'd in the roads, and that if they ſhou'd endeavor to fly, they might the better be prevented.

CHAP. LXIV.

Timur returns from Natolia.

TIMUR was highly pleas'd with his conqueſt of Natolia, of which he was become the abſolute and ſole monarch, without any oppoſition, and with the love of all the people; which great affair he had brought about by the ſtrength of his arms and the valor of his ſoldiers, at the ſame time that he won the hearts of the people by his good conduct. This vaſt conqueſt, by the divine aſſiſtance, was finiſh'd in leſs than a year; and thro-out all Aſia Timur's name was ſtamp'd on their coins, and the prayers were read with his auguſt titles.

For theſe reaſons his majeſty reſolv'd to return to the ſeat of his empire: he caus'd the great ſtandard to be diſplay'd, and began his march with all the army. He ſent orders to the empreſſes Serai Mulc Canum, Touman Aga, Tchelpan

Mulc Aga, and Canzade, mother of the deceas'd Mirza Mehemed Sultan, to come and meet him as far as the borders of Avenic. This new emperor of the leſſer Aſia, being arriv'd at Cæſarea in Cappadocia, the inhabitants fill'd with fear, conceal'd themſelves in caverns: whereupon he ſent Ali Sultan Tavachi, with a good troop of ſoldiers, in ſearch of 'em; who having found 'em, they defended themſelves againſt him, and ſhot him with an arrow in the Vena cava, of which he dy'd upon the ſpot. Yet theſe rebels being vanquiſh'd and taken, Mehemed, brother of Ali Sultan, caus'd 'em all to be put to the ſword, to revenge his death. Chap. 64.

Afterwards Timur departed for Sebaſte, where he confer'd ſeveral honors upon Cara Oſman [a], and ſent him back into his principality. From thence he went to Arzendgian, where Taharten, like a faithful ſervant, offer'd his preſents to the emperor, of horſes, cattel, and other things, nine of each ſort. Taharten follow'd the court two days journy: and then Timur, honoring him with a royal veſt, permitted him to return home. He ſent back the meſſenger who had brought advice of the empreſſes departure from Sultania, with orders that the princes ſhou'd haſten, that ſo they might arrive at Avenic before the ladys. Timur being come to Erzerom, was join'd by the Mirzas Oluc-Bec, Ibrahim Sultan, Mehemed Gehanghir, Aidgel, and Sadvaccas, his grand-children: he tenderly embrac'd 'em, and was over-joy'd to ſee 'em; but he cou'd not refrain from tears at the ſight of the Mirzas Mehemed Gehanghir

[a] Made governor of Sebaſte by Timur when at Malatia; he was ſon of the Cadi Burhaneddin, prince of Sebaſte.

and Sadvaccas, becauſe of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan their father's death.

CHAP. LXV.

The manner in which the death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, ſon of Gehanghir, was made known to Canzade his mother.

THE empreſſes who were ſet out from Sultania, made preparations at Tauris for mourning for the Mirza Mehemed Sultan: they cloth'd themſelves in black, and then came to Avenic, according to the emperor's orders. When they were inform'd that Timur was near the place, they acquainted the princeſs Canzade with the death of her dear ſon: upon which ſhe was ſo tranſported with grief, that ſhe ſwoon'd away; and being a little recover'd, ſhe rent her clothes, and twiſting her hair about her fingers, began to pluck it off by degrees; ſhe ſpit blood, and tore her lovely cheeks with her nails: ſhe ſwoon'd away the ſecond time, on ſeeing all the ladys, whoſe heads were cover'd with black mantles, and who cou'd utter nothing but crys and lamentations.

Timur being encamp'd, they began their crys afreſh; and nothing was to be ſeen more diſmal than this court, which at other times was the gayeſt and moſt magnificent of all Aſia. He order'd that to moderate the princeſs's affliction, the empty coffin, nail'd down very ſtrongly, and faſten'd with a lock, ſhou'd be preſented to her: ſhe twiſted her ſelf round it, crying and groaning: "My eyes, ſaid this diſconſolate "princeſs, were continually looking towards the

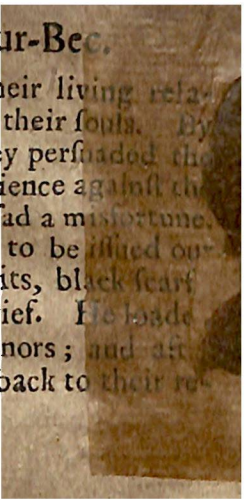
"public

" public road, in expectation of ſome news of Chap. 65.
" my dear child, which wou'd have been the
" delight of my ſoul. I did not expect this cru-
" elty from fortune, this fatal dagger, which
" thus breaks my heart at the ſight of this cof-
" fin. O deplorable condition! O wretched
" Canzade! O unfortunate prince! thou waſt
" deſign'd for the throne of the empire of Iran;
" but mercileſs fate has ſnatch'd the ſcepter from
" thy hands. It is not without cauſe that a tor-
" rent of blood guſhes from my eyes, and I make
" the earth red with my tears; ſince, my dear
" ſon, thou haſt thus pierc'd my heart in thy
" tendereſt age."

After this exceſs of mourning, Timur judg'd it proper to do ſomething for the ſpiritual good of his ſoul, which lives as well in the other world as it did in this: he gave alms among the poor, and provided a funeral banquet. The Cherifs, doctors, grandees and nobles of all Aſia aſſembled together for this ceremony: they ſat down according to their rank at the emperor's table; and a Hafiz, with a Nazer, the lecturers, read over the Alcoran ſeveral times. The banquet was ſerv'd up by the emperor's ſtewards: and the Mirza's braſs-drum was beat, at which the ladys, the Emirs, and ſoldiers, as well maſters as ſervants, on a ſudden made a great cry, and wept bitterly; and then the drum was broke to pieces, according to the cuſtom of the Moguls.

The doctors and Imams, who came from Tauris, Sultania, Cazuin, and other places, to ſalute the emperor at his return, and pay their compliments of condolence, endeavor'd in ſeveral conferences to comfort him and the princeſs: they forgot not any of Mahomet's counſels on this occaſion, and ſtrove to incite 'em to patience, aſſuring 'em that the deceas'd were tormented

Book V. mented by the lamentations of their living relations, and that it was hurtful to their ſouls. By the force of their eloquence, they perſuaded the emperor to arm himſelf with patience against the aſſaults of affliction caus'd by ſo ſad a misfortune. Timur then permitted an order to be iſſued out for leaving off the mourning-habits, black ſcarfs, hair-ſacks, and other marks of grief. He loaded the doctors with favors and honors; and after having given 'em veſts, ſent 'em back to their reſpective reſidences.



The end of the fifth book.

BOOK

BOOK VI.

War in Georgia. Timur's return from a campain of ſeven years. The defeat and purſuit of Eskender Cheiki, prince of the race of the antient Perſians. Timur's departure for the conqueſt of China. His death at Otrar near the river Jaxartes, and his interment at Samarcand. The ſtrange revolutions which happen'd after his death. The Mirza Calil Sultan his grandſon, ſon of Miran Chah, uſurps the crown; and the ruin of that prince occaſion'd by his prodigality, and paſſion for a woman.

CHAP. I.

Timur marches into Georgia.

TIMUR-BEC's greateſt ambition being to merit the happineſs promis'd to thoſe who wage war with the infidels for the advancement of religion; and Ghourghin king of Georgia, having fail'd in the prin-

Book VI. principal article of the treaty made the preceding year, which was to have come at a fix'd time to caſt himſelf at the emperor's feet, and beg pardon; his highneſs took up a reſolution to march again into his country. To this end, he departed towards Mencoul, where he receiv'd the ſubmiſſions of Malek Iſſa prince of Merdin[1], who repenting of his fault in not coming before to pay his homage, and knowing he ſhou'd be ruin'd if he loſt Timur's favor, confidently ſet out to come to court; where he preſently addreſs'd himſelf to the Mirza Charoc, whoſe protection he beſought. This Mirza brought him to the throne, where with his head uncover'd, like a criminal, he beg'd pardon on his knees. Timur having reprimanded him, forgave his fault, and comforted him by his kind promiſes. This prince brought the tribute for ſeveral years paſt, which he paid exactly, and made abundance of handſom preſents. The emperor gave him a crown, a royal veſt, and a belt ſet with precious ſtones; and as an addition to the former favors confer'd on him, his daughter was betroth'd to the Mirza Aboubecre, and ſo he had the honor to be ally'd to Timur.

At the ſame time Yonani grandſon of Acbouga, a Georgian prince, came to pay his homage to the emperor, and made ſeveral preſents of curious animals and fine horſes; being introduc'd by the great Emirs, with Cuſtendil, brother of Malek Ghourghin, king of Georgia, who was at war with him. There came alſo the lords and princes of all the neighboring places, to pay their reſpects, and offer their pre-

[1] A ſtrong city and a principality, near the Tigris, in Meſopotamia.

ſents.

ſents. Timur receiv'd 'em with all manner of civility according to their birth and quality: he aſſur'd 'em of his favor, and preſenting 'em with veſts, ſent 'em back to their reſpective countrys. Chap. 2.

CHAP. II.

The government of Chiraz a ſecond time given to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, ſon of Omar Cheik; and that of Iſpahan to his brother the Mirza Rouſtem.

IN the neighborhood of Mencoul, Timur again inveſted the Mirza Pir Mehemed, ſon of Omar Cheik, in the government of the royal city of Chiraz, capital of Perſia, for which he iſſu'd out his letters-patent; and made the Mirza ſet out for that country, after having given him a veſt and a belt, and nam'd for his miniſters Lutfallah, ſon of Beyan Temour, ſon of Acbouga, and Tchel Panchat Berlas [a].

Then he diſpatch'd orders to the Mirza Rouſtem at Chiraz to come to court. The meſſenger found him in the ſummer-quarters of the palace of Caſrizer, and deliver'd his commiſſion. The Mirza immediately ſet out, and being arriv'd at Canſar, a place dependent on Giurbadecan, he receiv'd a pacquet from court, by which he learnt that the emperor had given him the government of Iſpahan [b], ordering

[a] Two old men of great experience and truſt.

[b] Capital of Hircania or Irac-Agemi, where the king of Perſia at preſent reſides.

him

Book VI. him to ſend his baggage thither, and go to Ouroudgerd to rebuild the fortreſs of Ormyan. The Mirza Pir Mehemed, who was ſent to Chiraz, alſo arriv'd at Canſar. Theſe two brothers tenderly embrac'd each other, and entertain'd themſelves with converſation on the preſent ſtate of affairs; and afterwards they ſeparated, and took their reſpective roads. The Mirza Pir Mehemed departed for Chiraz; and Rouſtem, having ſent a lieutenant to govern Iſpahan in his abſence, went with expedition to Ouroudgerd, the fortreſs of which he rebuilt, and repeopled the city.

CHAP. III.

Timur ſends the Mirza Aboubecre to rebuild the city of Bagdad, and gives him the government of Irac-Arabi and Diarbekir.

WHEN the court was arriv'd in the neighborhood of Cars[a], Timur order'd the princes his children, and the great lords of the ſtate to come before him; and then made the following ſpeech to 'em. "The war which "the inhabitants of Bagdad have heretofore "undertaken againſt us, having been obſtinately "continu'd by them, has been the cauſe of the "deſolation of their ſtate, our vengeance having drawn upon 'em a total ruin. Nevertheleſs, if we conſider that this is one of the "principal citys in the Mahometan world, that "the knowledg of the law deduces its origin

[a] A city of Armenia near Georgia.

from

" from thence, and that the doctors of other Chap. 3.
" countrys have drawn from this ſource the
" moſt ſacred parts of religion, and the moſt
" uſeful learning; it wou'd be a crime utterly
" to deſtroy this famous city: wherefore we
" deſign to re-inſtate it in its former flouriſh-
" ing condition, that it may again become the
" ſeat of juſtice, and the tribunal both of reli-
" gion and laws."

The emperor's ſpeech being univerſally applauded, he entruſted the execution of this commendable project with the Mirza Aboubecre, giving him the government of the provinces of Irac-Arabi, as far as Vaſet, Baſra, Curdiſtan, Merdin, Diarbekir, Oirat, with all their dependences; and appointing for the great officers of his court the Emirs Payende Sultan, Pir Huſſein Berlas, Sevindgic, Sultan Sendger, Hadgi Seifeddin, Dolet Coja Einac, and others, with a great body of the army. Timur order'd the lords of Irac-Arabi to obey him, and mark'd out his road by the province of Diarbekir: he ſtrictly enjoin'd him to exterminate all the diſturbers of the public peace, who remain'd in that country, and to be in Irac-Arabi in the autumn, when the equinox renders the air more temperate. The emperor likewiſe inſtructed him to begin with ruining Cara Youſef Turcoman, who had made himſelf maſter of Irac-Arabi; and afterwards to encourage and comfort the inhabitants of the country, that they might rebuild their houſes, and cultivate the lands; and in fine to employ all his care in reſtating Bagdad in its former ſplendor, that the following year there might depart people enough out of that city, to form a caravan for Mecca.

With

With regard to Cara Youſef Turcoman, and his uſurpation, we muſt know that that prince, for fear of our troops, fled into the country of Roum or Natolia; but when our army arriv'd at Cæſarea, he again fled from thence into Irac-Arabi, where having aſſembled all the Turcoman hords, he ſtop'd at Payan-Hit. The Sultan Ahmed Gelair at that time went out of Bagdad, and retir'd to the Sultan Taher his ſon; but the Aga Firouz, in whom the Sultan Taher repos'd the care of his affairs, excited a jealouſy in his maſter: whereupon he held a council with his father's Emirs, Mehemed Bei governor of Ormi, the Emir Ali Calander, Micayl, and Fatrac Chah, who likewiſe fear'd the Sultan Ahmed, and unanimouſly agreed to revolt; and having paſs'd the bridge during night, they encamp'd on this ſide the river. When the Sultan Ahmed was inform'd of it, he broke down the bridge, and marching along the bank of the river, ſtop'd in preſence of his ſon and the Emirs: he ſent an expreſs to Cara Youſef to come and join him; which Youſef having done, they paſs'd the river together. The two armys being rang'd in order, a battel enſu'd, in which the Sultan Taher was vanquiſh'd: he endeavor'd to fly; but coming to a brook, and ſtriving to make his horſe leap over it, he fell in with his horſe and armor, and periſh'd.

The Sultan Taher having been thus puniſh'd for his revolt againſt his father, his Emirs and troops diſpers'd; and the Sultan Ahmed, growing jealous of Cara Youſef, went to Bagdad. Cara Youſef came out of Hille with his army to the gates of Bagdad, and took the city. The Sultan Ahmed hid himſelf to ſave his life, but was perceiv'd by one nam'd Cara Haſſan, who aſſiſted him in making his eſcape during the night;

night; and taking him upon his ſhoulders brought him to a place near five leagues diſtance. On their way they met a man who had an ox, which the Sultan mounted, and went to Teerit with Cara Haſſan. Sarec Omar Oirat, governor of that place, made a preſent of forty horſes to the Sultan Ahmed, with what money, arms, ſtuffs, and belts he was able. The Sultan was join'd in this city by ſeveral of his officers, as the Cheik Maeſoud, Dolet Yar, Adel, and others. From Teerit he went to Damaſcus, while Cara Youſef became the peaceable poſſeſſor of Irac-Arabi. This digreſſion was neceſſary for the better underſtanding of the hiſtory. Chap. 3.

When Timur therefore made the Mirza Aboubeere depart for Bagdad, he ſent orders to the Mirza Rouſtem at Ouroudgerd, to join Aboubeere before Bagdad, and march with him againſt Cara Youſef. The Emirs Toukel Arus Bouga of Hamadan, Taman-Soutchi of Nehavend, Chah Rouſtem of Sendgiar and of Dinaver, had likewiſe orders to march to Bagdad with the Mirza Rouſtem. The Mirza Aboubeere arriv'd at Arbele, and caus'd the governor Abdalla, and the other chiefs of the rebels, to be ſeiz'd and ſent bound to court, with a preſent of Arabian horſes, the care of which he gave to Ac Sultan. At this place died Payende Sultan Berlas; and the Mirza Aboubeere having left the baggage, march'd with expedition againſt Cara Youſef. The Mirza Rouſtem departed from Ouroudgerd, according to orders, and having taken the road to the dome of Ibrahim-Lic, he paſs'd to Bagdad, and join'd the Mirza Aboubeere in the neighborhood of Hille.

CHAP. IV.

Timur's arrival at the frontiers of Georgia.

TIMUR having decamp'd from the neighborhood of Cars, enter'd Georgia. After having paſs'd thro Armenia, the Cheik Ibrahim prince of Chirvan, as a faithful ſervant, was gone before to make inroads into the enemy's country, and had already ſeiz'd on ſome paſſages and defiles. Malek Ghourghin, king of Georgia, heard with a great deal of ſurprize of the march of the imperial ſtandard. Fear excited him to ſend ambaſſadors to court with ſeveral preſents; and the ſubject of the embaſſy was compriz'd in this ſpeech.

"There is no compariſon, great Sir, between "you and me, who am your ſlave; and it is "very aſtoniſhing that you ſhou'd have pro- "poſ'd to march againſt ſo mean a ſubject as "I am, who am abſolutely reſolv'd to be- "have my ſelf as your faithful ſervant; and "on the firſt order I ſhall receive from your of- "ficers, whether to ſend in mony, or to march "at the head of my troops in your ſervice, I "will not fail of acquitting my ſelf faithfully "and readily. I have not the confidence to "come down directly to caſt my ſelf at the foot "of your throne, for fear has too far ſeiz'd my "heart: but if your highneſs ſhall pleaſe to grant "me a ſhort reprieve, till my fear is blown over, "I will run to kiſs your feet, as the prince of "Merdin, and other governors have done; and "I ſhall have the honor to proſtrate my ſelf be- "fore you, and receive your orders as a ſlave, ac- "knowledging this favor as an exceſs of your "bounty."

Timur

Timur wou'd not hearken to what the ambaſſadors ſaid, nor accept their preſents: he told 'em, that their maſter's affair was no ways like that of the other princes, who were Mahometans, becauſe the intereſt of religion pleaded for them, and render'd their faults more pardonable; but he being a Chriſtian, ought not to expect the ſame favor; that if he was deſirous of life, he muſt come directly to court; but if the grace of God ſhou'd not grant him ſufficient aſſiſtance to enable him to embrace the Mahometan religion, he wou'd impoſe the tribute of the Carage * on him, leave him once more the principality of his country, ſend him back contented, and ſuffer his ſubjects to live in peace, without fear of being either murder'd, pillag'd, or made ſlaves; and thus his honor and reputation wou'd remain unblemiſh'd. He likewiſe told 'em, that the emperor of Conſtantinople, as a Chriſtian, was on the ſame footing with him; that if Ghourghin had come to court, he wou'd have learnt how that prince had been treated, and what favors he had receiv'd; and that he ought to judge of his own caſe by the other: but if their maſter made the leaſt difficulty of coming, none of his excuſes ſhou'd be accepted of. At length the ambaſſadors were diſmiſs'd. Chap. 4.

About this time Beyan Coutchin, governor of Tauris, came to court with the comptrollers and great officers of Azerbijana: they offer'd their preſents conſiſting of a great number of horſes, animals, and other things. Ali Chacani, chief of the Divan of Coraſſana, for the Coja Ali Semnani, came alſo to offer his pre-

* A tribute which the Mahometan princes exact from the Chriſtians or Jews who inhabit their dominions.

Book VI. ſents, which were diſtributed among the officers.

The ſeaſon for the corn-harveſt in Georgia approaching, it was requiſite that the Georgians ſhou'd be hinder'd from reaping and carrying it in; whereupon Timur order'd the Emir Cheik Noureddin, and other Emirs, to enter the enemy's country forthwith: in effect, they chas'd out all the inhabitants, and deſtroy'd every thing with fire and ſword; they reap'd all the corn and pulſe, which they ground into meal, and ſo return'd laden with ſpoils to the imperial camp.

CHAP. V.

The taking of the famous caſtle of Cortene in Georgia.

THERE is a ſteep mountain in Georgia, a hundred and fifty cubits high, ſituate between two very deep defiles: on the ſouth of it is a rock, which ſurpaſſes it in height, and which they aſcend with ladders and cords. There is but one way to this mountain, and that very narrow and crooked; beſides, the precipices which ſurround it hinder an army from encamping and beſieging it. The Georgians had fortify'd this mountain on all ſides, having built houſes upon it, and a gate at the very extremity, with ciſterns to preſerve rain-water. It was commanded by a Georgian prince nam'd Tral, who had under him thirty great Oſtaours, and a ſtrong garriſon; they were not apprehenſive of any ſcarcity, their ciſterns being fill'd with water, their cellars furniſh'd with delicious

cious wines, and the place ſtor'd with ſwine and ſheep. Chap. 5.

Timur being appriz'd of the importance of this place, reſolv'd to take it, notwithſtanding the great difficultys which wou'd attend the ſiege, as it was in the midſt of the enemy's country, and wou'd require a great number of ſoldiers to carry it on, who wou'd not be able to find victuals and even water enough for 'em. Every one was ſurpriz'd at this undertaking, and believ'd it impoſſible to take the place; unleſs the ſole fear of Timur, who deſign'd to go there in perſon, ſhou'd ſeize the hearts of the beſieg'd, and make 'em ſurrender: but God had otherwiſe order'd it.

The imperial ſtandard arriv'd before the caſtle of Corteno on the 14th of Muharrem 806. The inhabitants immediately ſent to ſalute the emperor, offer him their preſents, and aſſure him of their ſubmiſſion; but ſeeing their flatterys cou'd not hinder the place being attack'd, they confided in the ſtrength of their walls, and declar'd war by a diſcharge of arrows and ſtones. Timur at the ſame time order'd the Emirs to take their poſts round about the place: the Emir Chamelic was fix'd on the ſide of the gate, having orders to build ſconces over-againſt it: two other Emirs had likewiſe orders to erect two ſconces in different places. This was done, that if the ſiege ſhou'd laſt too long, a garriſon might be put in 'em, to incommode the place. Chamelic finiſh'd in three days one of theſe ſconces capable to contain three thouſand men; which excited the admiration of the whole army. Aug. 13. 1403.

Timur encamp'd behind the fortreſs in a place proper to build battering-rams and other machines, and order'd a platform of ſtone and wood, which is call'd Meljour, to be built between his

Book VI. camp and the caſtle, ſo high that it ſhou'd command the place, tho the Georgians had imagin'd that the height of their mountain wou'd have preſerv'd 'em from all manner of inſults. This work was not finiſh'd in leſs than a week; and on the 21ſt of Muharrem, a Meerit, nam'd Bikidgek, who was skilful in marching over mountains, found means during night to get unperceiv'd upon a rock, ſouth of the caſtle; there he caught a goat, and carry'd it to the very top of the rock, where having kill'd it, he plac'd it for a ſignal, and then deſcended without being ſeen by the Georgians. Next day Bikidgek related his adventure to the emperor, who applauded him, and gave orders for ſome very ſtrong cords to be made of raw ſilk and thread, and ladders to be made of the cords: and then four Meerits immediately aſcended this rock, and drew up the ladders with long cords. On the 23d of Muharrem this deſign was executed: they mounted by an arch, which a goat cou'd ſcarcely paſs. A tree having grown out of the very ridge of this rock, they faſten'd the ladders to it, when they had drawn 'em up. The Emir Chamelic ſtaid at the bottom of the ladders, and made fifty of the braveſt Turks of Coraſſana aſcend, whoſe names he took down in writing: Argoudac was one of 'em. The Georgians were faſt aſleep while theſe things were paſſing. At break of day a Coraſſanian cried out with a loud voice, Allah Ecber, and bleſs'd Mahomet. Mahmoud, an officer of the Mirza Charoc, at the ſame time ſounded his trumpet; and the Georgians ſurpriz'd at the alarm given 'em by the watch, ran to their arms to defend themſelves. Timur took horſe, paſs'd the defile, and ſtop'd over-againſt the rock, which our brave men had mounted: he order'd

Aug. 20.

Aug. 22.

order'd the braſs drum to be beat, and the great cry Souroun made thro-out the whole army. Chap. 8.

In the mean while, the way to the place by the rock being very narrow and dangerous, no more than three perſons being able to march in front, one of our brave warriors march'd foremoſt, holding his buckler before him; he was ſuſtain'd by two others, who advanc'd with him; but an arrow ſtruck him in the mouth, which made him fall backwards, and the enemys ſeiz'd on his buckler. Abdalla Sebzuari advanc'd ſword in hand, and ſlew ſome Georgians, till being mortally wounded in ten or twelve places, he fell down thro weakneſs. The Turk Mahmoud fell upon the enemys with a heavy club, with which he broke the leg of a very conſiderable Oznaour. In fine, of the fifty men who had mounted to the aſſault, ſeveral arriv'd at the gate of the caſtle, where a bloody skirmiſh enſu'd. Some alſo continu'd to attack the place from the Meljour before mention'd, ſo that the gate was broke, and the troops enter'd the caſtle.

This conqueſt happen'd the 23d of Muharrem, after a ſiege of nine days. The beſieg'd begg'd for quarter on their knees: but moſt of the Oznaours or officers were precipitated from the walls: the governor, Tral, was bound and carry'd to the imperial camp with the whole gariſon, of whom not one eſcap'd. At the ſame time the Toughe [2] and ſtandard of Mahomet was erected upon the walls; and the Muezins repeated the prayers of the Alcoran on the top of the church, and made the cry Yzan, which is Aug. 22.

[2] A ſtandard on whoſe top is a horſetail.

Book VI. us'd to call the Mahometans to prayer. This conqueſt deſerves to be recorded in hiſtory; and it is reported that the great Mahmoud Subectekin never gain'd ſo conſiderable victorys over the infidels of India, as our conqueror did over thoſe of Georgia. Timur order'd Tral and all the gariſon to be beheaded, and their wives and children carry'd away captive; and he gave Tral's wife as a preſent to the Cheik Ibrahim, prince of Chirvan.

Timur afterwards order'd the machines, and Meljour, which had been erected againſt the place, to be burnt; and he return'd to his camp, where he heap'd honors and favors on Bikidgek and the other brave men who had firſt mounted the rock; he order'd mony out of his treaſury to be diſtributed among 'em, and gave 'em robes, ſabres, belts, horſes, mules, tents, umbrellas, young women, camels, furniture, and even gardens and villages in their reſpective countrys. He inveſted Mehemed Touran, ſirnam'd the king of Bauran, who was one of the principal lords of Coraſſana, in the government of the place, aſſigning him a good gariſon of Coraſſanians: he gave him the revenues of the neighboring countrys, and enjoin'd him to preſerve theſe frontiers for the Muſſulmans, and not permit the Georgians to gain any more footing in the country; he order'd him to convert the church into a moſque, and build a niche in it inſtead of the altar, and in lieu of bells and croſſes, to eſtabliſh Muezins and readers of the Alcoran, according to the Muſſulman law.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Relation of what paſs'd without during this ſiege.

DURING theſe tranſactions, the doctor Cotobeddin Carini came to court with all the great officers of Chiraz; he offer'd ſeveral preſents of the fineſt ſtuffs, Arabian horſes, mules for riding, and furniture, as pavilions, tents, umbrellas, and other curious things. Afterwards Hadgi Muzaffer arriv'd from the Mirza Rouſtem, and made his preſents. The Coja Muzaffer Necheuzi alſo came from Iſpahan, and preſented a great quantity of mony, pearls, precious ſtones, horſes, ſaddled mules, ſtuffs, tents and pavilions, as likewiſe droves of horſes and mules of carriage, with arms, and veſſels and boxes of gold and ſilver. Timur diſtributed all theſe preſents among the princes and lords of his court.

About the ſame time Ideeou Berlas and Ahmed Daoud, who had been ſent to Kirman, to receive and take care of the imperial treaſures, as alſo Seifel Mulouk Hadgi Abdalla, receiver-general, return'd to the imperial camp: they had an audience of the emperor, who gave 'em a handſom reception, and to whom they offer'd their preſents after the uſual manner: they were accompany'd by the principal inhabitants of Kirman, and among others by Moulana Zyaddin Serradge, the Cheik Sedreddin, who were both Cadis, the Seid Hamza, and the Cheik Mahmoud Zendghi Adgem, author of the book call'd Dgiouch or Khourpuch, which treats of the

Book VI. the exploits of the glorious Timur; but this learned author had the misfortune to fall from off the bridge of Teflis, which is built over the river Cyrus, and be drown'd: his ſon, who continu'd that work after his father's death, paid his reſpects to the emperor, who receiv'd him with a great deal of kindneſs, and comforted him by his favors for his father's death.

Youſef Gelil, Deroga of the city of Yezd, and Cayaſeddin Salar Semnani, receiver-general of the revenues of the ſame city, as well as the commiſſarys of the Divan of Yezd, came alſo to court; as did all the great officers, and governors of the ſeveral provinces and citys of Coraſſana and the two Iracs, who paid their homage at the foot of the imperial throne, and offer'd their preſents, which conſiſted of the greateſt curioſitys of all Aſia.

CHAP. VII.

Timur marches to Abkhaze.

AFTER the taking of Cortene, Timur ſummon'd the lords to a diet, where he made a magnificent banquet, and diſtributed his favors among the officers, according to their ranks. He then took up a reſolution to march to Abkhaze: he order'd the Emirs Cheik Nouredjin, Chameſik, and others, to ſet out before with ſeveral ſquadrons, to ravage and lay waſte Georgia, as far as Abkhaze, which is the northern frontier of that kingdom. They accordingly began their march; but as the ways were full of woods, the ſoldiers were oblig'd to cut down the trees to open a paſſage; and they ruin'd

ruin'd every thing they met with in the countrys of the Armenians and Georgians. They were follow'd by the imperial ſtandard; and Timur ſoon after enter'd into the middle of Georgia, where he plunder'd ſeven hundred towns and villages, laying waſte the cultivated lands, ruining the monaſterys of the Chriſtians, and razing their churches to the very foundation, which were built of marble and free-ſtone. Chap. 7.

But the Georgians having abandon'd their houſes, were retir'd into caverns ſituate among rocks and high mountains, which they had aſcended by ladders, which they drew up after 'em; and had fortify'd themſelves in theſe caverns. Timur order'd a ſort of boxes to be tied with chains, in each of which he plac'd ſeveral perſons arm'd: theſe boxes were let down from the top of the mountain with great cords to the level of the caverns, where our dauntleſs ſoldiers attack'd the enemys with their arrows, and advanc'd to the mouths of the caverns with their ſwords and lances. They made their way into 'em notwithſtanding the number of the enemys, and the advantage of their poſt; and tho in ſome of theſe caverns there were near a hundred Georgians, yet they leap'd out of their boxes into them, where they put all to the ſword, making themſelves maſters of their ſpoils, and acquiring the merit of the Gazie. They punctually fulfill'd the Alcoran, which enjoins us to treat the enemys of the Muſſulman religion with rigor; and they rooted up and burnt the trees, making havock every where.

The 14th of Rabiulevel 806, the Emirs and troops rejoin'd the imperial camp: next day they all purſu'd the chace, and took a great deal of game. Timur hunted the day after, and continu'd to ruin the country, ſlaying all the Georgians he met. October 12. 1403.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Timur returns from Abkhaze. The cauſe of his return.

SEVERAL Georgian lords, who were ſlaves in Timur's army, having ſent advice to king Ghourghin that this conqueror had render'd himſelf maſter of the country as far as Abkhaze, and that there remain'd no footſteps either of Armenia, or of the Armenians; that prince was ſeiz'd with fear, becauſe this advice came from men of his own nation: whereupon he immediately ſent ambaſſadors with preſents to Timur. The remonſtrance the Georgian ſlaves made to Ghourghin on this occaſion, reſembles the counſel the biſhop of Nedgeran gave to his own people in the time of Mahomet. There goes a tradition that the inhabitants of Nedgeran being come to Medina, were ſo ſtubborn and proud as to diſpute with Mahomet, and not receive the inſtructions he wou'd have taught 'em. Then the lord Ali, with Mahomet's daughter Fatima, and two grandſons Haſan and Huſſein, came to the aſſembly to diſpute with the Chriſtian biſhop; but this doctor, being ſurpriz'd at what he ſaw, far from diſputing, ſaid, "The men I now behold have "their faces irradiated: if they ſhou'd beſeech "God to remove the mountains of the place, "he wou'd aſſuredly grant their requeſt; and if "they ſhou'd be ſuffer'd to offer up their prayers "againſt the Chriſtians, not one of 'em wou'd "remain alive." Theſe words of the biſhop ſtruck terror into the Chriſtians, who conſent-

ed

ed to pay the annual tribute; after which they return'd to Nedgeran, becauſe their biſhop had on this occaſion ſeen the lords of Mahomet's family transform'd into angelical beautys. It ſeems as if ſome ſuch viſion had engag'd the Georgian ſlaves to write thus to Malek Ghourghin. Chap. 8.

When the ambaſſadors of the king of Georgia were arriv'd at court, they addreſs'd themſelves to the generals of the army, and beſought 'em to intercede for them, humbly remonſtrating that their maſter was perfectly ſubmiſſive and obedient; beſeeching 'em to employ their good offices to appeaſe Timur's wrath, and obtain pardon for their maſter, who wou'd not fail of ſending immediately to court all his riches and curioſitys, and likewiſe the annual tribute; and even promiſing that he ſhou'd ſend to the imperial camp, whenever he had orders ſo to do, the troops which ſhou'd be requir'd of him.

This diſcourſe touch'd the Emirs, who introduc'd the ambaſſadors into Timur's preſence, who gave an account of the ſubject of their embaſſy as uſual: and the generals having found a favorable opportunity, on their knees related to Timur Malek Ghourghin's propoſitions, and ſpake to him as follows.

" It is certain that your highneſs's intention " in all your wars is only the increaſe and honor " of the Mahometan religion: we ſee that " God has bleſs'd your zeal in ſuch a manner, " that the Muſſulman law has never before ar- " riv'd at ſo high a pitch of glory in theſe coun- " trys; for former emperors, and the moſt pow- " erful Sultans of antiquity, accounted them- " ſelves happy when the Georgians gave only " a few marks of their reſpect and obedience, " either by ſending a yearly preſent of horſes,

" or

Book VI. " or by furniſhing a ſmall number of troops,
" when their occaſions requir'd 'em in ſome
" war: and on theſe conditions the Georgians
" liv'd freely in Perſia and the Muſſulman
" kingdoms. But at preſent, thro your high-
" neſs's great power, they eſteem themſelves
" happy, even in being ſhut up within the far-
" theſt parts of their kingdom, as long as they
" have quarter granted 'em for their lives. The
" Muſſulmans have enter'd their capital citys,
" and enjoy themſelves there, as if they were
" the maſters of 'em. And thus, if your high-
" neſs will grant 'em quarter on paying the
" tribute, and exactly obeying your orders, they
" will become faithful ſervants, and acquit
" themſelves of their duty with entire ſubmiſſion
" and ſincerity."

All the Emirs cou'd ſay, was not able to abate the emperor's zeal for the continuation of the Gazie; which oblig'd theſe lords to propoſe the affair to the doctors of the law and to the Muftis, who unanimouſly declar'd in the imperial council, that ſince the Georgians conſented to pay the tribute, and not to injure the Muſſulmans, they were oblig'd by their law to grant 'em quarter, without doing 'em any further harm either by ſlaughter or pillaging. According to the concluſion of the doctors, and in condeſcenſion to the prayers of the Emirs, Timur granted this favor to the Cheik Ibrahim, one of the interceſſors; and nodded to him, in token that in reſpect to him, he condeſcended to the requeſt of king Ghourghin. He ſent back the Georgian ambaſſadors between hope and fear: and afterwards he ſpent ſeveral days in theſe quarters in the diverſion of the chace, till the return of the ambaſſadors, which happen'd ſoon. When they came back, they brought with

'em

'em a thouſand gold medals ſtruck in the name and auguſt titles of Timur, with a thouſand horſes, and great quantitys of curious ſtuffs, as alſo veſſels of gold, ſilver and chryſtal, and a very fine balaſs ruby, of a beautiful color, weighing eighteen Medicales, there being few which weigh ſo much. They preſented the whole, and oblig'd themſelves by an oath to pay the tribute. Chap. 9.

Then Timur prepar'd to return home; he decamp'd, and after ſome days march arriv'd at Teflis, having ruin'd all the churches and monaſterys in the neighboring parts. When he had gone two days journy beyond the river of Cyrus, he reſolv'd to march to Carabagh to rebuild the town of Bailacan: he ſet out before with ſome of his favorite lords, and having paſs'd by Berda, encamp'd near Bailacan, where he was join'd a fortnight after by the army and baggage, who alſo encamp'd there.

CHAP. IX.

Timur orders the town of Bailacan to be rebuilt.

THE Alcoran remarks, that the rebuilding of places is one of the moſt glorious actions which princes can perform in this world, and which conduces moſt to the good of ſociety. When the army decamp'd in autumn, Timur was incited to take up his winter-quarters at Carabagh: where, not to loſe time, and to keep the troops in action, he reſolv'd to rebuild the town of Bailacan, which had been a long time ruin'd, ſo that it was inhabited only by inſects, ſcritch-owls,

Book VI. owls, ſerpents and ſcorpions. Tho the ſeaſon was very cold, and the rains continually moleſted our ſoldiers, yet Timur ſoon after his arrival gave orders to the engineers and architects to draw the plan of the town, which ſhou'd conſiſt of a wall, a ditch, four market-places, and a great number of houſes, baths, caravanſeras, ſquares, gardens, and other commodious places. They laid the foundations, and having mark'd 'em with lines, the emperor divided the work among the ſoldiers, under the inſpection of the Chahzades * and Emirs. They wrought with ſo much diligence, that the buildings which were of brick, were finiſh'd in a month: the circumference of the walls was two thouſand four hundred cubits of large meaſure, the thickneſs eleven cubits, and the height fifteen: the ditch was thirty cubits broad, and twenty wide: at each corner of the place was a great baſtion, and in the middle of each courtine was a gallery with battlements, and a machine to caſt ſtones. In fine, this prodigious undertaking, which the greateſt emperors of antiquity were never able to finiſh in a year, was compleated in a month, notwithſtanding the exceſſive cold and rains: the readineſs with which Timur's orders were obey'd, was abundantly more ſurprizing than the execution of ſo vaſt a project. Never prince carry'd a more majeſtic and terrible air in his wrath; nor yet a more ſweet and agreeable one, when he was pleas'd to beſtow his favors.

Timur gave the government of Bailacan, Berdaa, Ghondgeh, the country of Arran, Armenia, Georgia, and Trebizond, to the Mirza Calil

* Chahzade, or Mirza, is the ſon or grandſon of a king or emperor.

Sultan.

Sultan. He honor'd Gelaleliſlam's brother, nam'd Behramſcha, with the particular government of the town of Bailacan. And as water is what principally renders a country flouriſhing, inaſmuch as it makes the land fertile, and nouriſhes the animals and vegetables; Timur form'd a deſign of cutting a canal, thro which to convey the water of the river Araxes into Bailacan. He iſſu'd out his orders to that effect, and the principal lords prepar'd themſelves to put 'em in execution: the Tavatchis divided the ground the canal was to take up among the ſoldiers, which was ſix leagues in length, and fifteen cubits in breadth. The whole was finiſh'd in about a month; and it is one of the moſt magnificent monuments of Timur's grandure and power. Chap. 10.

CHAP. X.

Timur ſends intendants and doctors into all the provinces of his empire, to examine the affairs of particular perſons, and to diſtribute his juſtice and favors among the people.

DURING Timur's ſtay at Bailacan, the principal lords of Iran and Touran came to court with all poſſible magnificence, where an aſſembly of the moſt learned men was held. The emperor, who was very curious in hearing the chief queſtions of the law explain'd, and the diſtinction between poſitive commands and thoſe which contain only matter of advice, propos'd the moſt ſublime and profitable controverſys.

Book VI. One day the converſation fell very à-propos upon Mahomet's advice, wherein he tells us that God orders the princes of this world to practiſe juſtice and beneficence: the pious Timur attended to what was ſaid, and ſeriouſly reflecting on it, wou'd not ſuffer this queſtion to be ended by diſcourſe only, but reſolv'd to acquire the merits of it by practiſing good works; and then he ſpake to 'em as follows.

" Kings have always taken the counſel of doc-
" tors, when they excite 'em to do good, and
" ſtrive to turn 'em from evil: how comes it
" then that you are ſilent, and neglect to tell
" me what I ought to do, and what I ought to
" omit the performance of?"

Then all the learned men modeſtly made anſwer, that his highneſs did not ſtand in need of the counſels of perſons of their condition; but that on the contrary, others ought to learn how to conduct themſelves by imitating his example.

Timur told 'em, he did not approve this ſort of compliments, by which they might expect to gain his favor; and that what he had ſaid was neither thro vain-glory or intereſt: " For thro the
" protection of God, ſays he, I am too great a
" lord in this world, to ſtand in need of ſuch
" trifles; but my deſign in this reſults from the
" reflection I have made, that each of you
" coming from a different kingdom, muſt with-
" out doubt be inform'd of the affairs which
" paſs there, and of the good or bad conduct
" of the Derogas, and commiſſarys of the Divan.
" Communicate therefore to me what you know,
" and tell me whether the governors and offi-
" cers obſerve juſtice and the commands of the
" law as they ought; that being inform'd of
" the evils they commit, I may remedy 'em,
" and deliver the weak from oppreſſion."

Imme-

Immediately all the doctors freely declar'd their ſentiments, applauding the emperor's intention; and they repreſented to his highneſs the condition the affairs of their reſpective provinces were in. Whereupon this juſt emperor made choice of the moſt learned among 'em, and thoſe who were moſt vers'd in the laws of their country; and he nam'd an intendant to go with each of 'em, to whom he gave a full power to make laws or to diſpenſe with 'em, always approving whatever he ſhou'd do in relation to juſtice and the obſervation of the laws; ſo that right might be adminiſter'd to thoſe who were oppreſs'd thro-out all the kingdoms and provinces of his empire: likewiſe permitting theſe intendants to take out of the revenues of the imperial treaſury of each country, what ſums had been extorted from poor perſons by violence againſt the ordinary rules, and to reſtore the ſame to 'em; and alſo to puniſh the tyrants in an exemplary manner: moreover they were order'd to regiſter exactly every thing that ſhou'd paſs during their commiſſion, and at their return to give an account of it; that by this means the cauſes of vexation being entirely rooted out of the empire, the people may live in quiet and tranquillity. Then Timur made this memorable ſpeech. Chap. 10.

"My heart hath always been ſet upon the "enlarging the limits of my vaſt empire: but "now I take up a reſolution to uſe all my care "in procuring quiet and ſecurity to my ſubjects, "and to render my kingdoms flouriſhing. I "will that private perſons addreſs their re"queſts and complaints immediately to my "ſelf; that they give me their advice for the "good of the Muſſulmans, the glory of the "faith, and the extirpation of the wicked diſ-

Book VI. " turbers of the public quiet. I am unwilling
" that at the day of judgment my poor op-
" preſs'd ſubjects ſhou'd cry out for vengeance
" againſt me: I am not deſirous that any of
" my brave ſoldiers, who have ſo often expos'd
" their lives in my ſervice, ſhou'd complain a-
" gainſt me or fortune; for their afflictions
" touch me more than they do them. Let
" none of my ſubjects fear to come before me
" with his complaints; for my deſign is that
" the world ſhou'd become a paradiſe under my
" reign, knowing that when a prince is juſt and
" merciful, his kingdom is crown'd with bleſſings
" and honors. In fine, I deſire to lay up a
" treaſure of juſtice, that my ſoul may be happy
" after my death."

This ſpeech of Timur, in which his piety is much to be admir'd, was taken down by a lord who was preſent at the aſſembly, and who wrote at the bottom of it theſe words of the Alcoran, *We give teſtimony only to what we have ſeen.* After this the whole aſſembly lifted up their hands to heaven, and offer'd the following prayer: " O God, who art the lord both of
" this world and of the next, grant an ever-
" laſting reign to this juſt prince; hearken to
" his righteous petitions: and as thou haſt ſub-
" jected the univerſe to him, after a long and
" proſperous reign in this world, let him reign
" with thee in glory in the other.'

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Continuation of the hiſtory of the princes who were gone into Irac-Arabi.

THE Mirza Rouſtem having join'd the Mirza Aboubecre near Hille, as already mention'd, theſe two princes, who were the Rouſtem and Eſfendiar * of the age, paſs'd the river together, and met Cara Youſef Turcoman † over-againſt the town of Sib, on the banks of the river Nahrelganam, below Hille. They had then but three thouſand men, while Cara Youſef had entrench'd himſelf on the other ſide of the river with a numerous army, ready to give battel: and as the Mirza Rouſtem, being eldeſt, ought to have had the firſt rank, the Mirza Aboubecre prudently adviſ'd him to take his poſt in the main-body; but the Mirza Rouſtem anſwer'd him, that he was only come to bring ſuccours according to the orders given him; that it was better to ſeparate the army into two bodys, that they might each command one, and ſo attack the enemy on both ſides. In effect, the Mirza Rouſtem croſs'd the water, and attack'd Cara Youſef with all imaginable reſolution; and the Mirza Aboubecre did the ſame on his part: the attack was brave on our ſide, and as vigorouſly ſuſtain'd on the other. In the battel, Yar Ali, brother of Cara Youſef, was ſhot off his horſe with an arrow, and our men immediately

* Two famous heroes mention'd in the oriental romances.
† Prince of the Accoyunlus, or white ſheep.

Book VI. cut off his head. The Emir Sevindgic diſtinguiſh'd himſelf bravely on this occaſion, and contributed very much to the defeat of the enemy. Cara Youſef fled into Syria with ſome of his domeſtics; but his ſubjects, who conſiſted of between ten and fifteen thouſand familys, his oxen, ſheep, and camels were pillag'd by our ſoldiers. Some of the Mirza Rouſtem's men brought Cara Youſef's wife, the queen of the Turcomans, to him in chains: ſhe was the mother of Eskender and Eſpende, and was attended by the ladys of her court, and her relations.

Our princes alſo vanquiſh'd Noayry, who was abſolute commander of all the Arabian tribes of the deſarts; and they likewiſe defeated ſeveral other princes of theſe quarters, who till that time had never ſubmitted to any conqueror.

During the rebuilding of Bailacan, Sarek and Cotluc Coja, ſons of the Dervich Buke, Aboubeere and Acbirdi Uzbec, officers of the Mirza Rouſtem, carry'd the happy news of theſe victorys to court, where they preſented to Timur the head of Cara Youſef's brother.

After the cauſes of the diſorders which Cara Youſef and other rebels had occaſion'd, were remov'd, the Mirza Aboubeere employ'd himſelf particularly in rendring this country as flouriſhing as ever: he encourag'd the people, and oblig'd 'em to cultivate the lands: and he caus'd the city of Bagdad, which was almoſt ruin'd, to be rebuilt.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Arrival of the Mirza Omar from Samarcand. Continuation of what happen'd during the building of Bailacan.

THE firſt of Jumaziulevel 806, the Mirza Omar, ſon of the Mirza Miran Chah, whom Timur had recal'd from Samarcand to take upon him the government of Azerbijana, arriv'd at the imperial camp before Bailacan, where he had the honor to pay his reſpects to his highneſs. At the ſame time came likewiſe to court a Circaſſian officer, the ſon of Toumen, with the head of Malek Azeddin king of Lor Coutchec, who had revolted: this officer brought advice that Malek had been flea'd, and his skin, ſtuff'd with ſtraw, hung up in public view, to ſerve as an example to all future diſturbers of the common tranquillity. Nov. 25. 1403.

Timur about this time reſolv'd to perform an act of juſtice on the perſon of the famous doctor Moulana Cotobeddin Carmi, who was come to court with the other officers of the Divan of Chiraz, becauſe of his having tax'd the inhabitants of Fars at his departure from that place, at the ſum of three hundred thouſand Dinars Copeghi, under pretence of a preſent to the emperor. Moulana Saed, a doctor of the ſame country, who accompany'd him, accus'd him to Timur in a private audience, where the emperor had order'd him to give him what light he was able in relation to the affairs of Fars. This tyranny having highly offended his majeſty, he immediately paſs'd judg-

Book VI. ment upon Cotobeddin, and iſſu'd out an order to the Cheik Dervich Allahi to bind his hands, and placing the fork'd branch about his neck, to ſend him in that manner to Chiraz, with the ſum he had extorted from the inhabitants, to be reſtor'd to thoſe who had paid it. Argoun, intendant to Cotobeddin, was condemn'd to be hang'd becauſe of the troubles he had brought on the people at his maſter's order. A declaration was alſo publiſh'd to inform the people of the deſtruction of theſe tyrants, in revenge of the wrong they had receiv'd: after which the intendancy of the finances of Chiraz was given to Coja Malek Semnani. The emperor order'd Moulana Saed to return to Chiraz, to declare to the inhabitants of Fars, that what Moulana Cotobeddin had done was not by his order; in proof of which Argoun was hang'd as ſoon as they arriv'd at Chiraz.

The following friday, the inhabitants of the city and neighboring villages being aſſembled in great multitudes in the old moſque, Moulana Cotobeddin was expos'd with his hands in fetters, and the fork'd branch about his neck, at the foot of the preaching-chair, which was of free-ſtone. Moulana Saed mounting the chair, told the people what the great Timur had order'd him, in alluſion to the words of Coja Amad Fakih: "If this kingdom, ſays he, has "been ruin'd, don't impute it to the emperor; "for Cotobeddin is only in fault." All the people applauded what he ſaid, and prais'd Timur, ſo that the moſque echo'd out their acclamations. The ſum of three hundred thouſand Dinars Copeghi, which Cotobeddin had extorted in the ſpace of two months, was entirely re-imburs'd, according to the regiſters of the Cadis,

Cadis, notarys, and Emirs of the kingdom, to thoſe from whom it had been taken. Chap. 13.

Thus juſtice was done in the perſon of one of the greateſt lords of the kingdom, which ought to eternize the memory of Timur's equity. After this the Mirza Pir Mehemed, ſon of Omar Cheik, took off Cotobeddin's fetters, and fork'd branch, and ſent him back to Samarcand.

CHAP. XIII.

Timur paſſes the winter at Carabagh-Arran. Relation of what happen'd there.

WHEN Bailacan was entirely rebuilt, Timur march'd towards Carabagh, where he had already given orders for Corias, or thatch'd houſes, to be built, to paſs the winter in. Being come to this place, he went down into the imperial Coria; and the Mirzas and Nevians quarter'd in thoſe appointed for them, as did alſo the officers and domeſtics in theirs. Never was there ſeen before ſo magnificent a camp of ſuch vaſt extent. The Mirza Rouſtem came by the road of Coulaghi and Sunatai, according to the orders he had receiv'd to repair to the Couroultai or diet, which was to be held at Carabagh, to inveſt the Mirza Omar in the government of the kingdom of Hulacou Can.

In the mean while, on advice of the revolt of Eskender Cheiki, who with Timur's permiſſion was return'd to his principality of Demavend and Firouz Couh, Solyman Chah had orders to go to Rei to obſerve Eskender's motions. The Mirza Rouſtem was ſent to aſſiſt Solyman in this affair; and they had orders, that if Eskender ſhou'd

Book VI. ſhou'd be ſo happy as to return forthwith to his obedience, to give him a handſom reception; but on the contrary, if he continu'd obſtinate in his revolt, they ſhou'd draw together all the infantry of Com, Cachan and Derghuzin, and purſue and exterminate him wherever they cou'd find him. The Mirza Rouſtem and the Emir Solyman Chah immediately departed to execute this order.

Then the Emir Cheik-Ibrahim, king of Chirvan, prepar'd a great banquet to regale the whole court; he made a preſent to Timur of ſeveral pearls, beautiful women ſlaves, handſom boys, cuiraſſes, belts, arms, and a thouſand led-horſes: he alſo made fine preſents to the empreſſes, princes, and chief perſons of the ſtate, and did what he cou'd to diſcover ſome marks of his affection to all the lords.

About this time Nour Elouerd, ſon of the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, about eighteen years of age, having been born during the war, was brought from Irac-Arabi. The venerable Cherif Seid Bereke then alſo arriv'd at court: the pious Timur went out of his tent to meet him. The Santon having perceiv'd him, flung off his turbant, and paid his compliments of condolence on the death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan. Timur embrac'd him, and wept a long time with him.

The doctors, Imams, and lawyers of Tranſoxiana, Kech, Samarcand, Bocara, Termed, and other places, as the ſons of the Can of Termed, Coja Abdelevel, Coja Aſameddin, Coja Aſdal Kechi, Abdelhamid and Abdelrahman, ſons of the Cheik Eliſlam of Kech, and other great lords of theſe kingdoms, came to court, where they were admitted to an audience: they paid their compliments of condolence on the death

death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, and endeavor'd to comfort the emperor by good counſels taken out of the Alcoran and the ſayings of Mahomet. In effect, after they had ſomewhat moderated his affliction, he was pleas'd to have 'em diſpute before him on ſome queſtions of learning and religion; which they did every evening, after Timur had done with the affairs of ſtate. Chap. 13.

One of the moſt conſiderable events which happen'd during Timur's ſtay at Carabagh, was that the ſecretarys of the Divan of Kirman had taken Idecou's account, in which they had ſet down in his name an exceſſive ſum. Timur being inform'd of it during the building of Bailacan, apply'd himſelf to find out the truth of it in the Divan: but the princeſs Bouyan Aga, daughter of Timur's uncle *, preſented her ſelf big with child by Idecou, with her daughter Agatche; and compounded for it, by promiſing he ſhou'd pay a hundred Tomans Copeghi, and to which Idecou conſented, obliging himſelf to pay that ſum to the imperial treaſury. Then he was confirm'd in the government of Kirman, and permitted to return home, with orders at his arrival at Kirman to ſend back from thence to court the Sultan Bayazid, his brother's ſon, who had been diſpatch'd thither in his place, at Idecou's departure for court.

* Hadgi Berlas.

Timur ſent Anoucherouan, ſon of Beyan Aga, to Tauris, to receive the revenues of Azerbijana: and he gave the government of Sari to Pir Mehemed Poulad, one of the Emirs of the Mirza Charoc. At the ſame time Bic Mulc Aga, wife of the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir, ſet out from Gaznin and Candahar for court, with her three ſons Caled, Buzandger and Sultan Mehdi, who were then very young: ſhe paid her reſpects to the emperor, and preſented him with

Book VI. ſeveral precious ſtuffs of India, and other curioſitys.

CHAP. XIV.

The emperor ſends the Mirza Charoc to Ghilan.

AS the princes of Ghilan were not come to court, but had only ſent a few ſmall preſents, Timur reſolv'd to march againſt 'em; he ſent thither the Caraoul, or vanguard, commanded by Deryaï Coutchin, Belal, Mehemed brother of Ali Sultan Tavachi, Bayazid, Boroudai, and Behloul Berlas, whom he order'd to paſs the winter in the foreſt on the frontiers of Ghilan: and he likewiſe ſent the Mirza Charoc to Kzelygadge at the head of his troops. This prince immediately ſet out, accompany'd by his ſon the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, with his body of ten thouſand men, the Emir Gehan Chah, the Cheik Ibrahim, Rouſtem Tagi Bouga, the Seid Coja ſon of the Cheik Ali Behader, and other generals of Tomans with their troops: and they ſtop'd at Kzelygadge, expecting other orders.

As ſoon as the princes of Ghilan had receiv'd advice of the army's march towards their country, they were diſquieted, abandon'd their former reſolution, and conſented to pay a great ſum under the name of Carage. Charoc ſent an expreſs to advertiſe the court of this; and made ſeveral perſons ſet out to receive the tribute.

The Seid Razi Kya, one of the princes of Peylem, who was of Mahomet's race, and diſtinguiſh'd

ſinguiſh'd by his knowledg of the belles-lettres, and the Emir Mehemed Kechti, alſo a prince of that country, departed together for court with magnificent preſents: and each of the commanders of Ghilan ſent preſents and conſiderable ſums of mony. Being arriv'd at court, they kiſs'd the foot of the throne, and humbly offer'd their preſents, ſaying that they were and had always been obedient to his highneſs; that they had us'd all their endeavors to collect the ſums of the Carage; and that they had reſolv'd to live and die in perfect ſubmiſſion to the emperor's orders. Chap. 14.

Timur gave 'em veſts, and highly honor'd 'em: and as the Seid Razi Kya was of Mahomet's race, he was pleas'd to treat him in a very handſom manner, and gratify'd him with ten thouſand Mans of ſilk, that is, with fifteen thouſand Mans of legal weight, with ſeven thouſand horſes and three thouſand oxen, to be taken out of what the people had promis'd to pay for the Carage impos'd on their country: he gave the half of it to the Emir Mehemed, with a third of what remain'd due; and he iſſu'd out an order for the receivers to pay 'em theſe ſums.

Timur likewiſe gave the Seid Razi the government of the caſtle of Kemac, on the frontiers of Natolia, which Chams, a relation of the Emir Abbas, formerly poſſeſs'd; and he ſent him thither with troops.

During the winter-quarters at Carabagh, the Cherif Seid Borcke fell ſick; and tho his phyſicians employ'd all their skill, and adminiſter'd the moſt excellent remedys, they cou'd do him no good; ſo that this great perſon paſs'd from this world into the other with an entire reſignation to the will of God. Timur was ſenſibly afflicted, and wept bitterly at the death of his beſt

Book VI. beſt friend; and afterwards he caus'd his coffin to be carry'd to Andecoud, to be there bury'd. Then he gave the governments of Hamadan, Nehavend, Ouroudgerd, Lircoutchek, and their dependences, to the Mirza Eskender.

CHAP. XV.

Arrival of ſome princes from Merdin and Vaſtan. A famous funeral banquet made for the late Mirza Mehemed Sultan.

WINTER being paſt, Malek Iſſa, prince of Merdin, came to court with ſeveral preſents, bringing with him his daughter, who was betroth'd to the Mirza Aboubecre. Malek Azeddin Chir came alſo from Vaſtan with preſents of abundance of horſes to Timur, who gave him a handſom reception.

About this time the emperor iſſu'd out a general order to all the greater and leſſer officers of the kingdom of Hulacou Can, reſiding in Azerbijana and Irac-Arabi, to ſend each a brother, or one of their relations, to reſide at Samarcand: and that this project might be executed without delay, he order'd ſeveral officers to repair to the reſpective places, to bring 'em away forthwith.

In the month of Ramadan, Timur made a funeral banquet for the prince Mehemed Sultan, in which the poor were principally regal'd. The Cherifs, doctors, and Imams of all parts, were at the banquet, and took their places according to their ranks and dignitys. The entire Alcoran was read over, and the feaſt concluded with prayers for the repoſe of the Mirza's ſoul. Afterwards

terwards the princeſs Canzade went to Sulta- Chap. 15.
nia, and tranſported from thence to Samarcand the Mirza's coffin, which had lain in the tomb of the prophet Caidar.

Timur after this order'd a famous chace in the plains of Actam, beyond the Araxes, in which the utmoſt magnificence appear'd. The dogs had coverings of ſattin imbroider'd with gold, and the hunting-leopards had chains of gold ſet with precious ſtones about their necks: there was an infinite number of Grecian grey-hounds, ſo eſteem'd for their ſwiftneſs, as alſo a very uncommon and excellent kind of beagles; but what were moſt remarkable, were huge European maſtiffs, as ſtrong as the lions of Africa, as terrible as tigers rous'd up to the fight, and as ſwift as arrows. After three days the circle began to cloſe, and the ſlaughter, which is call'd Camarmichi, was made upon an infinite number of wild beaſts, as lions, antilopes, roe-bucks, as well of the mountains as of the plains, and alſo ſtags.

After the hunting was over, Timur return'd to the camp, where he diſtributed among the Cherifs, doctors and Imams of Samarcand, Kech, Bocara, and other citys of Tranſoxiana, an innumerable quantity of uncommon curioſitys, which he had taken from the kingdom of Natolia, among which were ſeveral handſom ſtuffs, belts of gold, beautiful horſes, mules, women-ſlaves and boys; after which he permitted 'em to return home, which they did, loading his highneſs with their praiſes and thanks.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Timur's return from a campain of ſeven years.

TIMUR having made himſelf maſter, during his campain of ſeven years, of the kingdoms of Natolia and Syria with their dependences; and having oblig'd the inhabitants of Grand-Cairo, the capital of Egypt, to coin the mony, and read the Coutbe, which is the friday-prayer for the reigning prince, in his name and titles; the Egyptians having alſo ſubmitted to pay an annual tribute; and Timur having likewiſe fulfil'd the precept of the Alcoran in making war on the Chriſtians of Georgia, whoſe pride and power he aſſuag'd: he found that to crown the triumphs of his happy life, he had no more to conquer in all Aſia than the empire of China, the inhabitants of which were infidels. Whereupon he immediately reſolv'd on that conqueſt, and departed from Carabagh the 14th of Ramadan 806, which anſwers to the year of the Monky, for Samarcand. He croſs'd the Araxes on a bridge, and encamp'd on the other ſide in a meadow near Nimet-Abad, one of the towns on the canal of Berlas, which canal he had dug himſelf, as we ſaid before: and he was join'd here by the Mirza Charoc, who according to order had taken the road to Kzelygadge.

April 8. 1404.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

Timur inveſts the Mirza Omar in the empire of Hulacou Can.

ABOUT this time a great feaſt was made at court on occaſion of the emperor's giving the Mirza Omar the government of the empire of Hulacou Can, for which he iſſu'd out his letters-patent ſign'd with the imperial ſeal, which was the impreſſion of his red hand. This empire contain'd the countrys of Azerbijana, the kingdom of Roum or Natolia as far as Conſtantinople; and Syria as far as Egypt. The princes who govern'd the kingdoms of Fars and the two Iracs, were commanded to obey his orders, and aſſiſt at his diets. Timur gave him the troops and officers of the Mirza Miran Chah, and permitted him to depart at the ſame time: he nam'd for his principal officers, who were to have penſions, the Emirs Gehan Chah, Rouſtem ſon of the Emir Mouſa, Tevekkul Berlas, Juneid Bouroulday, and others; and gave him ten thouſand horſe, recommending to him to do nothing contrary to the ſentiments of the Emir Gehan Chah. Then Timur preſented to this new king of the Medes a crown, a veſt, a belt ſet with precious ſtones, and a horſe with a ſaddle of gold; and to each of his Emirs a robe and a belt.

The prince then took leave, and paid his reſpects to the emperor, who tenderly embrac'd him as well as the Emirs, and then diſmiſs'd 'em. The Emir Gehan Chah cou'd not refrain from tears at parting from the emperor and court, becauſe of his long affection to his highneſs. Ti-

Book VI. mur afterwards gave veſts and belts to the Emir Cheik Ibrahim, Malek Iſſa the Sultan of Merdin, Malek Azeddin Chir, Kuſtendil a Georgian, Tizec, Dialek, and Beſtam, whom he order'd to attend on the Mirza Omar, who took his road thro the delightful country of Alatac.

Timur departed from this place, and hunted in his march. After a day's journy he encamp'd in a meadow on the bank of the river Abagloc, otherwiſe nam'd Tchaybelaroud, where he ſtaid to the end of Ramadan.

Timur celebrated the feaſt of the grand Bairam with great devotion and pomp. Moulana Nezameddin Chanabi, one of the moſt eloquent doctors of the age, who had wrote part of the hiſtory of Timur, preach'd that day, read the Coutbe, and perform'd the ceremonys of prayer. Several alms and pious gifts were diſtributed; and the feaſt was finiſh'd by a magnificent banquet, in which were ſerv'd up abundance of the moſt excellent diſhes and wines.

CHAP. XVIII.

Continuation of the hiſtory of the Mirza Rouſtem and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were ſent towards Rei.

THE Mirza Rouſtem and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were gone to Rei to gain intelligence of what Eskender Cheiki was doing, being arriv'd at that country, found that Eskender had revolted, and having fortify'd the citadel of Firouz Couh, and plac'd in it his ſon and family, had fled to the mountains in the foreſts of Tchelaoun and Rouſtemdar. Our generals ſtaid twenty days at Tahran in the province

vince of Rei; and having got together the in- Chap. 18.
fantry of Rei, Com, Cachan, Savé and Derg-
huzin, to the number of two thouſand, they departed in purſuit of Eskender, enter'd the foreſt of Rouſtemdar, and beſieg'd the fortreſs of Nour, which they took and raz'd. Malek Keyoumerres came to find 'em in this place; and as he was at variance with Eskender, they ſeiz'd him, and ſent him to Eskender: "Behold, ſay they, we ſend you your enemy, "that you may ſee we are willing to accommodate matters with you: therefore ſuſpect nothing, but come without delay to meet us. "If you return to your obedience, we'll make a "treaty with you in the name of Timur: you "have ſpent part of your life in his ſervice; don't "root up the tree which you have planted.

Eskender dar'd not come to 'em becauſe of his revolt, but endeavour'd to ſtrike up an accommodation with Kyoumerres, and as well by threats as promiſes, engag'd him to be of his party. Then having ſworn a reciprocal friendſhip, they join'd againſt us, and committed acts of hoſtility. Whilſt the court was encamp'd on the bank of the river Agloc, a courier came from the Emir Solyman Chah, who gave advice to the emperor of what had happen'd. Whereupon Timur immediately reſolv'd to march thither in perſon, and ſent orders to the Emir Mezrab, lieutenant-general of Coraſſana, to march with his troops by the road of Sari and Ancol, to revenge him on Eskender.

The 7th of Chawal 806, an officer of the April 30. 1404.
Mirza Calil Sultan arriv'd from Tranſoxiana, who aſſur'd the emperor from that prince that the affairs of thoſe parts were in a very good condition, and that the people enjoy'd perfect peace and tranquillity.

CHAP. XIX.

Timur ſends the Mirza Eskender and the Emir Chamelic before the reſt towards Rei.

THE emperor being arriv'd at Ardebil, ſent the Emir Chamelic and Pir Ali Selduz, with a thouſand men, to Rei before the others, with orders to get together the ſoldiers of the Arabian tribes and the hords of Caladge, Turks who dwell about Savé, Com, Cachan, Tchara and Perahan, as far as Kerchroud, and to form 'em into a body to join the army: and he order'd the Misza Eskender to join the Mirza Roullem and the Emir Solyman Chah

Timur having paſs'd by Ardebil and Myana, went down to Sertchem, where he found Douladi governor of Avenic, who was come thither to pay his reſpects to him. Timur tenderly embrac'd him becauſe of his former ſervices, and having given him a veſt and belt, ſaid to him, "We are not certain we ſhall ever be able to "ſee each other again; but don't neglect in- "forming your ſelf of what ſhall paſs at my "court. The Sultan Ahmed Gelair is at pre- "ſent retir'd, and in a low condition, ſo there's "nothing to be fear'd from him: but be upon "your guard againſt the Turcoman prince Ca- "ra Youſef." Then Timur diſmiſs'd his old friend.

May. 13. Timur departed from Sertchem, and arriv'd at Sultania the 20th of Chawal 806, to which place came the perſons who had been ſent into Ghilan to receive the mony we mention'd before; they brought thence a great quantity of mony, horſes, ſtuffs,

ſluffs, and curioſitys. The emperor departed next day but one from Sultania, and after ſome days journy arriv'd at Casbin, to which place the Mirza Aboubeere came poſt in nine days from Ardebil by the road of Kelas, having for his attendance Pir Huſſein Berlas and Sevindgic. He paid his reſpects to his highneſs, and beſought him to permit the Mirza Miran Chah, his father, to go to Bagdad, to reſide there with him: which requeſt was granted. Miran Chah receiv'd a gratification of four hundred thouſand Dinars Copeghi [1], a hundred horſes, and ſeveral toys, and then return'd to Sultania. Chap. 19.

Timur being gone from Casbin to Saouc-Boulac, gave the Mirza Aboubeere two hundred horſes, a hundred pair of cuiraſſes, and a hundred thouſand Dinars Copeghi: he order'd him to meet the Emir Solyman Chah, and march with him againſt Eskender Cheikh. The emperor alſo made a preſent to Chahimulc, wife of Aboubeere, and daughter of the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, of the lordſhip of Dudgyail, dependent on Bagdad; and this princeſs then return'd to Sultania.

Aboubeere having caus'd the ſnow to be remov'd, aſcended the mountain of Acabay Talagoun, and join'd the Mirza Rouſtem at Kudgyour, the Mirza Eskender, and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were all encamp'd there with a good trench round 'em, fortify'd with branches of trees: and they ſtaid here twenty days, till the arrival of the army. Having receiv'd freſh orders to fall upon Eskender, they departed to that end; and as the country was entirely cover'd with wood, they cut down the trees to

1 A Dinar Copeghi is a ducat of gold, in value ſeven livres.

Book VI. open a way croſs, and mended the paſſages which had been ruin'd with planks; and thus they purſu'd Eskender, killing all the enemys they met.

May 22. 1404. Timur enter'd the meadow of Rei the firſt of Zilcade 806, and encamp'd in the plain of Sari Camich: he order'd the ſuperfluous equipages to be conducted by the road of Rei and Khouvar. Bic Mulc Aga, wife of the Mirza Pir Mehemed, had leave to return with her ſons to Gaznin and Candahar. The Emir Chamſeddin Abbas and others, who had the care of tranſporting the Caratatars and colonys, which had remov'd from Azerbijana, had orders to take the road of Khouvar and Semnan. Then the Emir Chamelic, who had ſet out before, arriv'd at Rei.

Timur being come to the caſtle of Ghulkendan, which lay in ruins, ſituate at the foot of mount Demavend, examin'd it, and gave orders for its being rebuilt of ſtone and mortar, and render'd as flouriſhing as before. From thence having paſs'd by Demavend at the head of his army rang'd in order of battel, he arriv'd at Firouzcouh.

CHAP. XX.

The taking of the citadel of Firouzcouh.

AMONG the ſtrongeſt places mention'd in hiſtory, none deſerves more notice than the citadel of Firouzcouh, ſituate on the ridge of a mountain, with walls of the utmoſt ſtrength.

May 31. 1404. On the 9th of Zilcade 806, the imperial ſtandard arriv'd there, and the troops form'd the ſiege, encamping at all the avenues round about it. Every one having taken his poſt, the machines and

and arms neceſſary were got ready: the throwers of wild-fire began the aſſault, and were ſeconded by the braveſt men of the army, who expos'd their lives with the greateſt intrepidity. And as one of the towers of the place was built at the foot of the mountain, on the bank of the river, and the walls of that tower were rais'd as high as the level of the mountain, the beſieg'd made uſe of it to draw up water out of the river; but our men turn'd the courſe of the river from the foot of the mountain, and ſpoil'd the water which was left. This oblig'd the beſieg'd to ſally out to hinder 'em, being reſolv'd rather to die than ſuffer this. Chap. 20.

During night an officer of the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, accompany'd by Mehemed Azad, Cheik Behloul, Deyantencour, Acbouga, and other brave men, got up one after another to the foot of the walls. They were perceiv'd by the beſieg'd, who ran thither in great numbers, fought with all their ſtrength, and wounded ſeveral of our men: but day being come, all the ſoldiers aſcended the mountain by different places, and gave a general aſſault. The ſon of Eskender Cheiki, governor of the caſtle, and all the others, perceiving the intrepidity with which they were attack'd, were ſeiz'd with fear, tho the gariſon conſiſted of three hundred men, or rather giants of Mazendran, or ſatyrs of the foreſt. Their inquietude oblig'd 'em to ſend ſeveral of their men to Timur, to beg quarter with ſubmiſſion. The emperor gave theſe meſſengers veſts, and treated 'em with abundance of kindneſs: whereupon they were no ſooner return'd to the place, than Eskender's ſon, and all the reſt of the officers and ſoldiers, came to caſt themſelves at the emperor's feet, and deliver up the caſtle, which the troops enter'd, and made all the inhabitants

Book VI. go out, that they might be tranſported to another place. Thus this ſtrong citadel, whoſe top ſeem'd to reach the heavens, was taken after two days ſiege: Timur left there, as governor, Zenghi Touni with a good gariſon.

June 2. Next day, the 11th of Zilcade 806, Timur took horſe, and went to incamp in a meadow half a league from thence. He ſent back to Samarcand the empreſſes Serai Mulc Canum and Touman Aga, with the Mirzas Oluc-Bec, Ibrahim Sultan, Aidgel, and Sadvaccas, who departed by the road of Sultan Meidan: and afterwards the emperor march'd againſt Eskender Cheiki.

Then advice was brought that the Caratatars, being arriv'd near the town of Damgan, had wounded their Deroga, and were revolted; the Deroga of another band, which march'd after 'em, diſcover'd Tangribirmich, who lay upon the earth naked and wounded, and ſcarce alive, and carry'd him into the town to dreſs his wounds. The other bands hearing this, reſolv'd to fly; upon which the Emir Chamſeddin Abbas, Atilmich, Chalveli ſon of Sevindgic, and the other captains of companys who had the conduct of the bands, fell ſword in hand upon theſe miſerable wretches, of whom they deſtroy'd a great number; and either within the town of Damgan, or near it, ſlew about three thouſand upon the ſpot, ſo that the dead bodys ſtop'd up the paſſage of the ſtreets. Several fled into the foreſts of Eſtar-Abad, and the Emir Chamſeddin brought away the reſt.

Timur on advice of this immediately ſent away Beyan Coutchin, Fazel, ſon of Seifelmuluc, ſon of Hadgi Seifeddin, Dané Coja, Rouſtem Poulad, and Comari Behader, with fifteen hundred horſe, in purſuit of the fugitives. The

Mirza

Mirza Ahmed Omar Cheik and the Emir Beren- Chap. 21.
dac were likewiſe ſent after 'em on the ſame account, and went as far as Damgan: but they ſoon return'd to join the emperor, becauſe they found that ſome of the Caratatars had been ſlain, others fled, and others brought away by the Emir Chamſeddin and the Derogas. Beyan Coutchin, and the others who went out firſt in purſuit of the fugitives, paſs'd by Beſtam, croſs'd the mountain of Lengheroud, enter'd the foreſt of Mazendran, and join'd the Caratatars at Caratugan, on the ſhore of the Caſpian ſea; and tho the Tartars were far more numerous, yet they attack'd 'em immediately, and having happily defeated 'em, ſlew above a thouſand, and took more than ten thouſand familys priſoners. After this expedition Beyan Coutchin return'd to court.

When the empreſſes, who had taken the road to Samarcand with the baggage, were arriv'd at Beſtam, the officers who conducted the Mirza Charoc's baggage, parted from the reſt, and went to Herat by the way of Nichabour; and Serai Mulc Canum and Touman Aga went by the road of Jadgerom and Efterain with the greateſt baggage.

CHAP. XXI.

Timur marches to Tchelao.

TIMUR being accuſtom'd to execute the greateſt part of his enterprizes himſelf, he march'd in perſon againſt Eskender Cheiki: and as the Mirza Charoc was fallen ſick, he return'd to Herat with the officers of his houſhold, while

Book VI. while his Emirs and troops follow'd the imperial army to Tchelao, at which place they arriv'd in a few days, altho the ways were over high mountains, and thro deep vallys. The troops being arriv'd at the mountain of Tchelao, the ungrateful Eskender was oblig'd to fly, and retire into the defile call'd hell.

June 11. The 20th of Zilcade Timur arriv'd at Tchelao; from whence, not being able to find Eſkender, he departed the ſame day. In this road is a very deep defile full of woods, always cover'd with miſts and fogs; in the middle of which is a great and extremely rapid torrent, which can neither be forded nor ſwum over. The great difficulty there is in paſſing this defile is the reaſon of its being nam'd the defile of hell: and as Eskender had broke the bridge over the torrent, after having paſs'd it, Timur was oblig'd to build another. The ſoldiers ſhortly built one of wood, on which forty brave officers paſs'd firſt, and were follow'd by five hundred men, whom they commanded. Youſef Berlas afterwards croſs'd it with Couthin Toucheal, as did the Seid Coja, ſon of the Cheik Ali Behader; and at length the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, follow'd by the Emir Cheik Nonreddin, who got up to the ridge of the mountain of the defile, cutting down the trees to open a paſſage in ſearch of Eskender. Timur alſo paſs'd the bridge, and encamp'd on the top of a mountain where there were no trees, but continual rains and fogs. At this place Timur gave audience to the Seid Iſmael of Kerſecan, one of the lords of Termed.

Timur ſent ſoldiers into all the foreſts to find Eskender, aſſigning 'em for guides the Cherifs of Mazendran.

Among

Among thoſe who went in ſearch of Eskender, the captains Deryay Coutchin, Chadimulc Berlas, the Cheik Mehemed Coutchin, Bic Temour Coutchin, Codadad Tchoura, and Vefadar, met him on the 26th of Zilcade 806, in the middle of a wood near the Caſpian ſea. The Cheik Dervich Allahi was ſeiz'd with fear, and turn'd back on pretence of bringing Youſef Berlas with more expedition to back 'em, he being behind 'em with his troops. Chap. 21. June 17.

In the mean while Eskender, at the head of two hundred foot and thirty horſe of his acquaintance, ſally'd out of his little camp, and prepar'd to attack our men, who were but twenty in number, and were not ignorant of Eskender's valor, having ſeen him ſeveral times in action; for intrepidity and courage were hereditary to him, being deſcended in a right line from Bigen ſon of Keyou, and Banou Kechaſpe daughter of the great Rouſtem, as may be ſeen in the Chah Namé or Fardaouſi, which makes Bigen ſpeak theſe words, "My grandfather was a lion in "battel, my father was the great Keyou: this "day you ſhall behold my prodigious exploits." Our twenty men, notwithſtanding this, fearing Timur's reproaches, reſolv'd rather to die than fly, reflecting that if the time deſtin'd for their death was come, they might as well die here as in another place: ſo they collected all their courage, and confiding in the ordinary good fortune of Timur's arms, diſcharg'd their arrows. Eskender, follow'd by his horſemen, attack'd 'em ſeveral times with their pikes; but our men ſo dexterouſly ply'd him, that he cou'd not only gain no ground, but ſhamefully turn'd his back before a handful of men, with all his ſoldiers. Ingratitude is the ſource of all misfortunes. Eskender had preſerv'd his honor, if he had

had not abandon'd Timur, from whom he had receiv'd ſo many favors.

After Eskender was fled into the foreſt, our ſcouts quarter'd in his camp, not knowing what road he had taken. Then Youſef Berlas arriv'd with Seifelmuloue and Hadgi Abdalla, who alſo enter'd Eskender's camp, which they entirely pillag'd; carrying away abundance of horſes, mules, ſtuffs of gold, and other riches. They were join'd there by the Mirzas Rouſtem and Aboubeere, accompany'd by the Emirs Sevindgic and Solyman Chah, who came from the left. At break of day there appear'd in the mountain ſomething glittering, which advanc'd towards 'em. The Emir Sevindgic march'd to the left towards the mountain and foreſts in ſearch of Eskender: taking with him his nephew Leheraſp and all his men, and met the Emir Ali, Eskender's ſon, with his daughter, wives and domeſtics, who were all made ſlaves.

CHAP. XXII.

Battel between the Mirza Sultan Huſſein and Eskender Cheiki. The flight of the latter.

THE Mirza Sultan Huſſein, and the Seid Coja ſon of the Cheik Ali Behader, join'd our ſcouts with ſeventy men, and enter'd with 'em into the woods in ſearch of Eskender. They met him about noon in the midſt of this foreſt, having with him two hundred foot and fifty horſe, who prepar'd to defend themſelves. The Mirza Sultan Huſſein fell furiouſly upon Eskender, and immediately retreated as if he wou'd have fled. The enemy, who thought to improve

prove this ſeeming advantage, ſally'd out of the wood to fall upon our men; but they turn'd upon 'em ſuddenly in good order, and made a cruel ſlaughter of the foot. Vefadar perform'd whatever cou'd be expected from a great man; but was wounded with a lance in his face, which ſtruck out his teeth: yet this did not hinder his fighting. Two horſemen of Tchelaõ were made priſoners by the officers of the Mirza Sultan Huſſein: and Eskender perceiving himſelf vanquiſh'd, re-enter'd the woods, and went out by the ſide towards Ghilan. He was never heard of more; tho ſome ſay that he took the habit of a monk, while others aſſure us that he died thro grief in the woods. Chap. 22.

The Mirza Sultan Huſſein ſent one of the men who were taken to Timur by Cazan Dervich. The emperor was then encamp'd in the mountain we ſpoke of before, and order'd the man to inform him what he knew of Eskender.

The Mirza Sultan Huſſein at his return met on the ſhore of the Caſpian ſea the Mirzas Rouſtem and Aboubeere, with the Emirs Solyman Chah and Cheik Noureddin, who had been in ſearch of Eskender; they march'd together along the ſea-ſide near three leagues, advancing towards Ghilan. They encamp'd there, and were join'd by the Emir Mezrab Yacou, who had likewiſe been ſeeking Eskender with the troops of Coraſſana by the road of Amol and Sari. Then all the Emirs departed together for the imperial camp. Timur, notwithſtanding all the fatigues they had undergone, reprov'd 'em for not having continu'd to purſue Eskender, and ſent 'em all back again on the ſame account with the Emir Chamelic. They fatigu'd themſelves exceedingly in the woods, which were very miry, becauſe of the continual rains, which hinder'd

hinder'd their encampment. On advice of this, Timur ſent orders for 'em to return.

Then the emperor decamp'd from the mountain, and croſſing the bridge over the torrent in the defile of hell, went to encamp before the caſtle of Nour in the province of Rouſtemdar. The ſoldiers brought before him Eskender's nephew, and others of his relations, with ſeveral of his officers: he gave 'em a handſom reception, and granted 'em quarter.

During night an expreſs came from the Mirzas Aboubecre and Sultan Huſſein, and from the Emir Solyman Chah, with advice of their arrival at the torrent of the defile of hell, which they cou'd not paſs by reaſon the bridge was broken. Timur immediately ſent to 'em Mehemed Azad and Toukel Baourtchi, with thirty watermen of the Gihon, having for their chief Ourdouchah, who with their uſual dexterity built a bridge, on which the Mirzas croſs'd the torrent with their troops, and return'd to join his highneſs.

The army paſs'd the night in the ſame place, and next day march'd to the caſtle of Harſi towards Ghilan: and Timur being arriv'd at Kelare Decht, encamp'd ſome days in that meadow, where the Emir Cayaſeddin Ali, ſon of the Seid Kemaleddin, had a handſom reception from the emperor, who gave him the principality of Amol, becauſe he had always carry'd on a war with Eskender Cheiki.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

Timur returns to the ſeat of his empire.

AFTER the flight of Eskender, the taking of his wives, children and domeſtics, the conqueſt of his fortreſſes, and the pillage of his effects, horſes and cattel, the emperor reſolv'd to return to Samarcand. He order'd the Mirzas who had the government of the two Iracs to go thither; and likewiſe the Seid Azzedin Hezaregheri with his brothers, and the Seid Ali Mazendrani, to return to their reſpective governments: and he gave veſts to each of 'em. The Mirza Rouſtem, attended by the Emir * Said Berlas, departed for Iſpahan, the Mirza Aboubecre for Bagdad, the Mirza Eskender for Hamadan, the Seid Azzeddin for Hezaregheri, and the Seid Ali for Amol.

At length Timur departed from Kelare Decht, and in few days arriv'd at the country of Lâr, at the foot of the mountain Demavend, where the emperor Argoun Chah had built a pavilion in form of a dome, which is yet nam'd the Kiochk of Argoun.

The 20th of Zilhadge 807, he decamp'd, and march'd with ſo great expedition with the Emirs and his domeſtics, that on the 22d he encamp'd at the mountain of Firouzcouh. He gave the Emir Solyman Chah a veſt wrought July 10. 1404.

* Emir ſignifys commander: as alſo a prince of Mahomet's race, likewiſe call'd Cherif and Seid. But all Emirs are not Cherifs; for there are ſome Emirs who are not Mahometans, as among the Druſes, Maronites and others.

with

Book VI. with gold, and a cap enrich'd with precious ſtones, leaving him in the government of the towns and provinces of Rei, Firouzcouh, and their dependences: and he permitted Beyan Coutchin, Deroga of Rei, to return to guard the caſtle of Ghule Khindan.

From thence Timur paſs'd by Sultan Meidan,
July 14. and the 24th of Zilhadge arriv'd at Beſtam, where he viſited Sultan Elaarefin, whoſe prayers he beſought, diſtributing alms among the poor. Pir Padichah, prince of Eſterabad, who had follow'd Timur in this expedition, and had been permitted to go before the reſt to his own town, return'd to this place to meet the court, and offer his preſents, among which were nine ſets of horſes, nine in each. Timur gave him a veſt, and ſent him back.

Dané Coja, who had been ſent in purſuit of the Tartars, arriv'd at the ſame place, and gave an account of what he had done. Timur order'd that the Tartar chiefs he had taken ſhou'd be laid in irons, and conducted to Samarcand by the Derogas of the countrys they ſhou'd paſs thro. The emperor departed from Beſtam the ſame day; and being arriv'd at the town of Jagaz, the lord Haſan Soufi Tercan came to him from the Mirza Charoc, to be inform'd where his highneſs wou'd appoint that prince to meet him. Haſan Soufi was ſent back poſt, to let Charoc know he might meet the emperor on the bank of the river Joucoudgecan.

Then Timur march'd with expedition, and
July 20. 1404. the firſt of Muharrem 807, departed from Nichabour, and went down to Achcabad. The 3d he encamp'd at the tomb of Dgyam, where he paid his devotions, imploring the prayers of that Santon. Afterwards he ſet out from thence, and went to encamp on the bank of the river Joucoud-

Joucoudgeran, where the Mirza Charoc had the honor to kiſs his hands, and offer his preſents, which were generouſly diſtributed among the lords who attended the court. Hendouchah brought to this place Acbouga, and Carabougai Joun Garbani, whom he had made priſoners, becauſe they had revolted during the emperor's abſence, who order'd 'em to be hang'd in an hoſpital near that place. Chap. 23.

About the ſame time Timur ſent the Coja Ahmed Touſi, to be treaſurer-general of the revenues of Coraſſana, and comptroller of the regiſters of the commiſſarys: this lord collected in forty days the ſum of two hundred Tomans Copeghi from the monied-men and the commiſſarys.

Then Timur took leave of the Mirza Charoc, and departed. When he was arriv'd at Corlan, he encamp'd at the brink of a fountain near the hoſpital, to which place Temour Coja Acbouga came from Samarcand to meet the emperor, to whom he preſented nine race-horſes. From thence Timur went to encamp at the bank of the river Morgab, where he receiv'd the complaints of the inhabitants of Chicheƈou, againſt the oppreſſions of Apaƈelpa, their Deroga, who was condemn'd on that account to have his feet bor'd thro, and himſelf hang'd with his head downwards; which was accordingly executed.

The emperor then departed, and on his road was met by the Derogas of the towns and the Kelanters of the tribes, who preſented to him freſh horſes, which the officers mounted, to make the more haſte. Then he paſs'd by Lengher Cheik Zade Bayazid, Andecoud, Ducça, the defile of Ghez, and Ali Abad; and encamp'd near the town of Adina Meſdgid, where

Book VI. he receiv'd the principal inhabitants of Balc who came to meet him. From thence Timur went to Syahghird, and croſſing the Gihon in a bark, quarter'd at Termed in the palace of the lord Acalmulc, where this Can's ſon made a magnificent banquet, and conſiderable preſents. Afterwards he paſs'd by the iron-gate of Coluga, and by Chekedalic, and went to encamp at Doulburdgi. From this place he march'd to Kech, and lodg'd in Acſerai: then he viſited the tombs of the Santon Chamſeddin Kelar, whoſe prayers he implor'd, and of the prince his father, the Mirza Gehanghir his ſon, and all his children and relations. At length he took horſe, croſs'd the mountain of Kech, and lay in the garden of Tact Caratche; from whence he went down to the garden of Caratopa, and quarter'd in the palace of Gehannuma, where he was complimentnd by the Mirza Caidou, ſon of the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir, being conducted by Coja Youſef, and Argoun Chah governor of Samarcand, who kiſs'd the ground, offer'd their preſents, and ſprinkled precious ſtones upon the emperor. The empreſs Toukel Canum, with all the ladys and Emirs, alſo paid their reſpects, and offer'd their preſents. As the emperor had made ſuch haſte, that no one cou'd know of his arrival, the Cherifs, Cadis, and principal perſons of Samarcand, had not an opportunity of meeting and paying their reſpects to him at any other place than this.

CHAP.

LIBRARY OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY

CHAP. XXIV.

Timur's entry into his imperial city of Samarcand.

TIMUR departed from Gehannuma in the month of Muharrem 807, and went down to the garden of planes in Samarcand, from whence having made his entry into the city; he viſited the college of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, which he had not ſeen ſince it was built; and afterwards he return'd to the garden of planes, where preparations were made for the banquets. The empreſſes and Mirzas, who had ſet out firſt with the baggage from Firouzcouh by the way of Baverd, Macan and Merou, not being yet arriv'd, Timur diſpatch'd couriers to haſten their coming. The empreſs Touman Aga having croſs'd the Gihon at Amouye, met the courier in the meadow of Bocara, who ſtaid there three days to wait the great empreſs Serai Mulc Canum. Then leaving the baggage there, they went with expedition to Vabkyanab, thence to Rebatmulc, and the meadow of Tchacmounar, thence to Tatkent, and afterwards to Kutche Malek, where a feaſt was ready prepar'd for 'em, while a ſecond courier arriv'd to advertize 'em to haſten. Hereupon they inſtantly took horſe, and in a ſhort time came to Samarcand. Serai Mulc Canum went down to Baghi Tchenar, and Touman Aga to Baghi Behicht, whither Timur immediately repair'd. But God was not pleas'd to ſuffer him to attain to this utmoſt pitch of glory and power, without ſome mixture of bitterneſs; for July 1404.

Book VI. this good ſucceſs in the conqueſts of Syria, Egypt and Natolia, was follow'd by a diſtemper which ſeiz'd him in Baghi Behicht, but did not laſt long. After his diſtemper was gone off, he went to Baghi Chemal to reſide there for ſome days, where he gave a handſom banquet to all the Mirzas and lords of the court, on the birth of a ſon to Beghiſi Sultan.

Timur afterwards enter'd Samarcand, and lodg'd in the palace of the late Mirza Mehemed Sultan, for whom he caus'd a magnificent ſepulchre to be built in form of a dome, cloſe to the college built by that prince: the cincture of the dome was of marble ſet off with gold and azure; within it was dug a vault, to lay the prince's body in; and a charming garden was made round it on the ruins of ſome houſes. Then the emperor apply'd himſelf to render juſtice to the oppreſs'd, and remedy the evils which had crept in among the inhabitants of Samarcand. When he paſs'd by the great moſque, which himſelf had built, he thought the gallery, which had been erected during his abſence, was too little: ſo he order'd another to be made, and reprimanded in the hall of audience the architect Coja Mahmoud Daoud for his not having done it as it ought to have been. Timur lodg'd in the college of Serai Mulc Canum ſituate over-againſt the moſque; and to render his juſtice the more conſpicuous, he order'd the commiſſarys and comptrollers to be arreſted and bound, who being interrogated, thoſe who were found culpable receiv'd the puniſhment they merited, according to the wrong they had done the people; and Maſaoud Daoud and Mehemed Dgilde, who had been the principal ſecretarys, and during Timur's abſence perform'd the function of Viſiers,

Viſiers, were both hang'd at Canigheul, during the banquet which we ſhall relate hereafter. Chap. 24.

Afterwards Timur went to the garden of planes, where by the procurement of the Emirs he gave audience to an ambaſſador of Idecou emperor of Capchac, who preſented to him a Choncar * and other things, and made his harangues, which contain'd his maſter's ſubmiſſion and teſtimonials of obedience.

* A bird of prey.

From hence the emperor went to the garden of Dileucha, where he ſtaid ſeveral days, and receiv'd an ambaſſador from one of the greateſt ſovereigns of Europe [1], who made him ſeveral curious and magnificent preſents, among which were pieces of tapiſtry, which the Europeans had work'd with ſo much niceneſs, that if they were to be compar'd with the great performances of the painter Mani on the cloth of Artene, Mani wou'd be cover'd with ſhame, and his works appear deform'd.

Then Timur order'd the architects, who had been brought from Damaſcus, to build a magnificent palace in the garden ſouth of Baghi Chemal, which was ſquare, each of its ſides being a thouſand five hundred cubits. This palace was the largeſt and moſt magnificent of any Timur had built. The chief ornaments of the buildings in Syria are of marble; and running ſtreams are common in their houſes: the Syrian architects are alſo very ingenious in moſaic work and ſculpture, and in contriving curious fountains and perpetual jets-d'eau; and what is moſt remarkable is, that with ſtones of divers colors they do the ſame

[1] From the king of Caſtile, of which we have an account written in Spaniſh, mention'd more particularly in the French editor's preface to this book.

Book VI. ſort of work, which the artificers in inlaid work do with ebony and ivory, and that with equal niceneſs and delicacy. They likewiſe made ſeveral fountains in the palace, the beauty of which was augmented by an infinity of jets-d'eau of divers forms, with a ſurprizing and inimitable art. Afterwards the workmen of Perſia and Irac enrich'd the out-parts of the walls with porcelane of Cachan, which gave the finiſhing ſtroke to the beauty of this palace. Then Timur order'd a noble banquet to be prepar'd, with all the delights which mortals can deſire, or by which the ſenſes can be gratify'd. He was there congratulated by the princes his children, the empreſſes and princeſſes, who ſprinkled upon him gold and precious ſtones. * Spaniſh. The European * ambaſſadors were alſo invited to this great banquet, and partook of the diverſions; for the Caſſes [4] have alſo their place in the ſea [5].

CHAP. XXV.

Timur holds a general diet. A great feaſt for the marriage of the princes at Canighul.

TIMUR having long ſince form'd a deſign of conquering all Aſia, cou'd not refrain from finiſhing what he had intended. Neglectful therefore of the delights of repoſe, he

[4] A little animal, about the ſize of a barly-corn, which are ſeen upon the ſurface of the ſea.

[5] By this expreſſion we perceive the great contempt the Zagataian court had of the Spaniſh ambaſſadors.

took

took up a reſolution to ſubdue the empire of China, which was inhabited by infidels. But before he wou'd begin this great enterprize, he was willing to execute the command of the Alcoran by the marriage of his grandchildren. Hereupon he order'd a feaſt to be made; and ſent out his circular letters to all the governors of provinces, generals of his armys, and Cherifs and nobles of his empire, to meet at a general diet, where they were to celebrate the nuptials. The princes Taizi Aglen and Bachtemour Aglen, who were deſcended from Genghiz Can, intreated Timur to ſummon the Mirza Pir Mehemed who was at Gaznin, and the Mirza Charoc who was in Coraſſana, to this famous Couroultai: they obtain'd their requeſt for Pir Mehemed; but as to Charoc, Timur anſwer'd, that it was not proper he ſhou'd come, he being the main ſupport of the kingdoms of Irac and Azerbijana. Chap. 25.

Canighul was the place appointed for the marriage-feaſt; and the firſt of Rabiulevel 807, which anſwers to the year of the Monky, Timur went to lodg there. This palace and the neighboring places were adorn'd with the greateſt magnificence; ſo that this autumn-ſeaſon render'd, in a manner, even the ſpring jealous. The tents were tied with ſilken cords, in which were abundance of carpets wrought with gold: the curtains were of velvet of Chuchter; and the cielings of ebony and ivory exquiſitely engrav'd. The emperor's apartment conſiſted of four great incloſures, which are call'd Scraperd, built on very regular plans: his Kherghiah or imperial pavilion made two hundred tents, gilt and adorn'd with precious ſtones. Each tent had twelve columns of ſilver inlaid with gold; the out-ſide was ſcarlet and Octob. 17. 1404.

Book VI. ſeven other colors, and the inſide ſatin of all colors. The upholſterers, of whom there was a great number, had employ'd a whole week in erecting and furniſhing this magnificent apartment. The Mirzas and Emirs had alſo each a Seraperd, a Barghiah, tents, and a great pavilion nam'd Kherghiah [6]. The columns of the tents were of maſſy ſilver, and the floor was cover'd with the richeſt carpets.

The governors of the provinces, the generals of the army, the lords and principal commanders of the empire, aſſembled in this place, and pitch'd their tents in good order. The people alſo came there from all nations, as China, Muſcovy, India, Greece, Zabul, Mazendran, Coraſſana, Fars, Bagdad, Syria, and in ſhort from all the kingdoms of Iran and Touran, that is to ſay, from all Aſia.

During theſe entertainments Mengheli Bougai Hadgeb, one of the principal lords of the court of Malek Ezzaher Barcoc, king of Egypt, arriv'd in quality of ambaſſador from Malek Enaſer Farrudge, who had ſucceeded Barcoc his father. This Mengheli was endow'd with very rare qualitys, cou'd repeat the whole Alcoran by heart, was maſter of a great deal of eloquence, and acquainted with ſeveral ſciences, which render'd him the moſt agreeable perſon in converſation. He brought abundance of uncommon preſents, ready mony, precious ſtones, rich ſtuffs, and nice toys. Among other raritys was a Giraffa [7], one of the ſtrangeſt animals

[6] Seraperd is an incloſure; Barghiah a great hall of audience; and Kherghiah a great pavilion. The two laſt are incloſ'd in the Seraperd.

[7] A long-neck'd creature about the bigneſs of a calf, bred in Africa, and, according to ſome, got by a camel upon a panther. It is cal'd in latin *Camelopardalus*.

upon

upon the earth, and nine of the largeſt oſ- Chap. 25.
triches of Africa.

The Mirza Calil Sultan came from Turkeſtan to this aſſembly, where he ſaluted the emperor, the great Emirs of ſtate, as Birdi Bei, Yadghiar Berlas, and others, who all made a very ſplendid appearance. The Mirza Pir Mehemed came from Gaznin, according to the orders he had receiv'd; he paid his reſpects to Timur, who embrac'd him, and by his tears teſtify'd his ſorrow at the death of his brother the Mirza Mehemed Sultan. The Mirza made his preſents, nine of a ſort: and next morning Timur gave him a veſt wove with gold, a crown and belt; and veſts to the officers of his houſhold, who left off their mourning-habits.

Then Coja Ahmed Touſi, receiver of the revenues of Coraſſana, arriv'd, and preſented the ſums belonging to the treaſury of Coraſſana, with abundance of curious toys, nine of a ſort. The emperor was not the only perſon who partook of the joys and diverſions; for both high and low had their ſhare. The moſt skilful artiſts prepar'd ſome maſter-pieces of their art, as trophys and cabinets of flowers to repreſent triumphs, which were adorn'd with garlands made up with perfect ſymmetry. There were in the jewelers ſhops necklaces of pearls and precious ſtones, eſpecially of grenadin and balaſs rubys, with an infinite number of pieces of rock-chryſtal, coral and agat, and ſeveral rings, bracelets and ear-rings; all which render'd Canighul a mine of gold and precious ſtones, inſtead of a mine of flowers, which its name implys.

An amphitheatre with four corners was built, call'd Tchartac, which was cover'd with pieces of brocade and Perſian carpets. There were ſeats for both the vocal and inſtrumental muſic;

and

Book VI. and alſo places for the buffoons and jeſters, who with their facetious ſayings excited mirth and laughter. There was likewiſe another Tchartac for all ſorts of tradeſmen; and a hundred of a different manner, fill'd with thoſe who ſold fruit, each of whom had made a kind of garden of piſtachios, pomegranates, almonds, pears and apples, in great order; which perfum'd the air, and made an agreeable ſight. The butchers were particularly taken notice of for the neatneſs of their repreſentations: they dreſs'd up a ſheep in a man's ſhape, and other skins in divers other ridiculous figures. There were ſpeaking goats which had horns of gold, and run after one another: they appear'd outwardly like goats, but were handſom young women diſguis'd in this manner: ſome were dreſs'd like fairys and angels, with wings, while others took the figure of elephants and ſheep.

The skinners alſo appear'd in maſquerades, ſome like leopards, others like lions, and others like other animals, with whoſe skins they were cover'd: there were thoſe likewiſe who reſembled foxes, and tigers. The deſign of the maſquerade was to repreſent genii who had transform'd themſelves into theſe ſeveral figures. The upholſterers likewiſe produc'd a maſterpiece of their trade; for they made a camel of wood, reeds, cords, and painted linen, which walk'd about as if alive: and the man within it, drawing a curtain, diſcover'd the workman in his own piece. The manufacturers of cotton alſo made birds with cotton, which look'd as if they were alive: they alſo made a Minaret of the ſame material with the help of reeds, which every one imagin'd to be built with brick and mortar, and which was higher than the Minarets of the moſques; it was co-

ver'd

ver'd with brocades and imbroidery-work, car- Chap. 25.
ry'd it ſelf about, and on its top was plac'd a ſtork. The ſaddlers were not behind the reſt; for they gave proofs of their skill by two litters for women, which open'd at the top, and after the uſual manner were laid upon a camel, in which ſat two of the moſt beautiful women of the city, each holding a skin in her hand; and they made pleaſant poſtures as well with their feet as hands, to divert the aſſembly. The mat-makers likewiſe ſhew'd their dexterity, having very neatly work'd with reeds two lines of writing of Couſi [1], and other large letters.

On the other ſide were the rope-dancers, who by their agility attracted every one's admiration; their rope at the ſame time ſeeming to touch the heavens. Thus the whole company was employ'd either as actors or ſpectators, all endeavoring to contribute to the celebrating the marriage of the princes the emperor's children, that is, of the Mirzas Olouc-Bec and Ibrahim Sultan, ſons of Charoc, Aidgel ſon of Miran Chah, Ahmed, Seidi Ahmed, and Biera, all three ſons of the Mirza Omar Cheik.

The emperor order'd the aſtrologers to chuſe a happy moment for an affair of ſuch importance; which being done, the firſt officer of the houſhold drew the curtain of the gate. The Cadis, Cherifs, Imams and doctors of the empire, met the emperor; and having agreed on the articles of marriage, the great doctor Cheik Chamſeddin Mehemed Jazari was choſen to read 'em to the aſſembly. The grand Cadi of Samarcand, Moulana Selahheddin, receiv'd the mutual conſent of the partys, which he regiſter'd; and then,

[1] The antient character of the Arabians.

ac-

Book VI. according to the maxims of the Hanafyan law, he join'd the princes and princeſſes together in marriage; on whom every one ſprinkled gold and precious ſtones.

The emperor, being ſeated on his throne, order'd a banquet of the utmoſt magnificence to be ſerv'd up to the brides and the other ladys of the court, by the moſt beautiful young women of his ſeraglio, who wore crowns compos'd of flowers. The princes of the blood, Emirs, Nevians, Cherifs, and foreign ambaſſadors, took their place according to their rank and dignity, as well as the Emirs of Tomans and Hezares. Theſe lords were ſeated under a canopy of twelve columns, diſtant from the nuptial hall about a horſe's courſe.

The Yeſaouls, or exempts, whom the Turks call Chaoux, were there backwards and forwards to perform the function of their poſts, mounted in a magnificent manner upon horſes of great price, with ſaddles of gold, adorn'd with precious ſtones, and habited in veſts of gold brocade, with an air of authority * and command.

On another ſide there were elephants of a prodigious ſize, on whoſe backs were plac'd a kind of thrones, with abundance of ornaments. Under the canopy with twelve columns, were plac'd earthern urns, with ſtrings of precious ſtones tied about 'em, fill'd with gold and ſilver poſts; and on the tops were cups of gold, agat, and rock-chryſtal, adorn'd with pearls, and ſeveral ſorts of jewels; all which were preſented on ſalvers of gold and ſilver. The drink was

* The Yeſaouls carry in their hands, as a ſign of their office, a ſilver-wand.

Cammez [1], Oxymel, Hippocras, brandy, wines, Sirma, and other liquors. It is reported that the wood of several large forests was cut down to dress the victuals at this banquet. The head-steward with his under-officers constantly attended to give all necessary orders as to the serving up of the dishes, before which an officer always walk'd. There were tables furnish'd in different places thro-out the whole plain, and flaggons of wine set near the tables, with an infinite number of baskets full of fruit. Besides the flaggons for the emperor's use, and for the lords of the court, there were several jars rang'd in all the plain for the people's drinking: and that the joy might be universal, the emperor order'd a proclamation shou'd be publish'd that all the people might enjoy what pleasures they pleas'd, and no one take cognizance of 'em. The crier read the proclamation as follows: "This is the time of feasting, pleasure and rejoicing. Let no one complain of or reprimand another. Let not the rich encroach upon the poor, or the powerful upon the weak. Let none ask another, "Why have you done thus?" After this declaration every one gave himself up to those pleasures he was most fond of, during the feast: and whatever was done pass'd unobserv'd. Chap. 26.

At length the feast was finish'd; after which, according to custom, a vast quantity of curious movable goods was laid upon mules and camels for the new-marry'd princes; among which were all sorts of rich habits, crowns, and belts

[1] Cammez is a drink us'd among the Tartars. The way of making it is mention'd in the history of Genghiz Can, book 5. chap. 10.

set

Book VI. ſet with precious ſtones. The mules had coverings of ſatin embroider'd with gold; their little bells were gold, as well as thoſe belonging to the camels: and both were handſomly adorn'd. This pompous equipage paſs'd before the people, who were ſtruck with admiration. The bridegrooms with their brides were cloth'd nine times in different habits, with crowns and belts ſet with precious ſtones; and each time they chang'd their clothes, they paid their reſpects as uſual, while gold and precious ſtones, pearls, rubys, and balaſs rubys, were ſprinkled upon 'em in great numbers, with which the ground was cover'd, and which became the domeſtics profit.

The following night there were every where illuminations with lanthorns, torches and lamps; and the new-marry'd princes enter'd the nuptial chamber. The next day Timur did 'em the honor to pay 'em a viſit at their own apartments, being accompany'd by the empreſſes, and great Emirs and Cherifs of his court. The rejoicings were ſo great thro-out the whole empire, that from Canighul as far as Tous in Coraſſana, there was not one place, where the ſound of drums and trumpets was not heard.

The ambaſſadors of Egypt, Spain, India, and Decht Capchac, Gete, and others, were witneſſes of this magnificence, and particularly of the pleaſures of the feaſt, which laſted two entire months. Timur diſtinguiſh'd 'em by particular favors, and gave veſts to them, as well as to the Cherifs and other great lords, who were aſſembled from all parts of the empire; he did the ſame to the generals, the governors of the provinces, and all the officers.

After the marriage-feaſts were over, Timur again betook himſelf to the adminiſtration of public

public affairs, ordering every one to return to his proper employment. The licence which had been granted during the feaſt was recal'd; and for the future no one was allow'd to drink wine, or commit any thing unlawful. Afterwards Timur retir'd to his cloſet, to addreſs himſelf to God by the following prayer. Chap. 26.

" O Almighty being, who art above whatever " man can conceive, and whoſe eſſence is un- " known to any but thy-ſelf, being all in all; " how can I recite thy praiſes, and how return " thanks in proportion to the favors I have re- " ceiv'd, ſince they are infinite? Out of no- " thing haſt thou created me; from poverty " haſt thou made me rich; and from a petty " prince haſt thou render'd me the moſt mighty " emperor of the univerſe. To thy great boun- " ty I owe the gaining of ſo many battels, and " the conqueſt of ſo many kingdoms: for what " am I, a poor and vile creature? I ſhou'd be " incapable of every thing, were I not aſſiſted " by thy grace. In peace thou favor'ſt me with " quiet and joy; and in war thou giveſt me " victory, and maintaineſt me in ſovereign au- " thority, fear'd by my enemys, and lov'd by " my ſubjects. Continue then, O thou great " Creator, thy goodneſs towards me: ſince " thou haſt choſen me in thy clemency, don't " chaſe me away in thy wrath. I know that I " am but duſt; and that if thou doſt not favor " me with thy protection, all my glory and " grandeur will be turn'd into vileneſs and diſ- " honor. O Lord, put me not to ſhame be- " cauſe of my vices, who have been ſo long " accuſtom'd to partake of thy favors; and " then I ſhall reſt contented."

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

The cauſes which incited Timur to undertake the conqueſt of the kingdom of China.

IN the beginning of Timur's riſe Aſia was in the poſſeſſion of uſurpers, who had rais'd themſelves to ſovereignty, either by the extinction of the race of former kings and emperors, or by intrigues and revolts: but as the world cou'd not be peaceably govern'd by ſo many ſovereigns, there were continual wars amonſt 'em, and the poor people were drove into great extremitys. Virtue and tranquillity were baniſh'd the places which robbers only poſſeſs'd; ſecurity was no longer to be met with on the high-ways, which were full of thieves; and in fine, every thing was in confuſion and diſorder. The world might then be well compar'd to a human body, which being infected with ſome corrupt matter, neceſſarily falls ſick, and can receive no benefit but from a ſtrong medicine, which purges out the cauſe of the diſeaſe; and yet this purgation can't be undergone without ſome inconveniences which may ariſe from a deprav'd appetite. In the ſame manner, God, who was pleas'd to purge the world, made uſe of a medicine, which was both ſweet and bitter, to wit, the clemency and the wrath of the incomparable Timur; and to that effect, inſpir'd in him an ambition to conquer all Aſia, and to expel the ſeveral tyrants thereof. He eſtabliſh'd peace and ſecurity in this part of the world; ſo that a ſingle man might carry a ſilver-baſon fill'd with gold from the eaſt of

Aſia

Aſia to the weſt. But yet he cou'd not accompliſh this great affair, without bringing in ſome meaſure upon the places he conquer'd, deſtruction, captivity, and plunder, which are the concomitants of victory. Chap. 26.

After this hero was happily return'd from the conqueſts of Syria, Natolia and Georgia, and of conſequence found himſelf abſolute maſter of all the empires of Iran and Touran, he generouſly took up a reſolution to make preparations for the conqueſt of China, which was inhabited by infidels; that by this good work he might rectify what had been amiſs in other wars, wherein the blood of ſo many of the faithful had been ſpilt. Thus, after the marriage of the princes his grandchildren was conſummated, he ſummon'd the Mirzas his children, and the great Emirs of his council to court, to whom he made the following ſpeech.

"God hath favor'd us with ſuch extraordinary good fortune, that we have conquer'd "Aſia, and overthrown the greateſt kings of "the earth; few ſovereigns in paſt ages having "acquir'd ſo great dominions, or attain'd ſo "great authority, or had ſuch numerous armys, "or ſo abſolute a command. And as theſe "vaſt conqueſts have not been obtain'd without ſome violence, which has caus'd the deſtruction of a great number of God's creatures; I have reſolv'd to perform ſome good "action, which may atone for the crimes of "my paſt life, and to accompliſh that which all "the world beſides is not capable of, that is, "to make war on the infidels, and exterminate "the idolaters of China, which can't be done "without very great ſtrength and power. It "is therefore fitting, my dear companions, that "thoſe very troops which have been the inſtru-

Book VI. " ments whereby thoſe faults were committed,
" ſhou'd alſo be the inſtruments of repentance;
" and that they march into China, to acquire
" the merit of that holy war, in demoliſhing
" the temples of the idols of the fire, and erect-
" ing in their places moſques and chappels.
" By this means we ſhall obtain the pardon of
" our ſins, as the Alcoran aſſures us, ſaying
" that *good works efface the ſins of this world.*"

Timur having finiſh'd this ſpeech, the princes of the blood and Emirs beſought God to bleſs his good intentions, unanimouſly applauding his ſentiments, and loading him with praiſes: " Let the emperor, ſay they, diſplay his ſtan-
" dard; and we his ſlaves will follow him, and
" ſacrifice our lives in his ſervice."

Then orders were given to the Tavachis to take an exact number of all the ſoldiers, by thouſands, and to augment and enroll the regiments. Timur commanded all the Emirs of Oulous [a], and the governors of provinces, to aſſemble their ſoldiers: they took copys of the Touteal [b] from the great Tavachis, that they might know in what order and with what arms they ſhou'd come; and they departed, to get together their troops in all the provinces.

Timur then went from Canighul, and enter'd the city of Samarcand, where he lodg'd in the college of Serai Mulc Canum. He gave the Mirza Pir Mehemed a crown, bolt and horſe, and permitted him to return to Zabul; he alſo gave to each of his domeſtics a horſe and a ſuit

[a] The Emirs of Oulous are the natural lords of the Tartar hords, who are inferior to the governors of provinces.

[b] The order for the war.

of

of clothes: he order'd the Mirza Sidi Ahmed [4], Chap. 26.
ſon of Omar Cheik, to accompany him. And they took the road to Candahar.

The emperor did particular honors, and gave veſts and belts to the ambaſſador of Egypt, who obtain'd leave to return home: he order'd Moulana Abdalla Kechi to accompany him, whom he ſent with a convoy in embaſſy to the Sultan of Egypt, for whom he gave him a letter ſeventy cubits long, and three in breadth, wrote in letters of gold by Moulana Cheik Mehemed, ſon of the doctor Hadgi Bendeghir Tebrizi, who wou'd not yield to his father as to the beauty of his ſtyle and the art of writing finely. The ſubſtance of this letter was an anſwer to what the Sultan of Egypt had writ with regard to the Sultan Ahmed and Cara Youſef. He ſent with this letter ſeveral curious preſents worthy of the greateſt princes.

Timur likewiſe granted particular honors and favors to the ambaſſadors of Europe [5], Decht Capchac, Gete and other parts, and permitted 'em to return home. He likewiſe diſmiſs'd the princeſs Melket Aga, who had aſſiſted at the feaſt; and afterwards return'd to the Mirza Charoc at Herat. He ſent to Hamadan the princeſs Beghiſi Sultan his daughter, to the Mirza Eskender her husband: and ſhe paſs'd by Bocara and Macan.

[4] I believe this Sidi Ahmed was the father of Baber Mirza, whoſe deſcendents reign in India at this preſent, under the title of the great Moguls.

[5] The Spaniſh ambaſſadors, whom we have mention'd in the preface, were diſmiſs'd at the ſame time as thoſe of Egypt were, without obtaining an audience of leave of Timur, who was reported to have been very ſick; on which account, in the Spaniſh relation it is ſaid thro miſtake that he was dead.

Timur gave the Mirza Olouc Bec the government of the towns of Tachkunt, Seiram, Yenghi, Achira, and all the kingdom of Gete as far as China; and to the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan that of Andecan, Aſiket, Taraz and Cachgar, as far as Cotan; which he confirm'd by letters-patent ſeal'd with his red hand. Among the Emirs of the Mirza Pir Mehemed, Tagi Bouga and three others ſet out to aſſemble the troops of thoſe provinces, and bring 'em to Tachkunt, which was the general rendezvous of the army. Temour Coja Acbouga was baniſh'd to Aſſigheul in Mogoliſtan, for a fault he had committed.

Timur went from the college of Serai Mulc Canum to Arec [a], and lodg'd at Gheuc Serai, a palace he had built.

CHAP. XXVII.

Timur ſets out for the war againſt the infidels of China.

THE Alcoran remarks, that if any one in his pilgrimage to Mecca ſhou'd be ſurpriz'd by death, the merit of this good work is written in heaven in his name, as ſurely as if he had had the good fortune to execute it: it is the ſame in relation to the Gazie, where with troubles and fatigues mix'd with dangers an eternal me-

[a] Arec is the incloſure of the antient royal palace of Samarcand.

rit

rit is acquir'd; and he who dies during the expedition is deem'd to have executed his deſign. Chap. 27.
It was fitting that ſo great a hero as Timur ſhou'd die in the bed of honor, and that this inevitable accident ſhou'd happen during a journy he undertook for God's glory, and to acquire the rewards the Alcoran promiſes to the Gazie, that is, the war againſt the infidels. And as the death of this great man was nearly approaching, when he took up a reſolution to march into China, God permitted that neither the ſeaſon, nor the countrys he muſt paſs thro, which were always cover'd with ſnow and froſt, ſhou'd be able to divert him from his reſolution, or oblige him to retard his departure till the ſpring.

He gave orders to the Emir Berendac to review the troops, and bring him an account how many men there were in the army he deſign'd to carry into China. This Emir reported, that the troops of Tranſoxiana, Turkeſtan, Balc, Bedakchan, Coraſſana, Siſtan, Mazendran, the Caratatars brought from Natolia, the colonys from Perſia, Azerbijana and Irac, amounted to two hundred thouſand men compleat, capable of undertaking the greateſt enterprizes. Timur, very much pleas'd at the good ſtate of his troops, diſtributed his treaſure among 'em, and commanded 'em to begin their march.

The Mirzas Calil Sultan and Ahmed Omar Cheik, accompany'd by the Emirs Codadad Huſſeini, Chamſeddin-Abbas, and other generals of Tomans and Hezares of the right wing, were order'd to paſs the winter with their troops at Tachkunt, Chahroukhia, and Seiram; and the Mirza Sultan Huſſein was to take up his winter-quarters with ſome troops of the left wing at Yaſſi and Sabran. Chahroukhia, which was formerly nam'd Fenakunt, was ſo ruin'd by Gen-

Book VI. ghiz Can's army, that there remain'd no foot-
steps of any edifices till the year of the Monky,
An. Dom. which anſwers to the year of the Hegira 794,
1392. when Timur order'd his lieutenants to rebuild and repeople it; and as Timur then gave it to the Mirza Charoc, it was call'd from his name Chahroukhia.

The emperor having entruſted the government of Samarcand to Argoun Chah, and the care of his treaſures to the Cheik Tchoura, order'd the great ſtandard to be diſplay'd; and he departed
Jan. 8. 1405. from Samarcand the 23d of Jumaziulevel 807, the ſun being in the middle of Aquarius, in a ſextile aſpect with Jupiter; and the moon being in Libra, in a ſextile aſpect with the ſun, and in a trine aſpect with Jupiter. He laid hold on the happy moment which the aſtrologers had fix'd for his departure, and took the road to Acſoulat. He went directly to Caraboulac in Sogdiana.

Then the ſtandard departed from Caraboulac, and took the road to Ilanoti; and after ſeveral days arriv'd at Tambic, where great rains and ſnows fell, the wind blew exceſſively, and the cold was extremely violent: yet this did not hinder Timur's departure and arrival at Acſoulat. And as this place was full of ſands, and there was abundance of ſmall wood for burning, orders had been given before to build cottages of reeds, and ſome houſes fit to lodge in. The emperor being repos'd in his apartment, the Mirzas and ſoldiers encamp'd each in their reſpective poſts. The ſun was then enter'd into Piſces, the cold daily encreas'd, and the winter was more violent than uſual.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

An account of certain adventures, the knowledg of which is neceſſary to the underſtanding the latter part of this hiſtory. A relation of what paſs'd at Acſoulat.

LOVE is often the cauſe of many diſorders. The Mirza Calil Sultan, after having got with child the princeſs Dgehan Sultan, daughter of the Mirza Ali, Timur's ſiſter's ſon, became deſperately in love with one of the concubines of the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, nam'd Chadi Mulc. This paſſion got ſo great an aſcendent in his ſoul, that he cou'd not reſt till he had marry'd her, which was during Timur's abſence; of which the princeſs his wife being inform'd, ſo great a jealouſy kindled in her heart, that ſhe diſcover'd the caſe to the emperor at Samarcand. Orders were immediately given out for Chadi Mulc to make her appearence: but the Mirza conceal'd her, which ſo provok'd Timur, that he order'd diligent ſearch to be made after her; and being found, ſhe was condemn'd to die, and wou'd have ſuffer'd immediately, if the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir had not beg'd for a reprieve. Nevertheleſs advice was given the emperor at Acſoulat, that the Mirza Calil Sultan had again conceal'd her in his apartment: whereupon the Emir Berat had orders to go and ſeize her, and bring her away; which being done, Timur in a great paſſion commanded her to be put to death. The empreſs Serai Mulc Canum cou'd not bear to ſee

Book VI. the deep anxiety and deſpair the poor Mirza fell into: but conſidering moreover the great love Timur bore to the princes his children, ſhe endeavour'd to accommodate this difference, by the help of the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic; and perſuaded 'em to inform the emperor, that this lady was with child by the Mirza. On this account the order was revers'd, and the princeſs entruſted to the care of the empreſs Bouyan Aga, that after her lying-in ſhe might bring up the child, and commit the lady to ſome of her black ſlaves *.

The emperor being at Acſoulat, order'd the Mirzas his ſons, the commanders of kingdoms, the governors of provinces, the Derogas of citys, and other grand officers and lords of his empire, to write to their lieutenants, to adviſe 'em to take great care during the expedition into China that the laws be duly executed, and juſtice diſpens'd every where, ſo that the people might enjoy quiet and ſecurity; that they ſhou'd not give heed to the diſturbers of the public tranquillity, as knowing it was their duty to treat the people well, ſince they were entruſted to 'em by the Creator; that they behave themſelves in ſuch a manner, that when an account ſhall be demanded of their conduct, they may have no cauſe to repent, nor be the reaſon of Timur's bluſhing for ſhame before the throne of God, at the day of judgment. This order was carefully executed, and ſent into all the provinces by men of probity.

* The black ſlaves are eunuchs, and the ordinary guardians of the Mahometan ladys. The reaſon of Timur's putting this lady into their hands, was to hinder the Mirza Calil Sultan's having any future commerce with her.

Then

Then the Mirza Calil Sultan went to Tachkunt, according to the orders he had receiv'd; and the Mirza Sultan Huſſein to Yaſſi and Sabran. There was nothing to be ſeen any where but carriages and waggons, which were brought from all the provinces, and fill'd with all ſorts of ammunition; and an infinite number of horſes brought from all parts to be ſold, which the emperor bought, and diſtributed among the Mirzas, Emirs and ſoldiers. Then the Seid Coja, ſon of the Cheik Ali Behader, came from Coraſſana from the Mirza Charoc, with advice of the good health of that prince. Chap. 28.

The emperor ſent the Emir Berendac to Tachkunt, to bring away the proviſions: and he publiſh'd an order for all the generals and great officers to keep an exact account of the ſtate of their Tomans, Hezares and Sedes; that in this long expedition no one might be oblig'd to ſtay behind for want of either proviſion or arms. This order had ſo good an effect, that in this numerous army each horſeman had enough to ſuffice ten men, as well in victuals as in arms. Beſides this, ſeveral thouſand loads of corn were carry'd in the waggons which follow'd the army, to ſow the fields on their road, that at their return they might not have a ſcarcity. Several thouſands of ſhe-camels were alſo carry'd, that on a preſſing occaſion their milk might ſerve for nouriſhment to the ſoldiers. Theſe precautions were neceſſary to an army, ſo numerous as not to be match'd in antiquity. Thoſe who had ſeen the immenſe riches at the feaſt of Canighul, were ſtruck with admiration: and men of the beſt ſenſe reflected upon the Arabian ſaying, *That when a man has attain'd the higheſt degree of proſperity, he is upon the point of abaſement.* Moſt perſons ſaid, even in public,

 after

Book VI. after having ſeen the prodigious grandeur and magnificence which appear'd in the pleaſures of Canighul, and the fine appearance which this innumerable army made, with the vaſt quantity of arms and baggage which were in the imperial camp, that they no longer doubted the proſperity of Timur being arriv'd at its utmoſt perfection, and conſequently fear'd with reaſon the diminution of his good fortune. People began to miſtruſt ſome diſgrace wou'd befall 'em; and their hearts fluctuating between hope and fear, they daily beſought God to preſerve the emperor from the misfortunes which attend the greateſt proſperity, and to turn the evil and deſtructive eyes * from off this reign, which they hop'd wou'd endure a great while longer.

* See book IV. chap. 32.

CHAP. XXIX.

Timur departs from Atſoulat.

THE ſun was yet in Capricorn, and the violence of the cold ſo great, that ſeveral men and horſes periſh'd in the road, ſome loſing their hands and feet, others their ears and noſes: the ſnows and rains were continually falling, the whole face of the heavens ſeeming to be cover'd but by one cloud, and the whole earth by one piece of ſnow. Aſtronomers remark, that at this time there was a conjunction of the three ſuperior planets in Aquarius; which was a preſage of ſome great misfortune. Yet the deſire of acquiring the merit of the Gazie prevail'd in the mind of our conqueror above the greateſt difficultys: he wou'd not wait till the cold abated, but inform'd himſelf of the nature and cir-

circumſtances of the roads, of the water, paſ- Chap. 29.
turage, deſarts and mountains, which he order'd to be taken down in writing, that all neceſſary precautions might be us'd.

Then Timur ſet out from Acſoulat; and ſent freſh orders to the Mirzas Calil Sultan and Ahmed, accompany'd by the Emirs Codadad Huſſeini, Yadghiar, Chah Erlat, Chamſeddin Abbas, Berendac, and eight others, who were in winter quarters with their troops about Tachkunt, Chahroukhia, and Seiram; as alſo to the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, who was with his about Yaſſi and Sabran in Capchac, not to fail of leaving their winter-quarters at the beginning of ſpring, in order to join the court.

Timur having march'd two days and one night, went to Ouzoun-Ata to encamp; then to Yoſeadgiai Cheik, from thence to Sourkent, and afterwards to Comarcha Ata, to Sultan Cheik, and at length to the town of Zernouc, from whence he departed, and croſſing the Sihon upon the ice, encamp'd on the other bank. This river was froze ſo hard this year, that they were oblig'd to dig two or three cubits to get water; and from the ſun's entring Sagittarius to his coming out of Piſces, waggons, men and beaſts, cou'd paſs either the Gihon or Sihon in any part of 'em.

Timur having decamp'd from the banks of the Sihon, arriv'd at Otrar on wedneſday the 12th of Regeb 807, and lodg'd in the palace of Feb. 27, Birdi Bei, where all the princes and lords had 1405. likewiſe each their reſpective apartments. The day of the emperor's arrival, one corner of the roof of the palace, where he was lodg'd, ſet fire, by the tunnel of a chimney running by it; but the fire was ſoon extinguiſh'd. This accident diſquieted the lords of the court, inaſmuch

as

Book VI. as moſt of 'em had had frightful dreams which prognoſticated ſome misfortune; and it ſeem'd as if nature had given the people an inſight into what ſhou'd happen to their prince. But fate is inevitable.

Timur ſent Mouſſa Recmal to diſcover whether there was any paſſage over the bridge, who carefully examin'd the whole, and brought anſwer that it was impoſſible to croſs it. Another, who had been ſent towards Seiram and the mountain of Coulan, on his return declar'd that the ſnow of this mountain was two pikes high.

Then Cara Coja, an antient domeſtic of Tocatmich Can, heretofore emperor of Capchac, arriv'd at court in quality of ambaſſador from that prince, who had a long time wander'd about as a vagabond in the deſart of Capchac. Timur being pleas'd to grant him a magnificent audience, enter'd in ſtate into the Divan Cané, and aſcended his throne; the princes Taizi Aglen, of the race of Octai Caan [a], Bachtemour Aglen, and Giera Aglen, of the race of Touchi Can, ſitting on his right hand, and the Mirzas Oloue-Bec, Ibrahim Sultan, and Aidgel on the left. The ambaſſador was conducted to the audience by the Emirs Birdi Bei and Noureddin two brothers, Chamelic and Coja Youſef; and having proſtrated himſelf, had the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet: he made an harangue from his maſter in theſe words. "I have, "ſays he, ſuffer'd the puniſhment my ingrati- "tude merited: the ſlight acknowledgment I "have made for ſo many favors receiv'd of your "highneſs, hath drawn upon me the miſerys "I find my ſelf reduc'd to. I have no other

[a] Caan ſignifys Can of Cans.

"refuge

" refuge than the hopes of pardon from your bounty: and if, I can be aſſur'd you'll forget your ſervant's faults, I will diſcover a grateful ſenſe of the favor by a conſtant ſubmiſſion to your imperial orders." Chap. 30.

Timur, according to his wonted goodneſs, treated this ambaſſador with civility, and even aſſur'd him that at his return from the war of China, he wou'd again conquer the kingdom of Touchi Can, which he had a deſign to put into the hands of Tocatmich Can his maſter. After theſe civil treatments he diſmiſs'd the ambaſſador Cara Coja, ſending by him a preſent to Tocatmich. And Timur's intention being to depart forthwith from Otrar to continue his expedition into China, he deſign'd to ſend back the empreſſes and the young princes his children, who out of ceremony were come thither to wait upon him. But fate had otherwiſe order'd it.

CHAP. XXX.

Timur's death at Otrar.

THE Alcoran remarks, that God created the world for the ſake of man, but man for his own ſervice. By this we ſee that the dignity of the human ſoul is too great to remain for ever in this material body; and that ſo pure and excellent a being can't find ſatisfaction but in the enjoyment of him who created it, and gave it immortality.

Timur, after the campain of ſeven years, in which he had conquer'd almoſt all Aſia, turn'd the whole of his ambition towards the eſtabliſhing of juſtice in the world, informing himſelf of the

Book VI. the ſtate of his ſubjects, and redreſſing all evils: if they were oppreſs'd by tyrants, he did 'em juſtice; and if in poverty, he enrich'd 'em by his favors; and by this means render'd the world flouriſhing, and rejoic'd the people's hearts. As ſoon as he was return'd to the ſeat of his empire, without repoſing himſelf from his fatigues any longer than five months, he form'd a deſign to make war on the idolaters of China, hoping by that to obtain pardon of God for his former crimes: and having ſet out for that expedition, he came to Otrar, ſeventy ſix leagues or paraſangas diſtant from Samarcand.

March 25. 1405. On wedneſday the 10th of Chaban 807, Timur was attack'd with a burning fever, and believ'd he heard the Houris* ſay to him, Repent, for you muſt appear before God. On this, he became ſincerely penitent for his crimes, and reſolv'd to make ſatisfaction for 'em by good works. His ſickneſs increaſing, he found himſelf very much weaken'd, having no reſt: affliction ſeiz'd the heart of all the court, which appear'd the greater as the diſtemper augmented. Then neither empire, nor armys, nor riches, nor crowns ſtood him in any ſtead.

And tho Moulana Fadlalla Tebrizi, one of the moſt skilful phyſicians of the age, employ'd all his care in preſcribing the moſt excellent remedys, yet the ſickneſs became more violent. Phyſic is uſeleſs when fate has ordain'd the death of any one. All hopes of the emperor's health were loſt; his phyſicians having given him over. But tho his body was weaken'd, yet his mind continu'd ſound; and notwithſtand-

* The Houris are continual virgins, who the Mahometans believe are appointed for their pleaſures in their prophet's paradiſe.

ing

ing his violent griefs, he was always informing himſelf of the condition of his army. When he found his ſickneſs ſo ſtrong, that all remedys prov'd ineffectual, he reſolv'd courageouſly to face death; and calling the empreſſes and principal Emirs into his preſence, he made the following teſtament. Chap. 30.

" I am ſatisfy'd that my ſoul is about to leave my body, and that my aſylum is at the throne of God, who gives and takes away life at his pleaſure. I beſeech you to utter neither crys nor groans at my death; and inſtead of rending your garments, and running to and fro like madmen, pray to God to have mercy on me; ſay Allah Ecber [a], and the Fatiha [b], that my ſoul may find comfort. Since God has ſo highly favor'd me as to enable me to give laws to the earth, whereby at preſent thro all the kingdoms of Iran and Touran no one dare encroach upon his neighbor, nor the great oppreſs the poor, I have hopes that he will pardon my ſins, tho they are without number. I have this conſolation, that during my reign I have not permitted the ſtrong to injure the weak. Tho I am not ignorant of the inſtability of the world, yet I do not adviſe you to leave off caring for the affairs thereof; ſince that will cauſe diſorders among men, baniſh ſafety from the highways, and be an obſtacle to the people's quiet: and it is certain that at the day of judgment an account will be demanded of thoſe, to whom the care of theſe things have been intruſted. Timur's laſt will.

[a] God is the moſt great.

[b] The firſt chapter of the Alcoran, which the Mahometans recite, as Chriſtians do the Lord's-prayer.

" I

Pir Mehemed Gehanghir declar'd Timur's ſucceſſor.

" I declare my ſon Pir Mehemed Gehanghir " my univerſal heir, and lawful ſucceſſor to " the empire. He muſt poſſeſs the throne of " Samarcand with an abſolute and independent " ſovereignty, that he may carefully manage " both the religious and civil affairs, and take " care of the neceſſitys of the army, and of " the citys and countrys ſubject to my juriſdic- " tion. I command you all to obey him, and " unanimouſly to ſacrifice your lives in maintain- " ing his authority; that the world may not " fall into diſorder, and that my labor for ſo " many years may not be loſt. If you agree " together, no one will dare to oppoſe you, or " offer the leaſt obſtacle againſt the execution of " my laſt will."

Timur then order'd all the Emirs and great lords of the court, and the generals of the army, to come before him, whom he ſtrictly enjoin'd to ſee to the execution of his teſtament; and made 'em promiſe in his preſence with ſolemn oaths not to conſent that any one ſhou'd oppoſe it: and he ſent orders to all the Emirs and generals who were abſent to take the ſame oaths.

The lords having heard this diſcourſe, were in the utmoſt conſternation, melted into tears, and fell with their faces to the ground. The Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic, whoſe hearts were ſeiz'd with grief and deſpair, ſaid to Timur, " We cou'd ſacrifice our lives with a " great deal of pleaſure to purchaſe one ſingle " day more for our gracious maſter. If our " death wou'd be of ſervice to you, our lives " ſhou'd coſt us nothing: but it is impoſſible to " alter the decrees of providence. We are your " ſlaves; and tho being depriv'd of your pre- " ſence we have no longer any joy or content-

" ment,

" ment, yet we can aſſure your highneſs, that Chap. 30
" as long as we live, we will not fail of continu-
" ing obedient to your orders, tho at the hazard
" of our lives. May heaven never grant us ſuc-
" ceſs, if we have the leaſt thoughts of doing
" any thing contrary to the will of our benefactor.
" We will always walk in the ſame paths of obe-
" dience after your death as during your life."

While they were thus ſpeaking, tears guſh'd out of their eyes, their minds no longer enjoy'd any quiet, and their bodys loſt all their natural ſtrength. They told the emperor that if he pleas'd, they wou'd write to the Mirza Calil Sultan, and the Emirs who were at Tachkunt, to come to court, that having the honor to ſee their maſter's face once more, they might learn from his own mouth his laſt will: " For, ſay
" they, tho we ſhou'd declare to 'em the form
" of your laſt will with all poſſible exactneſs,
" yet it will not have the ſame force on 'em, as
" if they had heard it themſelves." But the emperor anſwer'd that his hour was approaching; that thoſe who were abſent cou'd not come time enough to ſee him; and that it was impoſſible for 'em to meet again till the day of judgment. " This, ſays he, is the laſt audience
" you will have of me. I have no other deſire
" than to ſee the Mirza Charoc once more; but
" that is impoſſible: God will not have it ſo."
The ladys and princes, who were in the antichamber to obſerve the courſe of his diſtemper, on hearing this, loſt all patience, and fell into the utmoſt conſternation. Then Timur turning towards the princes his children, ſpoke to 'em as follows.

" Remember to do every thing I have recom-
" mended to you in relation to the public tran-
" quillity; and be conſtantly informing your-

Book VI. "ſelves of the affairs of your ſubjects. Be va-
"liant, and courageouſly keep poſſeſſion of your
"ſwords, that like me you may enjoy a long
"reign and a vaſt empire. I have purg'd the
"countrys of Iran and Touran from the enemys
"and diſturbers of the people's quiet; and have
"render'd 'em flouriſhing by my juſtice. If you
"do what my teſtament directs, and make equi-
"ty and juſtice the rule of your actions, the
"kingdom will remain a long time in your
"hands: but if diſcord creeps in among you,
"ill fortune will attend your undertakings;
"your enemys will breed wars and ſedition,
"which it will be difficult to put a ſtop to;
"and irreparable miſchiefs will ariſe both in
"religion and government."

After this diſcourſe the diſtemper increas'd: and tho there were ſeveral Imams and readers without the door of the chamber, who read the Alcoran from one end to the other, yet Timur was pleas'd to have the doctor Moulana Hebetulla, ſon of Moulana Obaid, to read the word of God at his bed's-head, and often repeat the belief of the unity of God. At night, between the evening-prayer and bed-time, (that is about eight a-clock) Timur ſeveral times made profeſſion of his belief of Lailahillallah *; remembring the promiſe of Mahomet, that he whoſe laſt words are, There is no other god than God, ſhall aſſuredly enter into paradiſe. Then
* Iſrael. he gave up his ſoul to the angel Eſrafiel *, who call'd him in theſe words: "O ſoul, that
"hopeſt in God, return to thy Lord with re-
"ſignation. We belong to God, and muſt re-
"turn to him."

* There is no other god than God.

This

This fatal event happen'd on wedneſday-night the 17th of Chaban 807, which anſwers to the 14th of Eſfendarmez 326 of the Gelalian epocha, the ſun being in the eighth degree of Piſces. Several learned men have compos'd verſes on his death, in which the date of the year is contain'd; and among others Moulana Behadedin Dgyami: they ſay he was ſeventy-one years of age, and that he had reign'd thirty-ſix, a number equal to that of his children and grandchildren, as we ſhall ſee in the laſt chapter. Chap. 31. April 1. 1405.

CHAP. XXXI.

Relation of what happen'd after Timur's death.

TIMUR having paſs'd from this manſion of pride to the paradiſe of eternal delights, fear and horror ſeiz'd both upon his friends and enemys; every one was jealous of diſorders and wars, and did not in the leaſt doubt but the ſecurity and tranquillity of the ſtate wou'd entirely periſh. The affliction wou'd have been inſupportable, had not his horoſcope predicted the continuation of the crown in his auguſt family, and that the kingdoms he had conquer'd by the ſtrength of his arm, and which he had render'd flouriſhing by his juſtice, wou'd remain in peace under the protection of his children who ſhou'd ſucceed him in the empire. Notwithſtanding this, the princes of the blood caſt their crowns upon the earth; the empreſſes and ladys tore their faces and their hair; the Emirs and principal perſons rent their robes, and flinging themſelves upon the ground, paſs'd that diſmal night in grief: and it ſeem'd as if the heavens had ſhar'd in this affliction, ſince rains and

thunder, ſtorms and tempeſt did not ceaſe all the night.

Next morning the grandees of the court ended their lamentations, to perform the emperor's funeral obſequys. The doctors Hendouchah Caznegi and Moulana Cotobeddin Sedre had the care of the ceremony. They order'd the prayers and verſes of the Alcoran, appointed on theſe occaſions, to be read. Then the body was waſh'd, and embalm'd with camphire, muſk and roſe-water; and being wrap'd up in linen, was laid in a coffin of ebony, after having recommended his ſoul to God.

When they had finiſh'd this ceremony, the great Emirs who attended his perſon, as Birdi Bei, ſon of Sarbouga, and his brother the Emir Cheik Noureddin, Chamelic, Coja Youſef, and ſeveral others, ſolemnly ſwore they wou'd always aſſociate together, and uſe their utmoſt endeavors, even to the hazard of their lives, to ſee Timur's teſtament executed. And as the deſign of the war in China was not yet abandon'd, they kept Timur's death conceal'd, and forbad the ladys changing their habits, or ſhewing any exterior ſigns of grief, that the enemy might not have preſent advice of it.

Afterwards they went to meet the empreſſes, and held a council with 'em in relation to what muſt be done at this preſent conjuncture. They ſent advice of the misfortune to the Mirza Calil Sultan, and the Emirs who were at Tachkunt. They diſpatch'd expreſſes to Yaſſi and Sabran, to the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, to advertiſe him that the emperor's ſickneſs increas'd, and that he ſhou'd come to court with but few of his men. They ſent Kezer Coutchin to Gaznin, with letters to the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir, to inform him of Timur's death, and of his will,

in

in which he had declar'd him his univerſal heir and ſucceſſor to the empire; and they beſought him to repair immediately to Samarcand. They alſo wrote letters to all the Mirzas and governors of provinces, inviting 'em to obſerve all the vigilance neceſſary on the like occaſions, to guard the countrys entruſted to 'em, and ſecure themſelves from all reproach; praying 'em to inform themſelves exactly of whatever ſhou'd paſs on their frontiers, and give advice of it to court; in fine, to neglect nothing which might hinder any ſurprize, becauſe the enemys and diſturbers of the public tranquillity had kept themſelves conceal'd for ſeveral years as it were in exile, and waited only ſuch a favorable opportunity as this: that in the mean while they ſhou'd execute juſtice, and continue their favors to the people, that no one might have any thoughts of revolting. The Cheik Temour went expreſs to the Mirza Charoc at Herat, Ali Dervich to the Mirza Omar at Tauris, Aratmour to the Mirzas Miran Chah and Aboubecre at Bagdad, and another into Fars and Irac. Chap. 32.

CHAP. XXXII.

Timur's coffin tranſported from Otrar.

THE Mirzas, empreſſes and Emirs, who were at Otrar, on thurſday-night the 18th of Chaban 807, at the time of evening-prayers, cover'd the coffin with velvet and black damask; and with it took the road to Samarcand: they paſs'd the river Jaxartes in the night upon the ice, and went into a wood on the bank of the river: from Otrar to the Jax- April 2. 1405.

Book VI. artes are but two leagues or paraſangas. Next morning the grief became ſo violent, that nothing was heard but the moſt piteous groans and lamentations, no one being able to abſtain from ſorrow. The Emirs, Haſekis and Coutchins caſt their turbants upon the ground, and cover'd their heads with duſt; while the ladys rent their hair, and tore their cheeks with their nails.

After theſe demonſtrations of affliction, the wiſe Emirs gave the following advice. "Since "fate, ſay they, begins to make us feel miſ-"fortunes, we muſt give way to its force, no-"thing being able to hold out againſt its efforts. "The moſt refin'd politics can't retard its "courſe: death makes no difference between "kings and ſlaves. On this account, the beſt "method is to fortify our ſelves with patience, "ſince there is no other remedy, and endeavor "by alms, works of piety, prayers, and read-"ing of the Alcoran, to rejoice, if poſſible, the "ſoul of our deceas'd maſter. Death lies in "ambuſcade to ſurprize us; it gives the finiſh-"ing ſtroke to all affairs, as well to the con-"queſt of the world, as to the leaſt trifle: no "one is exempted from it; and he who never "dies can't be born again." Theſe counſels not being powerful enough to appeaſe the great deſpair in which every one was plung'd, the Emirs had recourſe to Mahomet's death, at the ſame time beſeeching him to intercede for the conſolation of the afflicted. They ſhew'd that tho this great prophet was the moſt excellent of God's creatures, and the ſeal of the prophets, yet the moment deſtin'd for his death being come, his pure ſoul broke the cords by which it was tied to his body, and with an entire reſignation took its flight towards paradiſe; that

ſince

ſince this illuſtrious man cou'd not be immortal, Chap. 33.
others muſt not expect to be ſo; and however afflicting this misfortune might appear, there was no other remedy to be us'd than to reſign our ſelves to fate, and implore the aſſiſtance of God, whoſe orders we muſt obey.

CHAP. XXXIII.

The empreſſes and Emirs hold a council concerning the war of China.

THE reading of the hiſtory and death of Mahomet having a little moderated the univerſal grief, the Emirs took this opportunity to give the following counſel to the empreſſes and princes.

"There is no doubt, ſay they, that if ſo powerful and numerous an army, which was never exceeded by any in paſt ages, nor probably ever will be in times to come, ſhou'd march into the enemy's country, we ſhall eaſily exterminate the infidels in a ſhort time: and tho the news of our maſter's death ſhou'd be carry'd to the Calmacs and Chineſe, yet all news being thought either true or falſe, if we lead our army as far as their frontiers, they will be jealous they have receiv'd falſe advice, and ſay that if Timur was dead, no one wou'd be powerful enough to head an army of that ſtrength; and thus imagining he is yet alive, and that we ſpread the rumor of his death thro artifice and deſign, they will be ſeiz'd with fear, while we ſhall gain an eaſy victory. It is requiſite that we put all Timur's intentions in execution, and confiding in God,

Book VI. " carry our arms into China, where we may
" employ all our ſtrength in proſecuting this re-
" ligious war with vigor, which the empe-
" ror had reſolv'd to wage with the idolaters
" of China, in order to procure glory to the
" Muſſulmans. And after we ſhall have ſatisfy'd
" our conſciences in this point, we will diſplay
" the victorious ſtandard, and return to Samar-
" cand, where we will employ all our joint en-
" deavors in the well-governing of the empire.
" Thro the grace of God, there are more than
" thirty kings or ſons of kings whom our maſter
" has left for his ſucceſſors to the crown, one
" of whom muſt neceſſarily inherit it. For
" wou'd it not be moſt unhappy that ſo mighty
" an army, equip'd with ſo much difficulty
" and care by Timur, after having began its
" march, and gone ſo many days journy with
" deſign to make war on the infidels, ſhou'd re-
" turn without having executed any thing of
" conſequence ?"

The princes, empreſſes, and great Emirs revolving theſe things in their minds, unanimouſly reſolv'd, That the Emirs with their regiments ſhou'd march under the command of the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, whom Timur had choſen to attend him in the expedition into China; and that they ſhou'd join the Mirza Calil Sultan at Tachkunt, to whom the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan ſhou'd reſign the command of the army, as being the eldeſt of the Mirzas then preſent; and that Calil Sultan ſhou'd bear the name of emperor thro-out the whole campain; but that the great Emirs of the council ſhou'd adminiſter the affairs of ſtate under him as uſual: and laſtly, that they ſhou'd march into China in this order, from whence, after having vanquiſh'd the idolaters, ruin'd the towns, burnt the temples,

and

and ſeiz'd on the ſpoils, they ſhou'd return to Samarcand, where the empreſſes, Mirzas and Emirs ſhou'd hold a general diet, to execute Timur's laſt will and teſtament. Chap. 34.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Timur's coffin is tranſported to Samarcand.

THE foregoing reſolution being taken, the Emirs Coja Youſef and Ali Coutchin, with ſeveral lords, took the road to Samarcand with Timur's coffin, where they arriv'd on monday-night the 22d of Chaban 807, and bury'd Timur with the uſual ſolemnitys. April 6. 1405.

After they were gone, the other great Emirs gave the following counſel to the empreſſes. " Tho our deceas'd maſter of happy " memory has by his teſtament ordain'd the " Mirza Pir Mehemed his ſucceſſor in the em- " pire; yet as this prince is at Candahar, and " has perhaps paſs'd into India, ſo that he is at " a great diſtance from us; and if we wait his " arrival to continue the Chineſe expedition, " we ſhall not get there in a proper ſeaſon for " making war, we will therefore immediately " depart for that campain: and when that " Mirza ſhall arrive at Samarcand, which will " be in a little time, becauſe he muſt ſoon re- " ceive the news of the emperor's death, it is " requiſite that he enter the city with pomp " and ceremony, and aſcend the throne of the " empire according to the will of his deceas'd " grandfather; for to him the crown lawfully " belongs. Timur has always cheriſh'd this " Mirza's children more than thoſe of any " other,

Book VI. "other, becauſe he was the ſon of Gehanghir "his eldeſt ſon, to whom and to his children the "ſucceſſion belongs according to the Mahomet"tan law. We may alſo truly ſay, that good-"fortune has always attended him, and that "the majeſty of kings may be ſeen even in his "countenance; that he is of a pure faith, go-"verns himſelf by good maxims, has a gene-"rous and brave heart, a noble mind, and a "princely behavior. His juſtice, equity and "clemency towards the people are more conſpi-"cuous than the ſun: and we ought to expect "that this great prince's reign will add new "ſplendor to the throne, great advantages to "the ſubjects, peace and tranquillity in the king-"doms dependent on this great empire, and a "univerſal ſatisfaction among the people; ſo "that the approaching inſtallation of this "prince may take away from ill-deſigning per-"ſons all means of ſowing diviſion, or procu-"ring revolt"

This diſcourſe being ended, the empreſſes Serai Mulc Canim, Tekil Canum, Touman Aga, and the other ladys, departed with the Mirzas Oluc-Bec and others for Samarcand, after the emperor's coffin. The Emirs recommended to 'em to uſe all imaginable precautions, eſpecially where they encamp'd, and to ſend out conſtantly to gain intelligence for fear of being ſurpriz'd. This ſeparation was not without a mutual affliction.

At ten in the morning of the ſame day, the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, and the great Emirs took horſe at the head of the army, with deſign to march into China, to execute the emperor's intentions in a Gazie againſt the infidels.

Timur's imperial ſtandard, his drum and kettledrums, with the enſigns of his victorys,

were

were carry'd by a troop of horſe of the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan's court. At the view of this great train an ingenious perſon made theſe reflections: "Behold the ſtandards which are "the ſigns of command: to beat the drum, be- "longs only to kings: ſince the ſame has been "done by this young Mirza, he ought to hope "for the ſcepter. Theſe are good omens: and "ſince he is the firſt who has taken the place "of empire, in all likelihood it will return to "him again in time." All this happen'd as predicted. Chap. 34.

When they had paſs'd the Sihon, and march'd one league, they went to encamp on the bank of the river Ardge, near the bridge of Caldurma, eaſt of Otrar. An imperial tent and large pavilion were erected there for the Mirza; and the horſe-tail of the deceas'd emperor was fix'd over-againſt the camp with the uſual ceremony. From thence expreſſes were ſent to the Mirza Calil Sultan and the great Emirs of the right wing, who were at Tachkunt and Charoukia, to inform 'em that they had ſent Timur's coffin to Samarcand, and that the empreſſes were gone after 'em; that for their parts they had reſolv'd to continue the war in China, and were ſet out with that intent. They alſo ſent couriers with the ſame news to the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, who commanded the left wing, deſiring him to march immediately with his troops to join them at Jouclec, where they might ſee Timur's laſt will and teſtament, and prepare to march with 'em into China. Jouclec, which was the place of rendezvous, is a town five leagues eaſt from Otrar.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXV.

The Mirza Sultan Huſſein, Timur's grandſon, oppoſes the ſentiment of the Emirs.

NOTHING is more certain, than that every enterprize which is not favor'd by providence will prove unſucceſsful. Fate had not reſolv'd on the deſign of making war in China; on which account all the efforts for that purpoſe were render'd uſeleſs, and fortune overturn'd this hopeful project: for the Mirza Sultan Huſſein had no ſooner heard of Timur's death, than the deſire of revolting, which had lain conceal'd in his breaſt ſo long, and the effects of which he had diſcover'd in the war at Damaſcus, where thro an unheard-of cowardice he abandon'd our party, when the Syrian army ſally'd out of the city to attack us; the deſire of revolting, I ſay, re-kindled in his breaſt on this occaſion: and excited by a deprav'd imagination, he disbanded part of the troops of the left wing, and taking from 'em their horſes, paſs'd the Sihon at Cogende with a thouſand men, each having two horſes, with whom he took the road to Samarcand by the way of Cazac, deſigning to ſurprize the inhabitants of that place by a ſtratagem, that they might ſuffer him to enter the city. At noon of the ſame day the courier, who had carry'd him the expreſs, return'd with this news. Every one was ſurpriz'd, and thought of taking the neceſſary meaſures for preventing his ambitious deſigns.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVI.

The Emirs write circular letters to give advice to all the provinces of the Mirza Sultan Huſſein's undertaking.

WHEN the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic were inform'd of the unjuſt proceedings of the Sultan Huſſein, they immediately wrote the following letter to the Emir Argoun Chah governor of Samarcand. "The "Sultan Huſſein has begun to act his follys "afreſh: he has disbanded the troops he com- "manded, and with a thouſand horſemen, each "having two horſes, has taken the road to "Samarcand: wherefore be upon your guard "for the defence of the city, and omit no "precautions. If this raſh young prince ap- "proach the city, and you meet with an oppor- "tunity of taking him, fail not of ſecuring "him; that no misfortunes happen thro his "means; for he ought not to be truſted." They wrote another letter with the ſame advice to the empreſſes, beſeeching them to ſtop whereever they then were, till they had join'd 'em. They alſo ſent a courier to Coja Youſef to inform him of what had happen'd, adviſing him to uſe all neceſſary precautions in relation to the litter, and endeavor to convey it into the city as ſoon as poſſible; leſt the Sultan Huſſein, excited by his ambition, under pretence of ſeeing Timur's coffin enter Samarcand, ſhould get in himſelf, and ſtir up a revolt. They diſpatch'd an expreſs to the Mirza Calil Sultan and his great Emirs who were at Tachkunt, which is diſtant from Otrar

ſix

Book VI. ſix days journy in the caravan, to let 'em know of the evil deſign of the Sultan Huſſein, who had broke their meaſures in relation to the war with China; that it was proper for the Emirs at Tachkunt to return with their troops to Acar, which is a famous meadow full of good paſturage; to which place themſelves wou'd alſo repair, and make known to 'em Timur's teſtament, which he had order'd at the point of death, and which they had ſworn to execute; that afterwards they wou'd endeavor in concert to take care of the public concerns, as they ſhou'd agree together in the diets which were to be held.

When the couriers were ſet out, the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, with the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic, departed from Otrar, and took the road to Samarcand. The Emir Birdi Bei ſtaid in his government of Otrar: and as the revolt of the Sultan Huſſein had occaſion'd ſome conſternation, the whole army march'd in order of battel towards Samarcand. In the evening they paſs'd the Sihon, where the ice broke, and three camels laden with gold were drown'd. They march'd all night, and next morning the Emirs join'd the empreſſes.

On the other hand, there happen'd a very croſs affair, which was, that the Emirs of Calil Sultan's court, and even the ſoldiers of his body of the army, Turks and Tadgics, Iracians and Natolians, had had advice before the arrival of the expreſs who ſet out from Otrar, that the Sultan Huſſein had diſpers'd his troops, and taken the road to Samarcand with a thouſand horſe; that at the reception of this news the fear caus'd by Timur's death was much increas'd; and that imagining they ſhou'd in ſome meaſure remedy it, the Mirza Ahmed Omar Cheik,

Cheik, and the great Emirs Codadad Huſſeini, Chap. 37.
Yadghiar Chah Erlat, Chamſeddin Abbas,
Berendic, and other principal officers, had aſ-
ſembled at Tachkunt; and without ſending for
the advice of the other Mirzas, the empreſſes,
or great Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic,
had advanc'd the Mirza Calil Sultan to the
throne of the empire at Tachkunt, and ſworn to
obey him, not conſidering the ill ſucceſs which
muſt attend an undertaking of that importance.

CHAP. XXXVII.

A letter to the great Emirs who were at Tachkunt.

THE empreſſes, Mirzas, and Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic, having receiv'd advice of the oath taken by the great Emirs to the Mirza Calil Sultan, whom they had plac'd on the throne, wrote the following letter to 'em by way of reprimand.

" The great Timur our maſter, of bleſſed " memory, has ordain'd by his laſt will the " Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir his heir and " lawful ſucceſſor to the empire, whom we have " ſworn to obey, tho at the peril of our lives. " At preſent you have acted contrary to the " expreſs will of our great maſter and bene- " factor. By this diſobeying his laſt will, you " have forgot the obligations you lie under to " him. We did not doubt that if any one had " but adviſ'd to do as you have done, you " wou'd have oppos'd 'em with all your power. " We can't comprehend how lords of ſo great " experience have dar'd to commit an action of

" ſuch

Book VI. " ſuch ill conſequence; which in the end muſt
" produce repentance and miſery on your ſide.
" Your manner of acting will doubtleſs be
" charg'd as an exceſs of ambition: how comes
" it then that you have wounded your reputa-
" tion by ingratitude towards your benefactor?
" You have violated your oath of fidelity to
" Timur, which you ought never to have done,
" eſpecially at a time when ſo many misfor-
" tunes have been caus'd by the death of our
" gracious maſter. Don't you conſider the ill
" name you'll acquire by this action in hiſtory,
" which will remain to the end of time? How
" can you conſent to this diſhonorable deed,
" who have ſo often ſacrific'd your lives in the
" purſuit of honor? How can you become
" traitors to an emperor, for whoſe ſake you
" have ſo often and ſo generouſly expos'd your
" ſelves to the greateſt dangers? What is moſt
" ſurprizing is, that your conſciences muſt re-
" prove you at the ſame time that we do, ſince
" you are not ignorant of the crime you have
" committed. How can perſons of your high
" quality, of ſo great underſtanding, and long
" experience, dare to commit ſo enormous a
" fault?"

This letter was ſeal'd, and ſent by a meſſenger nam'd Abou Dgyoura; who having deliver'd it to the Emirs, they read it, and after a ſerious reflection, acknowledg'd their fault, and were ſorry for it: but repentance was too late, they having reſign'd their liberty to another.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

The Emir Berendac arrives at the empreſſes court, with an anſwer to the letter ſent the Emirs, who were at Tachkunt with the Mirza Calil Sultan.

THE Mirzas, empreſſes and Emirs being encamp'd at Aeſoulat, the Emir Berendac, ſon of Gehan'Chah, arriv'd from Tachkunt, and being admitted into their preſence, paid his compliments of condolence; and afterwards took his place in the council-hall with the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic, where he preſented the following letter written by the Emirs Codadad Huſſeini and Chamſeddin Abbas.

" We have taken an oath to obey the Mirza " Calil Sultan, for the good of both church and " ſtate, and to maintain the ſucceſſion of the " kingdom in our maſter's family for ever. The " misfortune which has happen'd appear'd ſo " terrible to us, that we fear'd ſome unexpected " revolt, which it wou'd have been impoſſible " to have remedy'd. All we have done was " with a ſincere intention. A general was " wanting to our troops, that no one might " have any pretence for revolting, which wou'd " have brought the ſtate into confuſion and diſ- " order: we therefore imagin'd you wou'd have " had the ſame ſentiments with us. But ſince " our proceedings do not agree with the laſt " will of our maſter, we receive his orders " with reſpect and ſincerity; and God forbid " we

Book VI. " we ſhou'd in any wiſe contradict 'em. We " ſhall be always ready to join in whatever you " judg proper to do as to the execution of the " emperor's teſtament."

The Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic having read this letter, which was conformable to what the Emir Berendac had declar'd to 'em, told him they cou'd by no means conſent to any thing done in contradiction to Timur's will, and that they wou'd never acknowledg the Mirza Calil Sultan. " If we diſobey our emperor's " orders, ſay they, and acknowledg any other " for his ſucceſſor than whom he has declar'd, " we ſhall deſerve to be loaded with misfor- " tunes and ſhame, and to be for ever accurs'd. " We'll take great care as to what we do in this " affair, of which every ſenſible and impartial " man may judg."

Then the Emirs wrote a ſecond letter to thoſe at Tachkunt, whom they invited to ſubmit entirely to the will, and annul the oath they had taken thro inadvertency; as likewiſe to remember the obligations they were under to the emperor, and not have cauſe to bluſh before him at the day of judgment. " This action, added " they, will look ill both in the ſight of God " and man, and be an eternal blot upon you, " which you will never be able to wipe off."

This ſecond letter was put into the hands of the Emir Berendac, to whom they ſpake as follows: " You have committed a great fault, " which you ought to repair by vacating the " oath you have ſo wrongfully taken, and by " following our maſter's orders, which we are " all oblig'd to obey. Submit your ſelves to the " Mirza Pir Mehemed, and perſuade the Mirza " Calil Sultan to do the ſame. You muſt ſign " an agreement to that purpoſe, and ſend it to

" us

"'tis at Samarcand, that we may deliver it to Chap. 38.
"the Mirza who is the true and lawful heir to
"the empire." Then the Emir Berendac ſet out for Tachkunt.

Next day the Mirzas, empreſſes and Emirs departed to continue their road towards Samarcand. The Mirza Oloue-Bec, with the Emir Chamelic, at the head of one body of the army, march'd towards the right: and the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan with the Emir Cheik Noureddin, commanding another body, towards the left. Theſe two Mirzas were then but eleven years old: and Oloue-Bec being eldeſt by four months and twenty days, the Emir Chamelic, when they were arriv'd at Caradgec, ſet out before, in purſuance of the reſolution taken in the aſſembly; and being arriv'd at Samarcand, the governor Argoun Chah ſhut the gates againſt him, and even plac'd a guard upon the walls. The Mirza Calil Sultan had written a letter to him full of fine promiſes, by which he engag'd him to be of his ſide, telling him that if he was willing to gain his favor, he ſhou'd refuſe entrance to the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic.

Argoun Chah, puff'd up by this Mirza's fair promiſes, which flatter'd the ambition and ingratitude inherent in his Turcoman blood, abandon'd himſelf to folly, and was won over to the Mirza Calil Sultan. The Emir Chamelic went from the gate of Cheik Zade, which is upon that road, to the gate of Tchehar Raha, where the Emirs Argoun Chah, Coja Youſef, and other chiefs of the city commonly keep their ſtations. Argoun Chah wou'd not ſuffer him to enter, pretending to ſtand by the orders he had receiv'd of Timur. He moreover told him that he was ready to believe the emperor had by his teſta-

Book VI. ment ordain'd the Mirza Pir Mehemed his ſucceſſor; but that he wou'd wait till all the Mirzas and Emirs being aſſembled together agreed on it; that he wou'd then open the gates to 'em, and they might proclaim the Mirza, and place him upon the throne; after which he wou'd deliver up the government of the city.

The Emir Chamelic believing that what Argoun Chah had told him was all grimace, and that he was reſolv'd not to open the gate, return'd very much afflicted: he croſs'd the river Couhec, and being arriv'd at Ali Abad, a town of Sogdiana Kelana, he met the Mirzas and empreſſes, who had paſs'd the mountain of Caradgec. He told 'em how affairs ſtood, and his thoughts of Argoun Chah's real deſigns. This renew'd their afflictions, and oblig'd 'em to encamp. Serai Mulc Canum and Touman Aga held a council with the Emirs on what was moſt fitting to be done, and agreed that it wou'd be beſt to go to Bocara, while they ſhou'd ſend the Emir Cheik Noureddin to Samarcand, to perſuade the Emirs there to give 'em entrance.

April 14. 1405. This Emir departed the the firſt of Ramadan 807, and being arriv'd at the gate of Tchehar Raha, counſell'd the Emirs within, who gave him the ſame anſwer as they had the Emir Chamelic. Nevertheleſs Noureddin got off his horſe, paſs'd the bridge on foot, and ſpake to 'em before the gate. "Emirs, ſaid he, what we are "now talking of is no trifling matter. Per"mit me then to enter alone into the city, that "we may examine together the good and bad "conſequences of what you are doing, leſt you "have cauſe to repent at laſt." Whatever Noureddin cou'd ſay, ſignify'd nothing; for they were buoy'd up with the Mirza Calil Sultan's pro-

promiſes. The Emir ſeeing his words had no effect, return'd to Ali Abad, where he gave an account to the Mirzas and empreſſes of all that had paſs'd. Chap. 39.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Relation of what happen'd on the Emir Berendac's return to Tachkunt.

WE ſaid before that the Emir Berendac had made a treaty at Acſoulat with the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic, which he had confirm'd with an oath, wherein he had promis'd to risk his life in the defence of Timur's laſt will; and that he went back to Tachkunt with letters to the Emirs there. Theſe Emirs having read thoſe letters, became very ſorry for having proclaim'd and ſworn to the Mirza Calil Sultan, and unanimouſly approv'd of what the Emir Berendac had told 'em from the other Emirs, ſaying that the throne belong'd to him whom Timur had declar'd his heir by will, and that they wou'd never conſent to alter it. After which they drew up a manifeſto, which every one ſign'd and ſeal'd, and the Mirza Calil Sultan was likewiſe oblig'd to ſubſcribe. The Mirza order'd Atilmich to carry this paper, with preſents, to the Emirs Noureddin and Chamelic, from whence he was to convey it to the Mirza the lawful heir; and before his departure, he ſaid to him, "When you have aſſur'd the Mirza "Pir Mehemed of my reſpects, tell him I am "his ſincere friend, and according to the will "of the emperor our father and maſter, I ac-"knowledg him his ſucceſſor in the empire."

Book VI. In this the Mirza acted the part of a hypocrite, his ſole deſire being to command: and there were ſome Emirs who egg'd him on to the execution of his deſigns, tho they had had acceſs to his perſon but for a ſhort time. "The "ſtrongeſt, ſay they, ought to govern; and he "who has any advantage ſhou'd make uſe of it. "You muſt, my lord, embrace this opportunity "to depart immediately for Samarcand, and "aſcend the throne, after which you ſhou'd open "the treaſurys, and by your liberalitys make "both high and low your ſervants; for man is "a ſlave to favors. Arm your ſelf with policy "and courage for your advancement, and loſe "no time; for ſuch an affair as this won't admit of delay or cowardice. Such an opportunity may not be met with for ſeveral ages; "do not therefore neglect it. The poet ſays, "protract not the happy minute; for next moment an inſuperable difficulty may be ſtarted."

Theſe advices were ſo often repeated, that the Mirza's ambition ſurmounted his reaſon: he got together all the horſes, mules and camels belonging to Timur, and to the Mirzas and Emirs of his attendance, which he had left to graze at Tachkunt and Seiram, and diſtributed 'em among the Emirs and other officers of Irac who were of his party; he gave 'em a great deal of mony, ſtuffs, belts, cuiraſſes, arms and utenſils, which belong'd to the ſoldiers of the army who were in thoſe quarters: and then he departed at their head for Samarcand. When he was come near the Sihon, he encamp'd; and afterwards reſolv'd that the Emir Berendac, with the troops of the right wing, ſhou'd croſs the Sihon forthwith on a bridg of boats above Charonkhia; and that himſelf wou'd paſs over after

after him; and then the Emirs Codadad, Chamſeddin Abbas, and the other Emirs. Chap. 40.

The Emir Berendac had already made a ſecret propoſal to theſe Emirs, that he ſhou'd join the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic; to which they conſented, ſaying, they wou'd do nothing repugnant to Timur's will, and that their intention alſo was to abandon the Mirza Calil Sultan, and march towards Atchic Ferkint. Berendac adviſ'd 'em to ſtay ſome days near Tachkunt, that he might inform 'em of what ſhou'd happen; and that afterwards they ſhou'd unanimouſly proſecute what was juſt and reaſonable, that ſo their deſigns might have the deſir'd ſucceſs.

CHAP. XL.

The great Emirs oppoſe the Mirza Calil Sultan.

THE Emirs Berendac, Rouſtem Tagi Bouga, and Abdelkerim ſon of Hadgi Seifeddin, being arriv'd at the Sihon, paſs'd it on a bridg; after which Berendac broke it down, and then went to join the Mirzas and empreſſes who were on their road to Samarcand. The Emirs Codadad and Chamſeddin likewiſe abandon'd the Mirza Calil Sultan, and march'd to Atchic Ferkint; on advice of which, that Mirza went to the Sihon, and having rebuilt the bridg, paſs'd the river next day with his troops. The Emir Berendac being arriv'd in the neighborhood of Douabe, met Gelal Baourdgi, who on the Emir Chamelic's return to Samarcand had abandon'd the Mirzas and empreſſes, and was

Book VI. going over to the Mirza Calil Sultan: he gave Berendac an account of the Emir Chamelic's journy to Samarcand, and of Argoun Chah's refuſing him entrance into the city.

The Emir Berendac ſurpriz'd at this news, and mov'd as well by his ambition as his cowardice, prefer'd policy to juſtice and reaſon; and regardleſs of his oath, or the obſervance of the rules of equity, immediately return'd to find the Mirza Calil Sultan. On the contrary, Rouſtem Tagi Bouga went to Ali Abad, where he inform'd the Mirzas of the Emir Berendac's return. This latter, aſham'd and confounded, beg'd pardon of the Mirza Calil, and ſolemnly ſwore to him a ſecond time. The Mirza with thoſe of his party declar'd the paper void, wherein they had promis'd obedience to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, tho he had ſet his ſeal to it, and ſent it by Atilmich; and at the ſame time he continu'd his road towards Samarcand, with deſign to uſurp the empire. This news being come to the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic, they thus addreſs'd the empreſſes. "The "evil counſel of ſeditious perſons has at preſent "obtain'd: the Emirs have again taken an "oath to the Mirza Calil Sultan; they have "violated the treaty which they ſubſcrib'd "and ſeal'd, and are all on their march to Sa"marcand. He who breaks his word and oath, "ought to be abhor'd by every one, as an "enemy to mankind. Every body's heart "ſhou'd now be rent into a thouſand pieces; "for the moſt powerful emperor, who was in "a manner the ſoul of the world, is dead: but "ſcarce is he expir'd, when ſome raw youths, "whom from the loweſt ſtate of life he has "rais'd to the greateſt honors, become trai"tors to him, and forgetting the obligations

"they

" they owe him, contravene his orders, and Chap. 41.
" violate their oaths. How can we diſſemble
" our grief at ſo terrible a misfortune? An
" emperor, whoſe equal is no where to be met
" with, who has oblig'd the kings of the earth
" to ſerve at his gate, and has juſtly acquir'd
" the name of conqueror, is no ſooner paſs'd
" out of this world, than his laſt will is tram-
" pled upon. Religion is barter'd for this
" world. What unheard-of ingratitude is it,
" that abject ſlaves, after ſo many benefits re-
" ceiv'd, ſhou'd become the enemys of their
" great benefactor? If rocks had but a heart,
" they wou'd mourn at the ſight of ſo abo-
" minable an action. Why are not ſtones
" rain'd down from heaven to puniſh theſe un-
" grateful wretches? As for us, may God
" grant us his grace, that we may not forget
" our maſter's favors; but that after we have
" beſought his interceſſion, we may employ all
" our care in the execution of his laſt will, and
" in being obedient to the young princes his
" children, and ſacrifice even our lives as faith-
" ful ſervants, rather than diſobey him in the
" leaſt point."

CHAP. XLI.

The Emirs hold a council with the empreſſes, in relation to their marching to Bocara.

AFTER the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic had finiſh'd this ſpeech, they repreſented to the empreſſes, that ſince affairs had took ſuch a turn, it ſeem'd requiſite that while their majeſtys ſhou'd go to Samarcand,

the

the Emirs ſhou'd attend upon the Myrza to Bocara, from whence they might go to meet the Mirza Pir Mehemed to ſhew him Timur's teſtament. The empreſſes approving their propoſal, the Emirs took leave of 'em; and having aſſembled a great number of Emirs who were faithful to the deceas'd emperor, and reſolv'd to execute his orders, they held a council with 'em, and ſpake as follows.

"Every one knows that no body had freer "acceſs to the late emperor than we: if there- "fore we forget the favors we receiv'd of him, "we ſhall deſerve to be made miſerable for ever. "And tho ſince his death every one has turn'd "his back upon us, yet for our parts we'll ne'er "quit our reſolution to obey his laſt orders. If "others have no thoughts of bluſhing before "him at the day of judgment, we have. Our "intention is to ſeek the Mirza Pir Mehemed, "who is declar'd by Timur's teſtament the "lawful heir to the empire, and to offer our "ſervice to him: and if to fulfil our benefac- "tor's will, we muſt risk our lives, and for- "ſake our worldly goods, we'll do it a thouſand "times rather than fail in our promiſe, or vio- "late our oath; for if we ſhou'd be guilty "of ſo infamous an action, we cou'd never "hope to enjoy one day in paradiſe. You, E- "mirs, who were the neareſt officers of that "happy emperor, let us know your ſentiment "with regard to this reſolution."

The Emirs of this aſſembly, whoſe hearts were ſenſibly touch'd, unanimouſly anſwer'd, "Our ſole intention is to obey our maſter's "orders: ſince you are reſolv'd to execute his "laſt will, we'll follow you with the greateſt "alacrity, and in what relates to us, we'll em- "ploy our utmoſt care, and ſacrifice our very "lives."

" lives." The chief of theſe faithful ſervants of the emperor, were Atilmich, Tevekul Carcara, Haſan Jagadaoul, Allan Coja Tercan, Uſtoui, Chamſeddin Almaleghi, Mouſa Recmal, Berteri, Vefadar, and others. Chap. 42.

CHAP. XLII.

The Mirzas and Emirs march to Bocara.

AFTER the reſolution was taken of going to Bocara, the 3d of Ramadan 807, the Mirzas Olouc-Bec and Ibrahim Sultan took leave of the empreſſes, who, after exceſſive grief on both ſides, embrac'd the Mirzas with the greateſt tenderneſs, and recommended 'em to the divine protection. Theſe princes took horſe, and departed from Ali Abad, truſting only in the aſſiſtance of heaven. The Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic follow'd 'em, having with 'em Timur's treaſury, which conſiſted of ready mony, jewels, habits, arms and other riches, which this emperor always kept by him: and they ſent Rouſtem Tagi Bouga to Bocara before the reſt, to give all neceſſary orders. April 16. 1405.

CHAP. XLIII.

The empreſſes march to Samarcand. Their mourning, after the two Mirzas departure.

THE empreſſes, accompany'd by the young princes the Mirzas children, as Baiera, Aidgel, Sadvaccas, Siorgatmich and others, with ſeveral faithful domeſtics, departed from Ali Abad; and having the deceas'd emperor's horſe-tail and drums carry'd before 'em, and his baggage following behind, they took the road to Samarcand, and arriv'd at the gate of Tchehar Raha, with their hair diſhevel'd, and their eyes guſhing out with tears. The Emirs of the city had the inſolence to refuſe opening the gate to 'em that day: on which the empreſſes went down into the garden of the Mirza Charoc near that gate, where they paſs'd the night. Next day they enter'd the city with the Mirzas and officers of their houſhold, and lodg'd in the Canicah of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, where Timur's coffin lay. At their arrival there they uncover'd their heads, and tore their hair; they mangled their faces; and caſt themſelves on the ground, to teſtify their ſorrow for the emperor. The princeſſes Canzade and Roukia Canica, the Mirza Mehemed Gehanghir, with ſeveral grandees of the empire, as the Cōja Abdulevel and others, with the wives of the Cherifs and principal perſons, having felts about their necks, and their faces torn, aſſembled together in different mourning-habits. The inhabitants ſhut up the ſhops and markets; and every one made lamentations over

the

the emperor's corps. The affliction was not only among the inhabitants of Samarcand; but alſo ſpread thro-out all Aſia. Chap. 44.

CHAP. XLIV.

Account of what paſs'd among the Mirzas and Emirs who were gone to Bocara.

THE Mirzas Oloug-Bec and Ibrahim Sultan, who had taken the road to Bocara from Ali Abad, arriv'd the fourth of Ramadan 807 at the walls of Debbous, a very high fortreſs, at the foot of which runs the river of Samarcand. They were met there by Beyan Temour Cazen, brother of Mengheli Coja, from Samarcand, who brought a letter from Coja Youſef and Argoun Chah, the tenor of which was as follows. "After the uſual ſalutations, "we let you know that tho we have refus'd to "open the gates of the city to you, it was not "thro any motive of treaſon, or with intent to "revolt: our deſign is only to obſerve Timur's "laſt will, to the alteration of which we'll ne-"ver conſent. If the Mirza Calil Sultan ſhou'd "come hither, we wou'd uſe him in the ſame "manner. We are reſolv'd to preſerve this "city, it being the ſeat of the empire, and not "deliver it up to any one till the coming of "the Mirza Pir Mehemed, the lawful ſucceſſor "to the crown, into whoſe hands we will re-"ſign it according to the emperor's teſtament. "We thus let you know the ſtate of affairs, that "you may not be incens'd againſt us." At the end of the letter they ſwore to perform what they promis'd. April 15.

The

The Mirzas, notwithſtanding the oath, ſuſpected the promiſes of theſe flatterers, but not to irritate 'em in this bad conjuncture, they diſſembled their ſuſpicion, and order'd the meſſenger to ſalute the Emirs, and tell 'em that if their intention was to do what they had promis'd, it wou'd be better for 'em, ſince it was the way which every honeſt and ſenſible man wou'd take. Beſides this they wrote a letter, in which they mildly adviſ'd 'em to continue firm in the reſolution they had taken, and to govern the city according to their duty, without hearkning to any inſtigations to the contrary; for if they kept their word, and acknowledg'd the obligations they had receiv'd from the emperor, in maintaining the city for the Mirza Pir Mehemed, they wou'd fulfil their maſter's will; it being an indiſpenſable obligation on every one to do that which is well-pleaſing both to God and man, that ſo their integrity might be mention'd with honor by poſterity. They likewiſe order'd him to tell 'em they need not doubt but that, when the Mirza ſhou'd be fix'd upon the throne, he wou'd diſtinguiſh them above all others, as they had preſerv'd it for him; but if they ſhou'd tranſgreſs the orders of their benefactor, they wou'd commit a very heinous and treaſonable action, and beſides the diſhonor and infamy of it, wou'd incur a ſevere puniſhment, and muſt in the end repent in vain. They ſeal'd up this letter, which they deliver'd to Beyan Temour Cazen, who immediately return'd with it to Samarcand.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLV.

The Mirzas and Emirs at Bocara receive advice of the Mirza Calil Sultan's arrival at Samarcand, and of the obedience paid him by the Emirs of that city.

BEYAN Temour Cazen being return'd to Samarcand, the Emirs continu'd their journy towards Bocara, and two or three days after receiv'd advice that the Mirza Calil Sultan, who had taken the road of Samarcand from Tachkunt, with the Emirs of his party and his troops, being excited by a deſire of uſurpation and dominion, had made great haſte; that being arriv'd near the city, the Emir Coja Youſef went out to meet him with preſents, and had receiv'd him as emperor, having caſt gold and precious ſtones before him, and kiſs'd his hand at Chiraz, a village four miles from Samarcand; that the Cherifs and principal perſons of the city had done the ſame; that when the Mirza was arriv'd at the bank of the river of Couhec, Argoun Chah went out to make his ſubmiſſion to him, and had deliver'd the keys of the city and caſtle, with thoſe of the treaſury of that capital, into his hands; and that all the traitors of the city and of the Mirza's court had unanimouſly reſolv'd to acknowledg him for their ſovereign, regardleſs their oaths, or the obedience due to Timur's laſt teſtament.

The Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic having heard this news, loaded the ingrateful perjurors with curſes; and wrote a letter to

Book VI. 'em full of reproaches, which they ſent by an expreſs. Then continuing their road, they met Rouſtem Berlas, brother of Hamza, governor of Bocara, whom they had ſent thither before, and was return'd to meet the Mirzas, who being arriv'd before the city went to viſit the ſepulcher of the prophet Job, whoſe aſſiſtance they implor'd. They made a new treaty in this holy place, which they confirm'd by ſolemn oaths.

Afterwards they took horſe, and enter'd Bocara; they lodg'd in the caſtle, which they rebuilt, and augmented the fortifications. As to the guard of the city, they agreed that the gate which opens upon it, with one half of the caſtle, ſhou'd be under the care of the Mirza Olouc-Bec, aſſiſted by the Emir Chamelic; and that the gate which looks upon the out-parts, with the other half of the caſtle and walls, ſhou'd be commanded by the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, attended by the Emir Cheik Noureddin; that the city ſhou'd be guarded by the Emirs Rouſtem Berlas, his brother Hamza, Atilmich, Teveckul Carcara, and others, each of whom ſhou'd have the care of a gate, as well as of the baſtions and walls. Having all come to this reſolution, they began immediately to put it in execution, and to rebuild the walls of the city.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVI.

Coronation of the Mirza Calil Sultan at Samarcand.

THE aſtrologer Moulana Bedreddin having made choice of wedneſday the 16th of Ramadan 807, which anſwers to the year of the Hen, the ſun being in the ſixth degree of Aries, for the coronation of the Mirza Calil Sultan; that prince made his entry the ſame day into Samarcand, and took poſſeſſion of the great imperial palace, where the treaſures of all Aſia were amaſs'd. Being ſeated on the throne in his imperial habits, he receiv'd the ſubmiſſion of the Mirzas, Emirs, and principal men of the ſtate, who on their knees congratulated his acceſſion to the throne. April 27. 1405.

As ſoon as he was inſtal'd, to ſhew he had an outward regard to Timur's teſtament, he gave the title of Can to the Mirza Mehemed Gehanghir, ſon of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, and nephew of the Mirza Pir Mehemed, tho this young prince was but nine years of age: and his name was plac'd at the top of all the patents and imperial orders according to cuſtom, tho the Mirza Calil Sultan had the ſole diſpoſal of every thing, as if he had been the lawful ſovereign of all Tranſoxiana.

Two days after, this new emperor went to the Canicah of the deceas'd Mirza Mehemed Sultan, where Timur's tomb was, to pay his devotions, and perform the public ceremonys of mourning. The empreſſes, Mirzas, Emirs, and all the people came there in black habits, and wept and

Book VI. made bitter lamentations. By the Mirza Calil Sultan's order the whole Alcoran was read thro' alms were distributed among the poor and sick, and a great funeral-banquet prepar'd.

Then the emperor's drum was beat in a very mournful manner, after which it was broke to pieces according to custom. The learned men and poets compos'd panegyrics and epitaphs upon the emperor; and among others the son of the Coja Masaoud Bocari, and the Coja Asmet Ulla.

As the pious Timur, by reason of the love he always bore to the Cherifs, had several times desir'd that his tomb shou'd be plac'd under that of the great Cherif Seid Bereke, that Cherif's coffin was transported from Andcoud, and inter'd under the mausoleum Timur had erected near the alcove of the Canicah; and Timur's body was plac'd underneath that of the Cherif, according to the orders he had given; the corps of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan was also transported to the same mausoleum, and bury'd at the emperor his grandfather's side. May God enlighten their souls with the lamps of his mercy.

When the Mirza Calil Sultan was fix'd on the throne, he open'd his treasures, and distributed them very liberally among the Emirs, principal lords, and soldiers: but why shou'd it be call'd liberality? it was rather imprudence and prodigality, for he distributed his gold like measures of wheat, and it was carry'd away by loads, as corn out of barns, to the great amazement of the people.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVII.

Abridgment of the hiſtory of the reign of the Mirza Calil Sultan: and the cauſe of his ruin.

LEARNED men have accounted kings the ſhadow of God, and acknowledg'd that the power of ſovereigns is as a ray of the Divinity. But nothing is likewiſe more certain, than that he who believes himſelf capable of worthily acquitting that great charge without the divine aſſiſtance, gives credit to what is both abſurd and impoſſible: for God always favors with his mercy the good man, and prefers above all other potentates thoſe who regularly pay their devotions to him, and diſtribute alms to the poor. We may alſo be aſſur'd that a ſtate is not well govern'd by its vaſt treaſures and magazines, nor by the multitude of its troops or the great number of its captains; but by the protection of the Almighty. In fine, there is ſomewhat beſides valor requiſite for the governing of a great empire.

The truth of this plainly appears in the caſe of the Mirza Calil Sultan, who thro injuſtice and favorable conjunctures became maſter of ſo vaſt an extent of ground, as ſcarcely ever any one emperor poſſeſs'd ſo much. His birth, as grandſon of the great Timur-Bec, drew on him the attention of the whole univerſe: and at his grandfather's death, moſt part of the Nevians and great Emirs were with him at Tachkunt. When they receiv'd the news of that misfortune, their hearts were fill'd with fear: and as

Book VI. of Timur's children, there were [illegible] that place older than the Mirza Calil Sultan, every one took an oath to him, thinking by this means to preſerve the crown for ever in Timur's family.

The Mirza at the ſame took the road to Samarcand, and at his arrival there perceiv'd a general conſternation among the people, the chief of whom, judging it beſt ſo to do, went to meet him, and congratulate him on his coming to the crown. The Emirs who had the keys of the city and treaſurys, likewiſe reſign'd 'em to him; and ſo he eaſily became maſter of the throne of Samarcand. This city was then in a very flouriſhing condition, being inhabited by princes and great lords, learned doctors, and the moſt skilful artiſts in the world; for moſt of the tradeſmen of the towns conquer'd by Timur, had left their own country to dwell in this great city, it being the ſeat of the empire of Aſia. We will not mention the immenſe treaſures of ready mony, precious ſtones, ſtuffs, belts, curious veſſels and toys, which were innumerable; nor the arms, bucklers, tents, pavilions, canopys, thrones, and other marks of grandeur, riches and magnificence, which had been amaſſing for ſeveral ages by the princes of all the kingdoms of Aſia, and had been pillag'd by Timur from the emperors and princes of the countrys of Iran and Touran, from the country of the Calmacs to the frontiers of Greece and Natolia; and from the farther part of India to the frontiers of Syria, and from Carezem and the great Capchac to the limits of Ruſſia, Circaſſia, Bulgaria and Europe: beſides which was the tribute of thirty-ſix years receiv'd from all Aſia.

This

This city, tho ſo vaſtly rich, and fill'd with great quantitys of goods, and abundance of ſoldiers, fell into the hands of the Mirza Calil Sultan without his ſtriking a blow for it: but this prodigal prince ſquander'd away all thoſe treaſures, brought all this grandeur to nothing, and entirely ruin'd this vaſt power in leſs than four years; which was one means made uſe of by fate to ruin his good fortune. Chap. 47.

The ſecond cauſe was the Mirza's violent paſſion for Chadi Mulc, one of the concubines of the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, whom he had privately marry'd in the emperor's abſence, and cou'd never viſit except in ſecret: but when he found himſelf an abſolute ſovereign, he reſign'd every thing up to the will of this beauty, and took no pleaſure but in her company, her charms being the ſubject of all his thoughts; while ſhe ſhew'd no regard either to princes or nobles, but accounted every thing below her; and even the emperor, laying aſide his ſovereignty, became her ſlave, and breath'd only by her permiſſion. This brought diſorder upon the ſtate, and upon the Mirza's affairs, ſo that nothing ſucceeded in which the ſovereign authority had any concern. He ſquander'd away all his riches, and chiefly among thoſe who were afterwards the inſtruments of his ruin: and tho he was ſo rich that all the wealth of Hatem and the tribe of Tai did not amount to a tenth part of one of his treaſurys, yet he ſoon ſpent all. He had neglected the counſel not to be over-liberal, for fear of being at laſt left naked: and he ſeem'd ignorant, that one ſhou'd give only to thoſe who deſerve it, and that in moderation.

On this account, the firſt thing to be mention'd as done by this prince was his exceſſive

Book VI. prodigality. F
ſtones on the
wou'd have be
a little earth
merit cou'd obt
trifle. It was t
for he who put in a penny,
million; and thoſe who deſerv'd vaſt treaſures,
died without having a tenth part. Moreover,
the Mirza advanc'd ſeveral ſtrangers of mean
extraction, made 'em Emirs, and gave 'em the
firſt places in the ſtate; which diſcover'd a
great want of policy and conduct; for it alie-
nated the hearts of the great Emirs of his
court, and the generals of his army from him:
and even thoſe upſtarts whom he had enrich'd,
fell into an exceſs of ſelf-love and pride, which
was the root of many diſorders. "Beſtow
"not honors, ſays the poet, upon him thou
"lov'ſt, unleſs by degrees; for if you advance
"him on a ſudden, he will become inſenſible
"of the favors you have heap'd on him, and
"of the obligations he owes to you."

Beſides all this, as the Sultan Calil's miſtreſs was inferior in rank to the deceas'd emperor's wives, and theſe empreſſes became jealous of her growing greatneſs, ſhe conceiv'd a great indignation againſt 'em, and perſuaded Calil to give each of 'em, as well as Timur's concubines, to ſome brave Emir in marriage, who might by that means, as ſhe pretended, become more attach'd to his intereſt, and ſo bring the ſtate into better order. Accordingly he behav'd himſelf towards thoſe venerable empreſſes, whom he ought to have reverenc'd as his own mother, in a manner condemn'd by all men of ſenſe, forcing them to marry thoſe who were unworthy to be their porters: he caſt angels into the

mouths

mouths of satyrs, gave eagles to crows, strung pearls with pieces of glass, and rubys with flints; which he did without the least remorse. But he did not consider, that a king who had cast off all thoughts of honor and justice, will shortly lose his kingdom. In effect, his actions drew on him the aversion of his soldiers, and even of all his subjects: and as he no longer acted with sincerity, the public affairs fell into the utmost disorder and confusion. "He run, says a certain poet, the ship of empire a-ground; both himself and his lady were cast away; for the kingdom slip'd out of his hands, and he fell from the utmost height." Chap. 47.

The source of all these disorders was the great familiarity the Mirza had with strangers, and persons of no figure or merit. The good ought to avoid the wicked; for the wicked are the cause of their ruin. These events shew the great soul and admirable conduct of Timur-Bec in his governing the empire: they let us see that his ordering the death of this woman was not without the providence of God, tho at that time every one was ignorant of the ill consequence of her being suffer'd to live.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Concluſion of the hiſtory of Timur-Bec, wherein the qualitys by which that conqueror ſurpaſs'd all the kings who preceded him, are ſet down.
The names of his children who ſurviv'd him.

THE glorious perfections by which the incomparable Timur-Bec adorn'd the regal dignity, were his ſincere piety, the great veneration he bore to religion, his ſtrict juſtice, and unbounded liberality, the effects of which were daily ſeen and felt by his people.

As his great qualitys have been mention'd in the ſeries of this hiſtory, our deſign at preſent is to take notice of certain which were peculiar to him. And among others, with regard to his birth, it is proper to be inform'd, that tho his ninth grandfather was Toumene Can, of the race of Buzendger Can, chief of a branch of the tribe of Cayat, who was deſcended from Turk, the ſon of Japhet, the ſon of Noah, on whom may ſalvation reſt; (from whence we diſcover that his anceſtors were Cans and emperors) yet the Emir Tragai his father, as well as his grandfather the Emir Berkulk, having abdicated the kingdom, and left the government of the principality of Kech, which they had preſerv'd with the Toman of ten thouſand men annex'd thereto, to the children of their uncles of the family of Berlas; we may ſay that Timur-Bec brought the crown into this auguſt family, he being the firſt emperor in it.

At the age of twenty-five he attain'd to the highest dignitys, with admirable courage, and an ambition admir'd by all the world, endeavoring to bring the great talents he had receiv'd from nature to perfection. He paſs'd nine years in different countrys, where his good ſenſe and great genius appear'd in councils and aſſemblys, while at the ſame time his intrepidity and valor drew upon him every one's admiration, whether in perſonal combats, or in pitch'd battels, wherein no conqueror before him cou'd boaſt performing even the tenth part of his actions. Chap. 48.

The truth of what we advance may eaſily be conceiv'd, when we reflect on the actions related in this book: and we are not at all apprehenſive that our hiſtory will be tax'd with exaggeration. He mounted the throne of the empire when thirty-four years old, and reign'd ſucceſsfully for thirty-ſix years, during which time he gain'd a conſiderable number of conqueſts; for he made himſelf maſter of the three empires of Zagatai Can, Touchi Can, and Hulacou Can; he ſubdu'd the greateſt citys, and kingdoms of Aſia; and extended the limits of his dominions as far as the borders of that part of the world; ſo that his power, riches and magnificence were greater than we can poſſibly imagine. This is ſo certain, that we need only read the hiſtorys of other kings and princes, in whoſe familys the crown has continu'd a long time, to be aſſur'd of it. But the chief proof of his great power was, that to whatever place he march'd to wage war, he ſoon conquer'd it, and gave the government thereof to ſome of his children or officers; not acting like antient conquerors, who were contented with thoſe tokens of ſubmiſſion which vanquiſh'd princes might make by a tribute.

One

Book VI. One thing further remarkable in this monarch was, that tho he always obſerv[illegible] maxim of holding diets, yet he never [illegible] ſided in 'em; but conſtantly did what his own good genius inſpir'd in him, and had ſuch good ſucceſs in all his undertakings, that it ſeem'd as if he had been always the care of divine providence. He cou'd not be ſhaken in his reſolutions: he had the policy to be preſent at the execution of his moſt important enterprizes, either as to the ſtate or religion. Both in peace and war he wou'd put forward every thing himſelf.

Beſides his great and continual employments in war and the government, there remain many monuments of his ambition and grandeur, in citys, towns, caſtles, and walls which he built; in rivers and canals which he dug; and in works of piety, as moſques, chappels, hoſpitals, bridges, palaces, monaſterys, gardens, vineyards, and pleaſure-houſes, which he erected in divers parts of Aſia, in ſo great a number, that it wou'd take up a large volume only to enumerate 'em, without deſcribing each in particular. And it wou'd be no exaggeration to ſay, that a king wou'd be accounted very powerful and magnificent, who ſhou'd have employ'd thirty-ſix years only in building the great edifices which Timur did; and that he wou'd be thought to ſurpaſs all the kings of the earth on that account, without carrying on thoſe long wars, and obtaining the ſurprizing conqueſts which he did. Are not all the caravanſeras in the great roads of Aſia for the accommodation of travellers, the magnificent monaſterys and hoſpitals, from which the poor, the ſick and travellers reap ſo great advantages by the alms diſtributed there; are not theſe,

I

ASIA
Divided into its prin cipal parts after Tamerlan expedition according to ye Memoirs of M. de la Croix & rectified by ye Observatio of the Academy by I.B. Nolin
Leagues 20 to a Degree
Artic Polar Circle
Tropic of Cancer
Equinoctial Line
PART OF EUROPE
MUSCOVIA
NORTHERN TURQUESTAN
MOGOLISTAN
TIBET
MANGI
CATAI
PEKIN
COREA
Land of Yedso
I. Niphon
I. Formosa
I. Lucon
Manille
PHILIPPIC Is.
Mindano
I. Gilolo
MARIANNES
N. GUINEA
N. HOLLAND
MOLUCCA Is.
I. of Borneo
Sumatra I.
Batavia
Streighes of Sonde
P. of SONDE
Malaca
Siam
Canton
Nan Kim
Benares
INDIA
Surat
Goa
I. of Ceylan
C. Comorin
MALDIVES
ARABIA
AFRICA
Red Sea
Aden
Mecca
Medina
Jerusalem
Bassora
Bagdad
Tauris
Ispahan
Chiraz
Candahar
Herat
CASPIAN SEA
B. SEA
CONSTANTINOPLE
MEDITERANEAN S.
G. Cairo
ASTRAKAN
Bulgar
Casan
Moscow
TIBET
Cotan
Yulduz
Caracorom
Jenisca
Tropic of Cancer

I ſay, the good works of this pious emperor, who now reaps the fruits of 'em in eternity? Chap. 48.

We may alſo conſider the bleſſings this emperor receiv'd from heaven in the great number of children he left behind him; which were thirty-ſix ſons, and ſeventeen daughters living, according to the following detail.

Timur's children.

The deceas'd Mirza GEHANGHIR his eldeſt left eleven princes; for the deceas'd *Mehemed Sultan* had had three ſons, Mehemed Gehanghir, then nine years of age, Sadvaccas ſix, and Yahia five. The Mirza *Pir Mehemed Gehanghir* twenty nine years old, had ſeven ſons, Caïdou nine years of age, Caled ſeven, Buzendger, Sadvaccas, Tendger, Caiſer, and Dgehanghir.

The deceas'd Mirza OMAR CHEIK left nine ſons; *Pir Mehemed*, twenty-ſix years old, who had one ſon, of ſeven years of age, nam'd Omar Cheik; *Rouſtem*, ag'd twenty-four, who had two ſons, Oſman ſix years old, and Sultan Ali one year; *Eskender* twenty-one years of age; *Ahmed* eighteen years; *Sidi Ahmed* ſifteen; and *Bayera Haſan* twelve.

The ſons of the Mirza MIRAN CHAH, thirty-eight years of age, were in all ſeven: *Aboubeere*, twenty-three years old, who had two ſons, Alengher nine years of age, and Oſman Chelebi four; *Omar* twenty-two years old; *Calil Sultan* twenty-one; *Aidgel* ten; and *Siorgatmich* ſix.

The Mirza CHAROC, twenty-eight years of age, had ſeven ſons: *Olouc-Bec* and *Ibrahim Sultan*, both eleven years old; *Baiſaucar* eight years; *Siorgatmich* ſix; *Mehemed Jouki* three years; *Janaglen* two years; and *Tarcui* one year.

These

Book VI. Theſe thirty-ſix princes were all living at Timur-Bec's death: beſides whom he had one daughter nam'd Sultan Bact Begum, and ſixteen grandaughters: the Mirza Omar Cheik had three daughters, the Mirza Mehemed Sultan three, the Mirza Miran Chah four, and the Mirza Charoc one; the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir three, the Mirza Aboubecre one, and the Mirza Calil Sultan one.

The Mirza Sultan Huſſein, twenty-five years of age, was the ſon of Timur's daughter nam'd Akia Beghi or Tagi Can; and his father was the Emir Mehemed Bei, ſon of the Emir Mouſſa.

And as it was written in the book of fate, that the crown ſhou'd continue in this illuſtrious family by the branch of the Mirza Charoc and his children: after having now finiſh'd the hiſtory of the glorious actions of Timur-Bec, we intend to compile a hiſtory of the Mirza Charoc, and give a true relation of his great actions, which prov'd him the worthy ſucceſſor of the moſt illuſtrious conqueror who ever appear'd in the world.

The end of the ſecond volume.

I HAVE read by order of my lord chancellor *the hiſtory of Timur-Bec, grand Can of Tartary*; and believe the public will receive as much pleaſure as advantage from a work, in which the reader will diſcover the geography of the vaſt regions of Tartary, ſo little known in this part of the world.

Paris Decemb. 24.
1720.

L. De VERTOT.

THE

THE CONTENTS OF THE First VOLUME.

BOOK I.

CHAP. I. *Of Sultan Cazan, grand Can of Zagatai; his defeat and death. Mir Cazagan, a Turkiſh prince, takes upon him the government of the empire, and eſtabliſhes a grand Can. The war of Mir Cazagan againſt Malek Huſſein, prince of Herat.* Page 1

Chap. 2. *Of the government of the Mirza Abdalla, the ſon of Cazagan; and of the difference which happen'd between the princes of Zagatai.* 14

Chap. 3. *Togluc Timur Can, king of the Getes, marches into Tranſoxiana. The flight of Hadgi Berlas.* 18

Chap. 4. *The riſe of Mir Huſſein, grandſon of Mir Cazagan: he is aſſiſted by Timur-Bec.* 19

Chap. 5. *Several intrigues between Timur and Hadgi Berlas; as alſo between the other princes.* 22

Chap. 6. *The king of the Getes returns to Tranſoxiana with a great army. The death of Hadgi Berlas. The Can confirms Timur in the poſſeſſion of his country of Kech, and of a Toman of ten thouſand men.* 28

Chap.

Timur-Bec marches in ſearch of Emir Huſ-
31
Chap. 8. Several warlike exploits of Timur and Huſ-
ſein. 37
Chap. 9. The rencounter of the army of Gete, and its defeat, caus'd by the policy of Timur-Bec; with the reduction of the city of Kech. 44
Chap. 10. The death of Toglac Timur Can, king of the Getes; and the defeat of his army by the princes Timur-Bec and Huſſein. 47
Chap. 11. The aſſembly of the princes conven'd by Timur and the Emir Huſſein, in which they elevated Cabulchah Aglen to the dignity of grand Can. 52
Chap. 12. The battel of Lai, or of the ſloughs. 55
Chap. 13. The Retreat of Timur-Bec and Huſſein. Samarcand beſieg'd by the Getes. 61
Chap. 14. Departure of the princes for Samarcand, and the diſſenſion which happen'd between 'em. 66
Chap. 15. Timur-Bec brings an army into the field againſt Emir Huſſein. 72
Chap. 16. Several exploits of Timur, and intrigues of the princes. The march of Timur to Carſchi. 77
Chap. 17. Mir Huſſein brings an army into the field to oppoſe Timur. 86
Chap. 18. The ſiege and taking of Bocara by the army of Huſſein. Timur defeats the army of the Coronas. 89
Chap. 19. Timur ſends an ambaſſador to Malek Huſſein at Herat. 92
Chap. 20. Timur defeats the army of the Emir Huſſein in Tranſoxiana. 94
Chap. 21. The Emir Huſſein ſends an army againſt Timur, which is defeated. 101
Chap. 22. The Emir Huſſein again ſeeks to make peace with Timur. 105
Chap. 23. The Emir Huſſein brings an army into the field from Bedakchan. 108

Chap. 24. *Timur marches at the [illegible] repulſe the Getes.*
Chap. 25. *Timur returns from Bed[illegible]* 114
Chap. 26. *A ſecond rupture between Timur and Huſſein.* 117

BOOK II.

CHAP. 1. *The eſtabliſhment of Timur on the throne of the empire of Zagatai.* 130
Chap. 2. *Timur returns from the city of Balc to Samarcand: the building of the caſtle and fortreſs of that metropolis.* 132
Chap. 3. *The Couroultai, that is, the diet or aſſembly of the ſtates, conven'd by Timur's orders.* 136
Chap. 4. *Timur marches to Cheburgan at the head of an army.* 138
Chap. 5. *Timur ſends an army to Balc and Termed.* 140
Chap. 6. *Timur ſends the Emir Yakou to beſiege Cheburgan.* 141
Chap. 7. *Timur marches an army into the country of the Getes.* 142
Chap. 8. *A ſecond expedition of Timur againſt the Getes.* 144
Chap. 9. *The embaſſy from Timur to Huſſein Soſi, king of Carezem.* 147
Chap. 10. *Timur departs from Samarcand, to make war on the king of Carezem.* 149
Chap. 11. *Timur makes peace with Yſouph Soſi, who ſucceeded Huſſein; and demands in marriage the princeſs Canzade for the prince Gehanghir his eldeſt ſon.* 155
Chap. 12. *Timur marches a ſecond time into the kingdom of Carezem.* 157
Chap. 13. *The famous embaſſy from Timur to the king of Carezem, to demand the princeſs Canzade.* 158

Chap. 15. *Timur marches a third time into the country of the Getes.* 163

Chap. 15. *Timur's marriage with the princeſs Dilchadaga, daughter of Camareddin king of the Getes. Timur is in danger of loſing his life by a conſpiracy which he narrowly eſcap'd.* 166

Chap. 16. *Timur marches a third time to Carezem, and returns on the revolt of Sar Bouga and Adelchah.* 168

Chap. 17. *Timur's fourth expedition to the kingdom of the Getes.* 171

Chap. 18. *The death of Mirza Gehanghir, Timur's eldeſt ſon.* 174

Chap. 19. *Timur's fifth expedition againſt the Getes.* 176

Chap. 20. *Timur's fifth expedition to the country of the Getes againſt Camareddin. Tocatmich Aglen, deſcended from Touſchi, ſon of Genghiz Can, arrives at court, and puts himſelf under the protection of Timur.* 178

Chap. 21. *Timur gives Tocatmich Aglen the principalitys of Otrar and Sabran; and aſſiſts him in making himſelf maſter of the empire of Capchac which he claim'd as his right; tho Ourous Can, deſcended from Genghiz Can, was in poſſeſſion of it.* 180

Chap. 22. *Preparations for war. Timur brings an army into the field againſt Ourous Can, emperor of Capchac and grand Ruſſia.* 183

Chap. 23. *Timur's irruption into the country of Ourous Can: Tocatmich Aglen plac'd on the throne of Capchac, otherwiſe call'd the empire of Touchi Can.* 185

Chap. 24. *The birth of prince Charoc, ſon and heir to the emperor Timur.* 187

Chap. 25. *Timur ſends Tocatmich Can to attack Timur Melic Can, emperor of Capchac.* 189

The CONTENTS.

Chap. 26. *Embaſſy from the emperor Timur to Joſeph Sofi king of Carezem.*

Chap. 27. *Timur's fourth war in Carezem against Joſeph Sofi: conqueſt of that kingdom.* 194

Chap. 28. *Foundation of the walls of Kech, the country of Timur: the building of the palace of Aceferat.* 198

Chap. 29. *The Emir Hadgi Seifeddin ſent ambaſſador to Herat, to Malek Cayaſeddin Pir Ali, king of Coraſſana.* 200

Chap. 30. *Mirza Miran Chah, ſon of Timur, marches into Coraſſana, to make war on Malek Cayaſeddin Pir Ali, prince of Herat.* 202

Chap. 31. *Timur's army marches to make war in Perſia, and the reſt of the empire of Iran.* 204

Chap. 32. *Reduction of Fouchendge, a town of Coraſſana.* 207

Chap. 33. *Reduction of Herat, capital of Coraſſana* 209

Chap. 34. *The army marches to Tous and Kelat.* 213

Chap. 35. *Timur returns to Samarcand.* 215

Chap. 36. *Death of Akia Beghi, daughter of Timur, and wife of the Emir Bei, ſon of the Emir Mouſſa.* 216

Chap. 37. *Timur's ſecond expedition into the kingdom of Iran or Perſia.* 219

Chap. 38. *Reduction of the town of Terchiz in Coraſſana.* p. 225

Chap. 39. *The arrival of an ambaſſador from Fars, or the true Perſia, at the court of Timur.* 227

Chap. 40. *Timur marches into the province of Mazendran.* 239

Chap. 41. *Timur marches to Samarcand. Death of the empreſs Dilchadaga, and of the princeſs Turcan Aga, Timur's ſiſter.*

Chap. 42. *Timur ſends a ſixth army into the country of the Getes.* 235
Chap. 43. *Timur marches to Mazendran, and thence to Siſtan.* 236
Chap. 44. *Town of Siſtan beſieg'd and taken.* 239
Chap. 45. *Timur marches to Boſt.* 245
Chap. 46. *War againſt the Ouganians, inhabitants of the mountains, ſouth of Candahar.* 247
Chap. 47. *Timur returns to Samarcand.* 250
Chap. 48. *Timur marches into the province of Mazendran.* 251
Chap. 49. *Timur marches into the province of Irac Agemi.* 256
Chap. 50. *The emperor Timur marches to Sultania.* 257
Chap. 51. *Timur returns to Samarcand, the capital of his empire.* 259
Chap. 52. *Timur enters the kingdom of Iran, where he ſtays three years ſucceſſively.* 261
Chap. 53. *Timur marches to Azerbijana, or the country of the antient Medes.* 263
Chap. 54. *Timur enters Georgia at the head of his army. The deſcription of the Perſian way of hunting; as alſo of the Gerke and Nerke.* 267
Chap. 55. *Timur returns to Carabagh.* 269
Chap. 56. *The march of Timur to Berda. The motion of the army of Capchac. Defeat of the troops of Tocatmich Can.* 273
Chap. 57. *The arrival of the empreſs Serai Mulc Canum, and the princes her ſons.* 277
Chap. 58. *Timur's army marches againſt Cara Mehemed, prince of the Turcomans.* 278
Chap. 59. *Timur marches to Van and Vaſtan. The letter which Cha Chuja king of Perſia wrote to Timur at his death.* 282
Chap. 60. *Timur marches again into the countrys of Fars and Irac Agemi.* 289

The CONTENTS.

Chap. 61. *Timur marches to Chiraz, the capital of Fars or the true Perſia.* 294
Chap. 62. *Reaſons which induc'd Timur to return to the capital of his empire.* 297
Chap. 63. *Timur returns to Samarcand, and gives the government of Fars and Irac to the family of Muzaffer.* 301
Chap. 64. *The emperor orders a proceſs againſt ſome Emirs, whom he had left in Tranſoxiana.* 303

BOOK III.

CHAP. 1. *Timur-Bec departs for his fifth expedition into the kingdom of Carezem.* 305
Chap. 2. *Some accidents during Timur's expedition into Carezem.* 308
Chap. 3. *Timur departs to make war in Capchac, and is victorious over Tocatmich Can.* 317
Chap. 4. *Timur ſends the Mirza Miran Chah into Coraſſana.* 323
Chap. 5. *Timur's expedition into Mogoliſtan againſt Kezer Coja Aglen, and the prince Ancatoura; which made the fifth campain in that country.* 325
Chap. 6. *Timur holds a diet, and ſends his armys into all the quarters of the Moguls, to fight the Getes.* 331
Chap. 7. *Timur returns to the ſeat of his empire.* 338
Chap. 8. *The Couroultai, or diet, held by Timur's order.* 342
Chap. 9. *Timur ſends his troops into the country of the Getes.* 344
Chap. 10. *Timur marches into the deſart of Capchac.* 347
Chap. 11. *Timur reviews his troops.* 350
Chap. 12. *Timur ſends the Mirza Mehemet Sultan at the head of the ſcouts.* 359

The CONTENTS.

Chap. 13. *Battel between the ſcouts of the two armys. Death of the Emir Aicoutmur, and other famous men.* 367

Chap. 14. *The army rang'd in order of battel in an extraordinary manner. A terrible fight which enſu'd thereupon.* 371

Chap. 15. *Timur returns from the deſart of Capchac to the ſeat of his empire.* 382

Chap. 16. *The government of Zabuleſtan given to Mirza Pir Mehemed, ſon of Gehanghir.* 384

Chap. 17. *Timur departs for a war of five years continuance.* 386

Chap. 18. *Timur departs from Joüidez after his recovery.* 388

Chap. 19. *The taking of Amol, Sari, and Mahanaſar.* 390

Chap. 20. *Timur ſends a letter to Samarcand.* 396

Chap. 21. *Timur makes war a ſecond time on the kingdoms of Fars and Irac.* 399

Chap. 22. *Timur marches to the kingdoms of Loreſtan and Coureſtan.* 402

Chap. 23. *An account of the motions of the princes of Fars, or of Perſia and Irac, on which the preſent affairs depend.* 406

Chap. 24. *Timur marches to Chiraz againſt Chah Manſour.* 411

Chap. 25. *Battel between Timur and Chah Manſour. The death of the latter.* 416

Chap. 26. *Timur ſeizes the princes of the houſe of Muzaffer, and diſpoſes of their effects among his lieutenants.* 421

Chap. 27. *Timur marches to the kingdom of Irac Agemi, or Hircania.* 424

Chap. 28. *Timur inveſts the Mirza Miran Chah in the kingdom of Halacou Can.* 426

Chap. 29. *Timur vanquiſhes the Turcoman Hachan Sava.* 427

Chap. 30. *Timur marches to Bagdad.* 431

The CONTENTS.

Chap. 31. *Return of Mirza Mehemet Sultan after the defeat of the Courdes robbers.* 438
Chap. 32. *Timur ſends an ambaſſador to the Sultan Barcoc in Egypt.* 439
Chap. 33. *The taking of the town of Tecrit.* 441
Chap. 34. *Timur continues his journy, and ſends his princes and Emirs to make inroads in ſeveral kingdoms.* 448
Chap. 35. *Timur marches to Diarbekir.* 450
Chap. 36. *Timur marches to Edeſſa.* 452
Chap. 37. *Death of Mirza Omar Cheik, Timur's ſon.* 455
Chap. 38. *Timur marches to Gezire.* 460
Chap. 39. *Timur's ſecond enterprize upon Merdin.* 461
Chap. 40. *Birth of the Mirza Oluc Bei.* 463
Chap. 41. *Timur marches to Amed or Hamed, capital of the country of Diarbekir.* 464
Chap. 42. *Timur returns to Alatac.* 467
Chap. 43. *Timur ſends bodys of ſoldiers into ſeveral countrys to enlarge his conqueſts.* 468
Chap. 44. *The taking of the town and fortreſs of Avenic.* 471
Chap. 45. *Timur's return after the taking of Avenic.* 477
Chap. 46. *Timur ſends an army into Georgia.* 479
Chap. 47. *The birth of Ibrahim Sultan, ſon of Charoc.* 480
Chap. 48. *Solemn rejoicings for the birth of Ibrahim Sultan, ſon of Charoc.* 482
Chap. 49. *Timur conſtitutes the Mirza Charoc governor of Samarcand.* 484
Chap. 50. *Timur goes in perſon to the Georgian* 485
Chap. 51. *Timur marches a ſecond time into Capchac againſt Tocatmich Can.* 488
Chap. 52. *Timur reviews his army.* 490
Chap. 53. *Battel between Timur and Tocatmich Can.* 491

Chap

Chap. 54. *Timur goes in purſuit of Tocatmich Can, and inſtals a new Can of Capchac.* 498
Chap. 55. *Timur marches into Europe; and pillages the weſtern Capchac, as alſo Muſcovy and Ruſſia.* 501
Chap. 56. *Timur makes war in Circaſſia.* 505
Chap. 57. *Timur marches to Alburz Couh, or mount Caucaſus.* 506
Chap. 58. *Timur attacks the fortreſſes of Coula, Taous, and others.* 507
Chap. 59. *Timur marches to Senſem.* 511
Chap. 60. *Timur marches into Capchac, and pillages the town of Hadgi Tercan, or Aſtracan.* 513
Chap. 61. *Timur returns to Capchac.* 515
Chap. 62. *Timur gives the government of Azerbijana to the Mirza Miranſha, who beſieges Alengic.* 519
Chap. 63. *Taking of the town of Seirjan; and the retreat of Behloul to Nehavend.* 520
Chap. 64. *Timur ſends the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to conquer the kingdom of Ormus. The reduction of Yezd.* 524
Chap. 65. *Timur returns to the ſeat of his empire.* 525
Chap. 66. *The building of the palace of Baghi Chemal.* 530
Chap. 67. *Timur gives the principality of Coraſſana to the Mirza Charoc.* 531
Chap. 68. *Timur ſtays ſome time at Kech. Return of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan from the campain of Fars.* 534
Chap. 69. *Timur demands in marriage for himſelf the daughter of Keſer Coja Aglen. He celebrates the nuptials of the Mirza Eskender with the princeſs Beghiſi Sultan.* 537
Chap. 70. *Timur gives orders for making the garden of Dilencha, and building a ſtately palace in* 538

THE CONTENTS OF THE Second VOLUME.

BOOK IV.

CHAP. 1. *The cauſe of Timur's war in India.* Page 4
Chap. 2. *Timur brings his army into the field, to make war againſt the Guebres in India.* 7
Chap. 3. *Timur marches againſt the inhabitants of Ketuer. He defeats the Siapouches, who were cloth'd in black.* 8
Chap. 4. *Timur ſends Mehemed Azad to gain intelligence of Mirza Rouſtem and Burhan Aglen. His return to Ketuer.* 13
Chap. 5. *Timur ſends Mirza Charoc to Herat.* 17
Chap. 6. *The arrival of ambaſſadors from ſeveral places. Taizi Aglen returns from the country of the Calmacs, and Cheik Noureddin from that of Fars.* 18
Chap. 7. *The repairing the fortreſs of Irjab, and the deſtroying of the Ouganis robbers.* 23

Chap.

The CONTENTS.

Chap. 8. *Timur marches to Chenouzan and Nagaz; and destroys the robbers of the nation of the Pervanis.* 25

Chap. 9. *Timur passes the river Indus.* 28

Chap. 10. *Chehabeddin Mobarec Chah Temini commits hostilitys against the emperor after his submission.* 29

Chap. 11. *Timur's arrival at Toulouba.* 32

Chap. 12. *Timur marches in search of Nusret Coukeri.* 34

Chap. 13. *Arrival of prince Pir Mehemed Gehangir from Moultan.* 35

Chap. 14. *The taking the town of Bend, and the fortress of Batnir; the inhabitants of which places are put to the sword.* 39

Chap. 15. *Timur departs from Batnir, for Serosti, Fatabad and Ahrouni.* 45

Chap. 16. *Timur marches against a nation of rebellious Getes.* 46

Chap. 17. *A review of the whole army marching in order of battel.* 48

Chap. 18. *Timur marches to the east side of the town of Louni. Massacre of a hundred thousand Indian slaves who were in his camp.* 52

Chap. 19. *Timur gives battel to Sultan Mahmoud, emperor of India.* 55

Chap. 20. *Flight of Sultan Mahmoud, and his general Mellon Can, prince of Moultan. Reduction of Deli capital of India.* 61

Chap. 21. *Timur departs from Deli; and pursues his conquests in the remoter parts of India, near the Ganges.* 68

Chap. 22. *Conquest of Myrthe. The Guebres are flea'd alive.* 69

Chap. 23. *Several battels upon the great river Ganges, against the militia of the Guebres.* 72

Chap. 24. *Timur's three Gazies, or expeditions against the Guebres.* 74

Chap

Chap. 25. *Timur exterminates the Guebres assembled in the famous defile of Coupele. Description of a marble statue of a cow ador'd by the Indians.* 78
Chap. 26. *Timur's resolution to return to the seat of his empire.* 81
Chap. 27. *Timur's irruption on the [illegible]* 82
Chap. 28. *Several combat in the woods near Soualec.* 83
Chap. 29. *Timur's Gazies and expeditions in the province of Tchamou.* 87
Chap. 30. *Relation of what pass'd at Lahor, with regard to Chicai Couker, prince of that city.* 91
Chap. 31. *Description of the little kingdom of Cachmir, or Kichmir.* 95
Chap. 32. *Timur returns to the seat of his empire.* 97
Chap. 33. *Timur crosses the Oxus, and is met by the princes and princesses of the blood.* 102
Chap. 34. *Building of the great mosque of Samarcand.* 105

BOOK V.

CHAP. 1. *The causes which oblig'd Timur to make war in the country of Iran, that is, in the western parts of Asia, from the river Gilout to the Mediterranean sea.* 108
Chap. 2. *Timur's departure for a campain of seven years.* 113
Chap. 3. *The transactions of the Emir Solyman Chah.* 117
Chap. 4. *The arrival of good news from several parts.* 120
Chap. 5. *Timur marches into Georgia, and to the defile of Comcha.* 126

Chap. 6. *Timur's return from the defile of Comcha.* 128
Chap. 7. *Continuation of the history of the Mirza Sohaim, who was gone from Dgiam to Chiraz. A great crime committed by his eldest brother, the Mirza Pir Mehemed.* 130
Chap. 8. *A diet in relation to the affair of Georgia.* 136
Chap. 9. *Timur marches against prince Jani Bec, a Georgian.* 139
Chap. 10. *The taking of the fort of Zerit, and the town of Suanit.* 141
Chap. 11. *Timur marches against the Georgian prince Aiuani.* 143
Chap. 12. *Timur returns from Georgia.* 144
Chap. 13. *Reasons which oblig'd Timur to march against the city of Sebaste, capital of Anatolia.* 145
Chap. 14. *Timur's letter to the Caesar Roum, that is, the Ottoman emperor.* 147
Chap. 15. *Timur marches to Sebaste, and takes that city.* 151
Chap. 16. *Timur marches to Abulestan.* 155
Chap. 17. *The reasons of Timur's carrying his arms into Syria and Mesopotamia.* 157
Chap. 18. *Timur marches into the kingdoms of Syria and Egypt.* 160
Chap. 19. *The taking of the castles of Behesna and Antapa.* 162
Chap. 20. *The siege and taking the city of Aleppo.* 165
Chap. 21. *The castle of Aleppo attack'd and taken.* 17[illegible]
Chap. 22. *The taking of the towns and castles of Emessa and Hama.* 177
Chap. 23. *Conquest of the town of Balbec.* 180
Chap. 24. *Timur marches to Damascus, capital of Syria.* 181

Chap.

The CONTENTS.

Chap. 25. *Timur gives battel to the Sultan of Egypt, and gains the victory.* 187

Chap. 26. *Taking of the city of Damascus.* 189

Chap. 27. *Taking of the castle of Damascus.* 194

Chap. 28. *Timur returns out of Syria.* 202

Chap. 29. *Timur crosses the Euphrates, and travels in Mesopotamia.* 205

Chap. 30. *Timur marches to the town of Merdin.* 206

Chap. 31. *Timur sends troops into Georgia, and to Bagdad.* 208

Chap. 32. *Timur besieges and takes Bagdad.* 211

Chap. 33. *Timur's return from Bagdad, and march towards Tauris.* 217

Chap. 34. *Timur sends the Mirza Charoc to Arzendgian.* 219

Chap. 35. *Arrival of the second empress Tocman Aga, and the young princes, from Samarcand.* 221

Chap. 36. *Timur marches into Georgia, and to Carabagh Arran.* 223

Chap. 37. *Timur passes the winter at Carabagh. Arrival of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan from Samarcand.* 224

Chap. 38. *Timur sends troops to make inroads in divers places.* 226

Chap. 39. *The causes which oblig'd Timur to return to make war on Bajazet the Ottoman emperor.* 230

Chap. 40. *Timur digs the river of Berlas.* 234

Chap. 41. *Timur departs from Carabagh for the plains of Chemkour.* 235

Chap. 42. *Taking of the castle of Tarioun.* 238

Chap. 43. *Taking of the castle of Kemac. Arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet.* 240

Chap. 44. *Timur reviews his army.* 243

Chap. 45. *Taking of the castle of Hayoue.* 245

Chap. 46. *Timur marches to Cesaren in Cappadocia, and to Ancora.* 249

Chap. 47. *Timur ranges his army in order of battel against Bajazet.* 250

Chap.

The CONTENTS.

Chap. 48. *Timur gives Bajazet battel, and gains the victory.* 252

Chap. 49. *The taking of the Ottoman emperor, who is brought in chains before the throne of the conqueror.* 255

Chap. 50. *Timur orders troops to make inroads in divers parts of the Ottoman empire. He sends relations of his victory to the citys of Iran and Touran, with orders to make public rejoicings.* 258

Chap. 51. *The continuation of the history of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had been sent to Prusa in Bithynia.* 261

Chap. 52. *Account of the Mirza Sultan Hussein, and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were gone out to make inroads.* 265

Chap. 53. *Timur departs from Kiouahia* 266

Chap. 54. *Timur dispatches couriers into divers countrys. The arrival of several ambassadors.* 268

Chap. 55. *Timur regulates the winter-quarters.* 271

Chap. 56. *Timur besieges Smyrna, and takes it.* 275

Chap. 57. *Second arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet's sons.* 278

Chap. 58. *Timur departs from Smyrna.* 280

Chap. 59. *Taking of the towns of Egridur and Nasfibrie.* 282

Chap. 60. *The death of the Ottoman emperor Bajazet, and of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, Timur's grandson.* 285

Chap. 61. *Mourning for the death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan: and the translation of his coffin.* 288

Chap. 62. *Arrival of ambassadors from Egypt.* 289

Chap. 63. *Timur marches against the Caratartars, or black Tartars.*

Chap. 64. *Timur returns from Natolia.*

Chap. 65. *The manner in which the death of Mirza Mehemed Sultan, son of Gehanghir, was made known, to Canzade his wife.*

BOOK

The CONTENTS

BOOK VI.

CHAP. 1. *Timur marches into Georgia.* 299

Chap. 2. *The government of Chiraz a second time given to the Mirza Pir Mahomed, Son of Omar Cheik; and that of Ispahan to his brother the Mirza Rouſtem.* 301

Chap. 3. *Timur ſends the Mirza Aboubecre to rebuild the city of Bagdad, and gives him the government of Irac-Arabi and Diarbekir.* 302

Chap. 4. *Timur's arrival at the frontiers of Georgia.* 306

Chap. 5. *The taking of the famous caſtle of Corxone in Georgia.* 308

Chap. 6. *Relation of what paſs'd without during the ſiege.* 313

Chap. 7. *Timur marches to Abkhaze.* 314

Chap. 8. *Timur returns from Abkhaze. The cauſe of his return.* 316

Chap. 9. *Timur orders the town of Beilacan to be rebuilt.* 319

Chap. 10. *Timur ſends intendants and doctors into all the provinces of his empire, to examine the affairs of particular perſons, and to diſtribute his juſtice and favours among the people.* 321

Chap. 11. *Continuation of the hiſtory of the princes who were gone into Irac-Arabi.* 325

Chap. 12. *Arrival of the Mirza Omar from Samarcand. Continuation of what happen'd during the building of Beilacan.* 327

Chap. 13. *Timur paſſes the winter at Carabagh-Arran. Relation of what happen'd there.* 329

Chap. 14. *The emperor ſends the Mirza Charoc to Gelan.* 332

Chap. 15. *Arrival of ſome princes from Merdin and Ispahan. A famous funeral banquet made for the late Mirza Mehemed Sultan.* 334

Chap.

The CONTENTS.

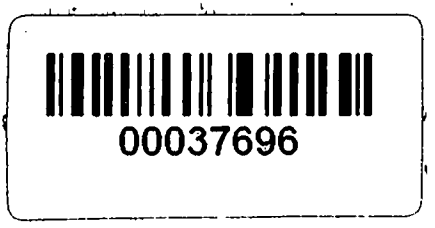
Chap. 16. *Timur's return from a campain of seven years.* 336
Chap. 17. *Timur invests the Mirza Omar in the empire of Hulacou Can.* 337
Chap. 18. *Continuation of the history of the Mirza Rouſtem and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were ſent towards Ret.* 338
Chap. 19. *Timur ſends the Mirza Eskender and the Emir Chamelic before the reſt towards Ret.* 340
Chap. 20. *The taking of the citadel of Birouzcouh.* 342
Chap. 21. *Timur marches to Tchelao.* 345
Chap. 22. *Battel between the Mirza Sultan Huſſein and Eskender Cheikh. The flight of the latter.* 348
Chap. 23. *Timur returns to the ſeat of his empire.* 351
Chap. 24. *Timur's entry into his imperial city of Samarcand.* 355
Chap. 25. *Timur holds a general diet. A great feaſt for the marriage of the princes at Canighul.* 358
Chap. 26. *The cauſes which incited Timur to undertake the conqueſt of the kingdom of China.* 368
Chap. 27. *Timur ſets out for the war againſt the infidels of China.* 372
Chap. 28. *An account of certain adventures, the knowledge of which is neceſſary to the underſtanding the latter part of this hiſtory. A relation of what paſs'd at Acſoulat.* 377
Chap. 29. *Timur departs from Acſoulat.* 378
Chap. 30. *Timur's death at Otrar.*
Chap. 31. *Relation of what happen'd after Timur's death.*
Chap. 32. *Timur's coffin tranſported from Otrar.*
Chap. 33. *The empreſſes and Emirs hold a council concerning the war of China.* 391
Chap. 34. *Timur's coffin is tranſported to Samarcand.*

Chap.

The CONTENTS.

Chap. 35. *The Mirza Sultan Huſſein, Timur's grandſon, oppoſes the ſentiment of the Emirs.* 396
Chap. 36. *The Emirs write circular letters to give advice to all the provinces of the Mirza Sultan Huſſein's undertaking.* 397
Chap. 37. *A letter to the great Emirs who were at Tachkunt.* 399
Chap. 38. *The Emir Berendac arrives at the empreſſes court, with an anſwer to the letter ſent the Emirs, who were at Tachkunt with the Mirza Calil Sultan.* 401
Chap. 39. *Relation of what happen'd on the Emir Berendac's return to Tachkunt.* 405
Chap. 40. *The great Emirs oppoſe the Mirza Calil Sultan.* 407
Chap. 41. *The Emirs hold a council with the empreſſes, in relation to their marching to Bocara.* 409
Chap. 42. *The Mirzas and Emirs march to Bocara.* 411
Chap. 43. *The empreſſes march to Samarcand. Their mourning, after the two Mirzas departure.* 412
Chap. 44. *Account of what paſs'd among the Mirzas and Emirs who were gone to Bocara.* 413
Chap. 45. *The Mirzas and Emirs in Bocara receive advice of the Mirza Calil Sultan's arrival at Samarcand, and of the obedience paid him by the Emirs of that city.* 415
Chap. 46. *Coronation of the Mirza Calil Sultan at Samarcand.* 417
Chap. 47. *Abridgement of the hiſtory of the reign of the Mirza Calil Sultan; and the cauſe of his ruin.* 419
Chap. 48. *Concluſion of the hiſtory of Timur-Bec, wherein the qualitys by which that conqueror ſurpaſs'd all the kings who preceded him, are ſet down. The names of his children who ſurviv'd him.* 424

The end of the contents.


00037696

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 25 June, 2016